


3 1761 05333691 3







Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

875.3
Heath's Modern Language Series

A GERMAN GRAMMAR

FOR

Schools and Colleges

BASED ON THE

PUBLIC SCHOOL GERMAN GRAMMAR

OF

A. L. MEISSNER, M.A., PH.D., D.LIT.

PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES IN QUEEN'S COLLEGE, BELFAST

BY

EDWARD S. JOYNES, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES IN SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
316116
4.6.35

PF

3111

56

1904a

COPYRIGHT, 1887, 1898 AND 1904.

BY D. C. HEATH & COMPANY.

214

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

P R E F A C E.

THIS book is based, by arrangement with the author and the original publishers, upon the "Public School Grammar," by Dr. A. L. MEISSNER, of Queen's College, Belfast (1885), which has attained great popularity in the United Kingdom.

In the present book the material thus furnished has been freely used and, where occasion seemed to require, freely modified. The changed title will, to a great extent, explain the scope of such modifications. The term "Public School Grammar" would seem to restrict the original design to purely elementary work. In this book the attempt has been made to carry forward the same method so as to include also college and university study—in a word, to meet the wants of students of every grade—up to the point where the demand arises for the higher study of historical and scientific grammar. This higher study, let it be said at once, is not included in the scope of the present work.

In carrying out this design there has been on the one hand much condensation, and on the other much expansion, of the original material. The changes in Parts I. and II. have been both in detail and in arrangement; yet the subject-matter remains essentially the same. The Syntax (Part III.) has been almost wholly rewritten, upon a scale more comprehensive than that of the original work, to meet the more enlarged scope of the present book. Just what should be here included, and what omitted, is a point on which perhaps no two would agree. The writer, guided by his own experience, has sought to include all that might be important for the student,

and nothing more. A comprehensive chapter on the Order of Words, a brief summary of the Relation of German to English, an alphabetical list of Strong and Irregular Verbs, and Vocabularies, an Appendix, and Indexes have also been added. It is hoped that the occasional Suggestions to Teachers will be pardoned, even when not needed or followed; and, more especially, that the large use made of parallels and contrasts from English grammar will be acceptable to those who, like the editor, have found that, with most students, one of the chief obstacles to progress in German is the want of a sound knowledge of English.

In the preparation of this edition the editor has availed himself of the usual well-known German sources. Outside of these he acknowledges with pleasure that obligation to Whitney's and Brandt's German Grammars which no American scholar could deny. Many helpful examples have been taken from Tiarks' German Grammar.

The personal obligations of the editor are larger than he could briefly express. Many scholars have kindly aided with valuable suggestions. Where so many deserve mention it is difficult to discriminate; but special acknowledgment is due to Prof. Van der Smissen, of Toronto; Prof. Sheldon, of Harvard; Prof. Primer, of the College of Charleston; Prof. Super, of Dickinson College; and particularly to Prof. Fay, of Tufts College, and Prof. Harrison, of Washington and Lee University, who have read the entire proofs with painstaking and helpful care. Dr. Meissner's own cordial sympathy has also been felt at all times as a grateful encouragement.

For himself, the editor may say, in conclusion, that the labor of this edition has been hardly less—in some directions, indeed, greater—than would have been required for an original work; and it has been performed in the midst of constantly engrossing occupation. For this he asks no indulgence, but only that the book be judged with reference to

its avowed purpose: not as a scientific or exhaustive exposition of the German language, but as a *working grammar*, based on the experience of the class-room, and aiming to present, in simple form and within moderate limits, what is necessary for the use of pupils and teachers in the ordinary school and college study of German. If it fulfill this modest design, there will be ample room for its usefulness.

SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE, August 15, 1887.

NOTE.—The method of using the book will vary, of course, with the plan of instruction and the views of individual teachers. For ordinary purposes, however, the editor would suggest that Part I. should be first gone through, with the exercises *from German to English only*, and that all translation from English to German be deferred until the review is begun, and the student is prepared to read an independent text; and, generally, that this independent reading should be begun as early as possible, according to the grade of different classes of pupils. This first study and the review, with the reverse exercises, of Part I., will constitute a fair *first year's course in German*, sufficiently complete in itself, for younger pupils.

IN preparing successive revisions I have carefully taken into account all the suggestions kindly contributed by others, as well as those found in my own teaching. At various points important corrections and additions have been made, and no pains have been spared to make the book permanently worthy of the favor with which it has been received. I beg leave also to add:

1. While the book is not intended expressly for the oral or "natural" method, yet its Exercises may be equally so used, and like exercises may be indefinitely extended from the same materials.

2. On the other hand it is not implied that all the Exercises shall be used with all pupils. Range was left, purposely, for subdivision, selection, and review, according to the wants of classes. I should not need to add that the Exercises are intended not for literature, but purely for the application of the grammatical forms.

3. Likewise the Paradigms are, for convenience, given entire, without

implying, however, that they must needs be so learned at once — or, indeed, at all. Of this — as of all the details of method — each teacher will judge.

4. I beg leave to repeat and emphasize the suggestions made in the Note to the first preface, both as to the Exercises and as to the early use of an independent text. By a judicious selection of leading topics the way may be prepared for such reading in from twelve to twenty lessons, according to the grade of the pupils.

5. I desire especially to ask the attention of teachers to the reasons given, in the introduction to the Vocabulary, for not giving the inflections (in a *grammatical* vocabulary) where these are perfectly regular.

I would again repeat my thanks to the many friends — teachers and others — who by their intelligent criticism have helped me to the correction and improvement of this book; — especially to Mr. Orlando F. Lewis of Tufts College, for his excellent (two) series of “Alternative English-German Exercises,” with which the Grammar may be used to better advantage by successive classes. — Also to Dr. C. F. Kayser of New York, for the skillful “Supplementary Exercises” now bound with the book; and to Professor Otto Heller, Professor Hugo Schilling, Dr. H. P. Jones and Dr. G. B. Viles, for important additions and corrections.

In revising the present reprint (1904) of the entire text from new plates, advantage has been taken of the opportunity to introduce (besides the latest orthography) such occasional improvements as seemed to be practicable, without impairing the essential integrity of the book or causing confusion in its use along with earlier editions. The present is, therefore, a distinctly new and, it is hoped, improved edition.

E. S. J.

SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE, April, 1904.

CONTENTS.

PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY AND ACCIDENCE.

	PAGE
ALPHABET	1
PRONUNCIATION	3
ACCENTUATION	12
USE OF CAPITALS	15
 LESSON	
I. The Definite Article. First Class of Strong Declension	19
II. The Indefinite Article. Second Class of Strong Declension	24
III. Declension of <i>dieſer</i> , etc. Third Class of Strong Declension. Present Ind. of <i>ſein</i>	28
IV. The Weak Declension. Past Ind. of <i>ſein</i>	32
V. Peculiarities in Declension. Perfect and Pluperfect of <i>ſein</i>	36
VI. Declension of Proper Names. Future of <i>ſein</i>	40
VII. Declension of Foreign and Compound Nouns. Future Per- fect of <i>ſein</i>	42
Synopsis of Declension of Nouns	46
Gender of Nouns	47
VIII. Strong Declension of Adjectives. Present of <i>haben</i>	48
IX. Weak Declension of Adjectives. Past of <i>haben</i>	51
X. Mixed Declension of Adjectives. Perfect and Pluperfect of <i>haben</i>	55
XI. Comparison of Adjectives. Future of <i>haben</i>	60
XII. The Predicate Superlative. Future Perfect of <i>haben</i> . Prepo- sitions governing the Dative	64
XIII. The Auxiliary Verbs	67
XIV. The Auxiliary <i>haben</i> . First Rules of Position. Prepositions governing the Accusative; and Dative or Accusative	71
XV. The Auxiliary <i>ſein</i> . Personal Pronouns. Address	78
XVI. The Auxiliary Verb <i>werden</i> . Contraction of Article with Prepositions. Possessives	85

LESSON		PAGE
XVII.	Weak Conjugation of Verbs. Rules of Position. Demonstratives	91
XVIII.	Weak Conjugation, continued. Interrogatives	99
XIX.	Strong Conjugation of Verbs. First Class of Strong Verbs, First Subdivision	104
XX.	First Class of Strong Verbs, Second Subdivision. Relative Pronouns	110
XXI.	First Class of Strong Verbs, Third Subdivision	115
XXII.	First Class of Strong Verbs, Fourth Subdivision. Indefinites	119
XXIII.	Second Class of Strong Verbs. First Subdivision. Second Subdivision	122
XXIV.	Third Class of Strong Verbs. First Subdivision. Second Subdivision. Reflexive Verbs	126
XXV.	Mixed Conjugation and Irregular Verbs. Synopsis of Strong Verbs	131
XXVI.	Auxiliary Verbs of Mood	136
XXVII.	The Passive Voice. Use of the Passive	141
XXVIII.	Inseparable Verbs. Spurious Prepositions	146
XXIX.	Separable Verbs	150
XXX.	Variable Verb-Prefixes. Compound Prefixes	153
XXXI.	Impersonal Verbs. Use of <i>haben</i> and <i>sein</i>	156
XXXII.	Cardinal Numerals. Expressions of Time	160
XXXIII.	Ordinal Numerals. Dates, Measures, etc.	164
XXXIV.	Adverbs	167
XXXV.	Conjunctions. Interjections	171
XXXVI.	Order of Words: Summary and Synopsis	177

PART II. DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

XXXVII.	Derivation of Verbs	186
XXXVIII.	Composition of Verbs	190
XXXIX.	Composition of Verbs (continued)	195
XL.	Derivation of Nouns	198
XLI.	Derivation of Nouns (continued)	202
XLII.	Composition of Nouns	206
XLIII.	Derivation of Adjectives and Adverbs	210
XLIV.	Composition of Adjectives and Adverbs	216
XLV.	Relation of German and English: Summary	220

PART III. SYNTAX.

LESSON	PAGE
XLVI. The Articles	229
XLVII. Additional Remarks on Nouns	233
XLVIII. The Cases: Nominative. Genitive	238
XLIX. The Genitive (continued)	241
L. The Dative	244
LI. The Dative (continued)	248
LII. The Accusative	251
Prepositions with Cases. Summary	254
LIII. Adjectives	255
LIV. Personal and Possessive Pronouns	260
LV. Demonstrative and Interrogative Pronouns	263
LVI. Relative and Indefinite Pronouns	267
LVII. Subject and Predicate. Tenses of the Indicative	271
LVIII. The Subjunctive. The Conditional	275
Modal Idioms. Summary	280
LIX. The Infinitive	283
LX. Infinitive Equivalents. The Participles	287
LXI. Adverbs. Adverb Idioms. Adverb Clauses	293
Repetition: Summary	299
Idiom: Summary	300
CONTINUOUS PASSAGES, ENGLISH-GERMAN	302
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS	307
ORTHOGRAPHY: THE NEW RULES	323
VOCABULARIES	325
APPENDIX: NOUNS; PREPOSITIONS	367
INDEX	379
GERMAN SCRIPT	385
ADDITIONAL EXERCISES	397



PART I.
ORTHOGRAPHY AND ACCIDENCE.

ALPHABET.

I. The German alphabet consists, like the English, of twenty-six letters.

(a) The type in which German books are usually printed is a variety of the Roman alphabet, and is that form of it which was used by the earlier printers throughout Europe. The Roman character called in Germany the "Latin," is used in scientific works, and is gradually, though slowly, superseding the old "black-letter."*

GERMAN LETTERS.	ROMAN LETTERS.	GERMAN NAMES.
A, a	A, a	<i>ah.</i>
B, b	B, b	<i>bay.</i>
C, c	C, c	<i>tsay.</i>
D, d	D, d	<i>day.</i>
E, e	E, e	<i>ay.</i>
F, f	F, f	<i>eff.</i>
G, g	G, g	<i>gay.</i>
H, h	H, h	<i>hah.</i>
I, i	I, i	<i>ee.</i>
J, j	J, j	<i>yot.</i>

*In like manner the Latin script (our ordinary English handwriting) is coming into more general use, and is universally understood in Germany. It may be left to the discretion of the teacher, to allow this to be used in German exercises or to require the German script — at any rate until the student has acquired some familiarity with the printed language. A copy of the German script, with reading exercises, is given at the end of the book.

Ɔ, Ɔ	k	K, k	<i>kah.</i>
ℓ, ℓ	l	L, l	<i>ell.</i>
ℓ, ℓ	m	M, m	<i>emm.</i>
ℓ, ℓ	n	N, n	<i>enn.</i>
o, o	o	O, o	<i>oh.</i>
Ɔ, Ɔ	p	P, p	<i>pay.</i>
q, q	q	Q, q	<i>koo.</i>
ℓ, ℓ	r	R, r	<i>er.*</i>
Ɔ, Ɔ	ſ, ſ	S, s	<i>ess.</i>
Ɔ, Ɔ	t	T, t	<i>tay.</i>
u, u	u	U, u	<i>oo.</i>
v, v	v	V, v	<i>fow.</i>
w, w	w	W, w	<i>vay.</i>
x, x	x	X, x	<i>ix.</i>
y, y	y	Y, y	<i>ipsilon.</i>
z, z	z	Z, z	<i>tset.</i>

The "round" ſ is used only at the end of a word or syllable.

2. (a) The following modified vowels are used :

Ä, ä Ö, ö Ü, ü

(b) and the diphthongs :

Äi, ai Ei, ei Eu, eu Au, au Äu, äu

(c) and the consonantal compounds — digraphs or tri-graphs : ch, cf (for ff), ng, pf, ph, qu, ſch, ſ (ſj for ſs), th, þ (tj for zj).

Several letters, very much alike, must be carefully noted :

Ɔ, Ɔ ; Ɔ, Ɔ ; Ɔ, Ɔ ; Ɔ, Ɔ ; n, u ; r, r.

NOTE. — For an exercise, see p. 6. *Nouns begin with capitals.*

* Pronounce as *er* in *error*.

PRONUNCIATION.

Examples should be dictated in advance. Accent first syllable, unless otherwise marked.

Vowels.

3. The vowels are either short or long.

(a) A vowel followed by a double consonant is short.

As: hatte, stellen, sollen.

(b) A vowel is usually short before two consonants; but a long root-sound is retained before *affixes*. As: bald, Bild, bünt (short); but: lob-te, Tag=ß, Lab=jal (long).

(c) A double vowel is long, with the same sound as the simple long vowel; as, Haar, Beet, Boot.

(d) A vowel followed by *h* in the same syllable is long; as, Ahn, sehr, ihm, Sohn.

(e) A vowel is long when ending a syllable; as, Tä-geß, bē-ten, lō-ben; and usually before one consonant; as, gāb, dēn, Tōd, Müt.

NOTE.—Except in unaccented affixes (§ 53), and in a few common monosyllables; as, daß, deß, es, etc.

4. A, a, sounds like *a* in *father*. Long: gab, nahm, Aal; short: Fall, fain, rannte.

5. E, e, long, sounds like English *ey* in *they*; as, geht, Mehl, sehr, Heer, and in the first syllable of beten, geben, jeder. Short, like short *e* in *set*; as, denn, hell, schnell, and in the first syllable of stellen, selten, rennen.

In unaccented final syllables it has the obscure sound as in *over*—nearly the sound of *u* in *but*; as in the last syllable of lobte, lobten, Matro'se, Matro'sen—where the sound of *e* in *set* is especially to be avoided.

6. I, i, long, has the sound of *i* in *machine*, or *ee* in *seen*; as, mir, dir, ihm, Igel. Short *i* sounds like *i* in *pin*;

as, *bist*, *ist*, *sißen*. The long sound of *i* is, however, generally represented by the combination *ie*; as, *die*, *Liebe*, *Sieb*. *I* is never doubled.

7. *Ö*, *o*, long, sounds like *o* in *hold*; as, *Moos*, *wohl*, *lösen*. Short, nearly like *o* in *off*; as, *Gott*, *sott*, *gloßen*. Never the sound of *o* in *hop*, *do*, *done*, etc.

8. *U*, *u*, long, has the sound of *oo* in *boot*: *gut*, *Uhr*. Short, has the sound of *oo* in *good*: *Hund*, *summen*. Never the sound of *u* in *but*, *muse*, etc. *U* is never doubled.

9. *ÿ*, *y*, is found only in a few foreign words and has the same sound as *i*. But some prefer the sound of *ü* (§ 13.). As: *Tyrann'*, *lyrisch*.

Modified Vowels.

10. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, are modified, that is, they are changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*, respectively. This change was produced originally by an *i* sound in the following syllable, which now often appears as *e*. For instance: *Hand*, *Hände*; *Sohn*, *Söhne*; *gesund'*, *gesund'er*; *Haus*, *Häuser*.

(a) This vowel modification, known as *Umlaut*, is a most important process in German inflection and derivation, as will appear hereafter.

(b) It was customary to express the modification of the vowel by a small *e*, printed in the case of capitals after, and in the case of small letters above, the original vowel. The small *e* was gradually reduced to a couple of strokes or dots over the letters. According to the modern spelling, only this latter mode is to be used.

NOTE. — In English transliteration the modification is represented by *e*; as, *Maetzner*, *Goethe*, *Kuehner*, *Mueller*.

11. *Ä*, *Ö*, *Ü*, long, is between *a* in *hale* and *a* in *hare*:

Säge, prägen, mähen. Short ä, nearly like the English *e* in *set*: hätte, Bäcker, Männer.

12. De, ð, ö, sounds like the French *eu* in *feu*, *peu*; but the sound cannot be exactly represented in English. Place the tongue as if to sound *a* in *fate*; round the lips as if to sound *o* in *so*. Long in: Söhne, Ströme, schön. Short in: können, öffnen, Örter.

NOTE.— The English sounds in *burn*, *burnt*, are perhaps the nearest equivalents for long and short ö; but the German sound is more rounded.

13. Ue, ũ, ü, sounds like the French *u* in *du*, *plus*. This sound also cannot be represented in English. Place the tongue as if to sound *ee* in *see*; round the lips as if to sound *u* in *rule*. Long in: Hüte, Schüler, Übel. Short in: Hütte, füllen, Bürste.

14. Ueu, Ũu, äu, sounds like the English *oi* in *oil*, and is always long: träumen, Kräuter, Bäume.

15. The modified vowels are never doubled; hence nouns which have a double vowel are spelled with only one vowel, when modified; as, Saal, Säle; Haar, Härchen.

NOTE.— It is important to remember that only *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, are capable of this modification (Umlaut). These are known as *back* (or *low*) vowels; all others, as *front* (or *high*) vowels.

Diphthongs.

16. The diphthong *äu* has been included above.

The digraph *ie* is not properly a diphthong, and only represents the long sound of *i* (§ 6). When occurring in unaccented final syllables, in a few foreign words, *i* before *e* sounds like *y*; as Spanien, Linie (as *e* in *linear*) — usually Latin words. So, Fami'lie, Mate'rie, Ju'lie, (Latin); Melodie', Poesie', Marie', (not Latin).

17. Ai, ai, is pronounced like *ai* in *aisle*: Mai, Saite, Hain.
18. Ei, ei, is pronounced like *ai*: Blei, fein, Heiterkeit.
The old forms ay, ey, are now rarely used.
19. Au, au, is pronounced like the English *ou* in *found*:
Haus, laufen, heraus.
20. Eu, eu, is pronounced like *äu*; that is, like English *oi*
in *oil*: Träume, Säule, säuft; Eule, heulen, treu.
All diphthongs are long.

EXERCISE IN VOWEL PRONUNCIATION.

(Consonants as in English.)

1. *Monosyllables*: Aal, Art, Ast, Kast, feil, null, Nest, Fall, Fluß, Blatt, Ost, Lust, Ohr, Uhr, ihm, biß, dünn, Öl, tief, dick, nett, nah, Mahl, dumm, kann, braun, frei, Alee, Bier, Glas, treu, aus, muß, lies, trink, Trunk, Loos, los, haar, Kern, toll, kaum, Hain, Eis, Heu, Gut, mir, Kock, mehr, der, die, dem, den, denn.

2. *With accent on first syllable*: Ende, aber, älter, rufen, baden. Bäder, Opfer, Ofen, Öfen, unter, über, Hütte, Mutter, Mütter, Fälle, bauen, Bäume, Esel, essen, Liebe, lieben, Eier, übel, heller, Hölle, Hülle, Myrte, Nebel, öde, außer, gutes, bittet, hätte, Mine, ihnen, Fülle, heiter, Gaide, hören, Höfe, freuen, geben, meine, ihr, euer.

3. *Short vowels in monosyllables*: an, das, des, es, bin, hat, biß, in, hin, man, mit, um.

NOTE.— These exercises should be continued at will by the teacher, until the sounds of the vowels and diphthongs are perfectly familiar.

Consonants.

Only those sounds will be given which depart from the usual English pronunciation.

21. The sonant *b*, *d*, at the end of a word or syllable, or preceding a consonant, terminate in the surd sounds of *p*, *t*,

respectively ; as, ab, Grab, gelb, abgeben, gehabt ; mild, Abend, Kindlein (as if abp, mildt, etc.).

22. *Ç, c*, which now occurs only in a few foreign words, is pronounced like *ts* (German *z*), before the vowels *e, i, η*, or *ä, ö* ; as, Cäsar, cedern, Cyprus. Elsewhere like *k* : as, Cato, Codex, Claudius.

NOTE.—Most words formerly written with *c* are now written with *t* or *z*.

23. *Ğ, g*, initial, and when doubled, is pronounced like *g* in *go, get* ; as, geben, gegen, Flagge. But at the end of a word or syllable, or before another consonant, some authorities give a guttural or palatal spirant (like *ç*, § 33) ; others allow this sound only in final *-ig*, retaining elsewhere the initial *g* sound ; others give the final *g* a sound like *gʃ* (§ 21). There is great diversity of usage.

(*a*) When an inflection is added to a final *g*, some authorities retain the aspirate sound ; but others give the initial *g* sound. Let the examples be carefully practiced with the teacher ; as, Tag, Balg, Magd, bog, Krug, Krieg, König ; Tage, balgen, böge, Krüge, Kriege, Könige.

(*b*) Both *g* and *f* are sounded before *n* ; as, Gnade, Knabe.

24. *Û, h*, is strongly aspirated at the beginning of a word or a syllable ; as, Hammer, Holz, meisterhaft, Faulheit, gehorsam. Following a vowel in a stem-syllable, it marks a long vowel, but is not heard : Höhe, sehen, Nähe, wahr, sah.

25. *ÿ, j*, sounds like *y* (consonant) in *yon* ; as, ja, jeder.

26. *R, r*, is sounded distinctly, by some with a lingual, by others with a palatal roll, or trill ; as, Rad, Mutter, Bart, Geburt.

NOTE.—Be careful not to slur the vowel sounds before *r*, as in English *her, bird, fur*, etc. As : her, Sirt, Surt—each vowel clearly sounded.

27. *S*, *ſ*, *s*, has the surd or hissing sound only when final, doubled, or preceding a consonant; as, *Haus*, *dieß*, *essen*, *Raſt*. Elsewhere it is sonant, like a soft *z* (see § 21) or *s* in *desire*; as, *Sonne*, *Hafe*, *Besen*, *Gläſer*, *dießeß*.

28. *S*, *ſ*, initial, before *p* or *t*, is by the best authorities pronounced with a sound nearly like *sh* (German *ſch*); as, *ſpringen*, *Spule*; *ſtehen*, *Stall*.

29. *B*, *v*, occurs in German words mostly at the beginning and is there pronounced like the English *f*: *Vater*, *voll*, *vier*. In foreign words, or following a vowel, it is pronounced like the English *v*: *Venus*, *Novem'ber*, *divi'die're*, *Sklave*; but final, always like *f*: *brav*, *relativ'*.

30. *W*, *w*, is pronounced like the English *v*; except after consonants, especially *ſch* and *z*, when it has a sound intermediate between English *v* and *w*: *wollen*, *Werk*, *was*; *zwischen*, *zwei*, *Schwamm*, *Schwester*.

31. *X*, *x*, has the sound of *ks*, even in the beginning of a word: *Rnix*, *Art*, *Here*, *Xerxes*, *Xenophon*.

32. *Z*, *z*, always has the sound of *ts*: *zu*, *ziehen*, *Herzog*, *heizen*, *Holz* — never like English *z*.

Consonantal Digraphs and Trigraphs.

33. *Ch*, *ch*, is a spirant, which has two different sounds. It has a harsher, more guttural sound, when preceded by the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, or the diphthong *au*; but a softer, more palatal sound, when preceded by any other vowel or diphthong, or by the liquids *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*. Examples of the rough guttural *ch*: *Bach*, *Loch*, *Buch*, *auch*, *Tochter*. Examples of the soft palatal *ch*: *ich*, *reich*, *riechen*, *ſtechen*, *Licht*, *mancher*, *Reich*, *Furcht*.

(a) The aspirate sounds of *g* are similar. (See § 23).

NOTE.—These guttural, or palatal, sounds of *ch* and *g* are highly characteristic of German, as their absence is characteristic of English. They must be carefully practiced. Especially, care must be taken to avoid, on the one hand, the sibilant sound of *sh* (*sch*), and, on the other, the closed sound of *f*. Thus: *Bach*, not *Basch* nor *Baef*; *ich*, not *ish* nor *if*; *Kirche* not *Kirsche*.

34. *chs* is pronounced like *ks*, when it forms part of the root of the word, as, *Dachs*, *Luchs*, *Fuchs*, *Dachses*, *Fuchses*, *Luchse*. But when the *s* is inflectional, or belongs to the second part of a compound or derivative, or to another word, *ch* has its proper aspirate pronunciation (§ 35). As: *das Dach*, gen. *des Daches*, contracted *Dachs*; but: *durchsuchen*; *Nach-sicht*; *ich's* for *ich es*.

35. *ck* is simply a double *k*, marking a preceding short vowel: *zurück*, *bücker*, *drücken*, *stecken*.

36. *ng* sounds as in *sing*, *singer*—not as in *finger*: *jung*, *singen*, *Klänge*. Similarly, *nk*; as, *sanft*, *sinken*. But when in distinct word-elements, the letters are pronounced separately; as, *an-greifen*, *an-flagen*.

NOTE.—But *ng* sounds as in *finger* in some proper names; as *Jugo*.

37. *Pf*, *pf*, is a quick combination of the sounds *p* and *f*. As, *Pferd*, *Pfeffer*, *Pflug*.

38. *Ph*, *ph*, has the sound of *f*: *Philosophie'*, *Philipp'*; but is now used only in foreign words.

39. *Qu*, *qu*, is pronounced like *kw*, with the intermediate sound of *w*, as § 30: *Quelle*, *Qual*, *Quartier'*.

40. *Sch*, *sch*, is pronounced like the English *sh*: *Schiller*, *Schütze*, *schrauben*, *Fisch*, *rauschen*.

NOTE.—But, like *chs*, *ng* above, the sounds will be distinct when belonging to different elements; as, *Haus-chen*, *bis-chen*.

41. *ß*, pronounced *ss*, is written always instead of *fs* at the end of a word. When not final, *ß* stands after a long

vowel or diphthong; the double *ff* after a short vowel (§ 3 *a*); but *ff* always before a consonant. This rule is important in inflected and derivative forms. As: *Trüb*, plural *Trübe*; *Fluß*, pl. *Flüsse*; *hassen*, *haßte*, *häßlich*, etc.

NOTE. — In Roman (English) letters *ff* is represented by *ss*; *ff* by *sz*; but also by *ss* or *fs* — with some diversity of usage.

42. *Th*, *th*, sounded always like simple *t*, is now used only in foreign words and proper names; as, *Rathe'der*, *Thee*, *Göthe*.*

NOTE. — Till recently *th* was used before a long vowel; as, *That*, *thun*; and formerly much more largely; as, *Thier*, *Thurm*, *Muth*, *rathen*, etc.

43. *ß*, pronounced *ts*, stands for *zz* after a short vowel; as, *Stiße* (*heizen*), *Platz*, *plötzlich*. A few foreign words have *zz*; as, *Stizze*.

REMARK. — These compounds, except as expressly mentioned, count as single letters. Hence before *th*, *sch*, *ng*, *ph*, a vowel may be long or short.

Doubled Vowels and Consonants.

§ *At this point, or even earlier, the study of the grammar proper should be begun (§ 71).*

44. Doubled vowels are pronounced as long vowels; as, *Boot*, *Saat*, *Beet*. See also § 15.

45. Doubled consonants are pronounced like simple consonants. They serve mostly the purpose of indicating the short quantity of the preceding vowel; as, *bitten*, *rennen*, *wenn* (compare *wen*).

46. But vowels or consonants, apparently doubled, which belong to distinct parts of compound, derivative, or inflected words, must be kept distinct in pronunciation. As: *be=erdigen*, *Genugtu=ung*, *Knie=e*; *Ab=bild*, *an=nehmen*, *ver=ra=ten*, *Mit=tag*.

* For other recent changes in orthography see p. 321.

(a) Occasionally by composition or inflection triple letters may occur. As: Bett=tuch, Still=leben, Schwimm=meister, Armee=en.

REMARK. — In general, letters belonging to different word-elements are kept distinct in pronunciation, and do not affect quantity; as (compounds): Bēt=haus, Bēt=pult, Lōb=preisung, Blūts=tropfen, *drops of blood*, (§ 3).

Foreign Words.

47. Foreign words, even if words in daily use, have preserved more or less of their foreign pronunciation. As:

(a) *G* has frequently preserved its French sound, as in: Genie', logie'ren, Loge, and some others (like *z* in *azure*).

(b) *J* likewise has preserved its French sound in: Journal', Jalouſie', and a few others (like *z* in *azure*).

(c) *Ch*, in words derived from Greek, is generally pronounced like *R*, as in: Charak'ter, Chor, Christ, Chronik. Sometimes it has the aspirate sound, as in: Chirurg', Chemie'; and in words from the French, the sound of *sh*: Chef, Chiffre, Chara'de, Chauffee', changie'ren.

(d) *t* before unaccented *i* preceding an accented vowel in words derived from Latin, is pronounced like *ʒ* (*ts*); Station', Patient', Benefa'ner. The corresponding words give the sound *sh* in English.

(e) Other foreign sounds will be learned by experience. In general, both in pronunciation and in accent, foreign words are much less fully naturalized in German than in English.

EXERCISE IN CONSONANT PRONUNCIATION.

1. *Monosyllables; the initial Consonants.* Geist, Gneist, Knall, Binn, Zahl, Seil, Sohn, wenn, wo, voll, Thee, Thron, vor, was, ja, Jahr, pfiſſ, schnell, Bier, ging, zehn, Sprung, Stall, soll, rauh, roh, quer, Dual, Stroh, Spur; from Greek: Chor, Christ; from French: Chef, Charpie'.

2. *The final Consonants.* ab, Bad, Tag, log, Loch, auch, ich, Krieg, Reich, Holz, Dohs, taugt, Talg, Schild, Kalb, Pferd, Grab, Not, rot, Sieg, sich, stach, Speck, Saß, Scherz, mild, gleich, Wachs, Fuchs, doch, dich, säugt, hoch, Glas, gib.

3. *Promiscuous German words: accent first syllable.* geben, Tochter, Töchter, Vater, Väter, Better, Wetter, essen, Besen, trocken, springen, stehen, tragen, fragte, Dichtung, gegen, Gnade, Knabe, jeder, Finger, also, Träne, Achtung, Füchse, jünger, Türe, Taten, heißen, heizen, zogen, sprechen, lesen, gießen, scherzen.

4. *Foreign; accent as marked.* Citro'ne, Ga'ge, Genie', Nation', national', Chemie', Journal', Jalousie', Patient', Chro'nik, Charak'ter, Officier', Chara'de, Concert', Thea'ter.

Accentuation.

48. In words of more than one syllable a greater stress is laid on one syllable than on another, and, in compound words, one word is pronounced with greater force than another. This greater stress of voice is called *accent*.

49. A syllable may have the full (principal or *tonic*) accent, or a subordinate or secondary accent, or be unaccented. We give only the most important rules:

50. In German words of more than one syllable (not compounds), the full accent is laid on that syllable which contains the root, prefixes and suffixes being unaccented, or having only a secondary accent. As, lieb'lich, geliebt'.

51. Excepted are (a): the negative prefix un; as, un'treu, Un'sinn (with a few exceptions).* Also the prefixes ant, erz, ur; as, Ant'wort, Erz'engel, Ur'laub.

(b) The noun suffix -ei; as, Schmeichelei', Zauberei', in consequence of its foreign origin (§ 56).

* On un the chief accent is quite constant in nouns; in adjectives also usually, especially when the simple form is in use; except some verb-derivatives in =bar, =lich, =sam, and a few others. In some cases usage varies.

52. The use of the secondary accent, or accents, must be learned by practice. Unaccented are, in general, all endings of inflection, and prefixes and suffixes whose vowel is short *e*; as, *Gefah'ren*, *gefähr'lich*; *gefähr'lich*er, *Rö'nig'e*, etc.

53. In compound words, each component word receives its proper accentuation; but the principal accent is laid on the *determining* component; that is, generally, in compound nouns, adjectives and verbs, on the first component; in other parts of speech, on the second. As: *Werk'zeug*, *Schul'haus*, *lieb'reich*, *ehr'los*, *danf'sagen*, *teil'nehmen*, *le'benslustig*, *Ta'schen=tücher*; *berg'an'*, *da=mit'*, *wo=von'*, *zu=fol'ge* (*adverbs*); *dersel'be* (*pronoun*) etc.

54. The separable prefixes, in compound verbs and their corresponding nouns, etc., form proper compounds, and always take the principal accent; the inseparable prefixes leave the accent on the root: *aus'gehen*, *an'fangen*, *An'fall*, *an'fällig*; *beste'hen*, *entlas'sen*, *vermis'sen*, *Gebrauch'*, *gewiß'*.

NOTE.— The inseparable prefixes, § 277, might be conveniently learned at once.

55. In general, accentuation in German is much more logical and simple than in English. The few exceptions are easily learned by experience. Examples are: *all=ein'*, *allmäch'tig* (compounds of *all=*), *leben'dig* (from *le'bend*), *wahrhaft'ig* (from *wahr'haft*), and a few others. In a few words a difference of meaning is distinguished by change of accent; as, *da'bei* and *dabei'*; *da'rum* and *darum'* — as will be learned hereafter.

Accentuation of Foreign Words.

56. Foreign words usually take the accent on the last syllable, unless they have become quite germanized: *Religion'*, *Advokat'*, *Musik'*, *Mathematik'*, *Student'*, *Bibliothek'*, *Nation'*, *Melodie'*, *Horaz'*, *Vergil'*, *Emil'*.

57. But on other syllables in many words; as : Bota'nif, Gramma'tif, Mecha'nif, Lo'gik, E'thik, Profes'sor, Dok'tor, Charak'ter, Fami'lie (§ 16), Ori'on, Dari'us, Su'lius, Su'lie, Ci'cero, and others. (§ 59, note).

58. Some foreign words shift their accent when derivative or inflectional suffixes are added. As : national', melo'diſch, Profes'soren, Dokto'ren, Charakte're.

59. Verbs ending in *-ieren*, from French, or formed by French analogy, and their derivatives, keep the accent on *-ie* throughout; as, ſtudie'ren, ſtudiert', Regie'rung.

NOTE. — The general principle is, that foreign words retain the same accent as in their original language. As most of them are from French with final accent, or from Latin or Greek with an inflectional syllable dropped, the accent is, generally, on the last syllable. The same principle will also generally explain the exceptions to this rule, as well as the change of accent when suffixes are added (as above). But there are many irregularities.

60. In some cases foreign words are completely naturalized and then take German accent, as *Fenster* (Latin, *fenestra*). But, in general, foreign words retain their distinctive accent, and are thus not so fully naturalized in German as in English. On the other hand, they are far less numerous, and are, for the most part, easily recognized. As a general rule, it may be added that they are usually words which, being derived from a common source, have the same or nearly the same form in German and in English.

General Remark. — The foregoing rules on Pronunciation and Accentuation aim to give only the simplest and most general directions. No written rules can here take the place of skillful oral instruction and careful practice. Let it be remarked, by way of caution to both student and teacher, that a good pronunciation, if not acquired at first, is far less likely to be ever acquired afterwards. This subject should continue to receive the most careful attention, with every lesson. Of course it is not implied that such rules should be studied *entire*, before the grammar proper is begun.

EXERCISE IN ACCENTUATION.

1. *German words with prefix; accent root.* Beruf, Empfang, Erfaß, Verlust, entging, mißlang, erfuhr, verlor, gelang, Gebrauch, Geleit, zerriß, Verlag, geliebt, bestellt, verstand.

2. *German words with suffix or suffixes; accent root.* Achtung, ehrlich, leben, lebend, Tugend, artig, furchtsam, friedlich, Wohnung, Wohnungen, Übung, Übungen, reinlich, Reinlichkeit, finster, Finsternis, Königs, Könige, Sohnes, Söhne, Nebels, gutes, schönes, schöneres, kurzes, kürzeste, Freiheit, Freundschaft, freundschaftlich.

3. *German words with prefix, and suffix or suffixes; accent root.* berufen, empfangen, ersetzen, verloren, entgehen, Zerlegung, Zerlegungen, zerrissen, geliebte, Erfahrung, Erfahrungen, gelegen, Gelegenheit, Gelegenheiten, verstehen, Verständnis, Verständnisse, verschwenden, verschwenderisch, Ersparnis, Ersparnisse, gebrauchen.

4. *Compounds (nouns, verbs, adjectives).* Bei=stand, bei=stehen, Aus=gang, aus=gehen, Ost=wind, Mund=art, Zu=kunft, All=macht, Sonnen=schein, Groß=mutter, groß=mütterlich, auf=stehen, aufgestanden, Apfel=baum, Apfel=bäume, liebens=würdig, Liebenswürdigkeit. (*Adverbs*) da=bei, her=vor, hier=mit, vor=über, zu=wider.

5. *Foreign; accent as marked.* Soldat', Student', studie'ren, studiert', regiert', Regiment', Poet', Lec'tor, Lecto'ren, Harmonie', Fami'lie, Dari'us, Ma'rius, Marie', Emi'lie, Natio'n', national', Nationalität'.

Use of Capital Letters.

NOTE.— The following sections to § 71 are added for reference and might better be omitted at first.

61. With a capital initial are written the first word of a sentence, or of a direct quotation, and usually also the first word of each line in poetry. Also :

62. All nouns, and words used as nouns; as, der Gute (adjective), *the good (man)*; ein Reisender (participle), *a traveler*; das Streben (infinitive), *the effort*, etc.

63. The pronouns of the second person in epistolary correspondence ; and, always, the pronouns of the third person plural when used for the second person (except the reflexive *sich*.)

NOTE. — Also, usually, other forms when used figuratively ; as plural for singular, or one person for another (§ 189).

64. (a) Adjectives and ordinal numerals in titles: Friedrich der Große, *Frederick the Great*; Heinrich der Vierte, *Henry the Fourth*; das Königl. Museum, *the Royal Museum*; Seine Majestät, *His Majesty*.

(b) Adjectives derived from names of persons and places, having a restricted, personal or local meaning: die Grimmschen Märchen, *the Grimm stories*; der Kölner Dom, *the Cologne cathedral*; but: die lutherische Kirche, *the Lutheran church*, in a general sense.

(c) Adjectives derived from names of countries are to be spelled with a small initial except when used as nouns; as, deutsch, *German*; but der Deutsche, *the German*.

65. All other words are spelled with a small initial. Nouns, when used adverbially, for instance: morgens, *in the morning*; abends, *in the evening*; but des Morgens, des Abends.

Also indefinite pronouns; as, etwas, *something*; nichts, *nothing*, etc. But etwas Gutes, *something good* (the adj. as noun).

66. Modified capitals are to be marked by two dots or strokes; Ä, Ö, Ü; as, Ämter, not Aemter, as formerly.

Emphasis.

67. The emphatic force of our *italic* letters is expressed by printing the letters apart or *spaced* (gesperrt); as, e i n Wort, *one word*; but digraphs are never separated; as, nicht, *not*.

NOTE. — The marks of *punctuation* are, in general, the same as in English. But the punctuation is usually stronger, especially in the more frequent use of the comma, to mark subordinate clauses, etc.; and, generally, more than in English, to indicate the grammatical construction. All subordinate, including infinitive, clauses are regularly separated by a comma; but not the members of a contracted sentence; that is, two or more verbs with same subject, when connected by *und*, *and*.

Division of Syllables.

68. Syllables are, in general, divided according to pronunciation. The following points may be noted :

(a) A single consonant between vowels goes with the latter ; as, tre=ten, le=sen, Se=gen.

NOTE.— Even words like se=hen (§ 24) will be thus divided, though h properly belongs with the foregoing vowel.

(b) Two consonants, or double consonants, between vowels will be divided ; as, Freun=de, Her=ren, här=ter, stel=ten, Was=ser, seg=nen. But not a mute and a liquid ; as, A=pril'.

(c) The signs, ch, sch, ph, th, ß are treated as single consonants : la=chen, A=sche, Dr=tho=gra=phie', bü=ßen.

NOTE.— In other compound consonants, there is diversity of usage as, A=pfel or Ap=fel ; Kno=spe or Knoß=pe ; Ka=sten or Kas=ten ; Kra=ßen or Krat=ßen, etc.

(d) But compounds, and derivatives with consonant suffixes, will be divided according to their constituent parts. As : Aug=apfel, dar=aus, Donnerß=tag, voll=enden, Rös=chen, Kirch=lein.

NOTE.— The chief application of these rules is in the division of words between two lines. In doubtful cases, such division is best avoided.

The Hyphen (Bindestrich).

69. The division of the syllables of a word between two lines is marked, as in English, by the hyphen. The hyphen is also used to mark special compounds, usually proper names, titles, and phrase-compounds ; also compounds of unusual length, and sometimes for the sake of distinction ; but not in ordinary compounds. As : Jung=Stilling, Ober=Italien, Kaiserlich=König=lich ; daß Stell=dich=ein ; Oberlandesgerichts=Präsident, Erd=Rücken (dist. from erdrücken), etc. For a special use of the hyphen, see § 392.

The Apostrophe.

70. The apostrophe is used to mark the omission of a letter; as, *ich lieb' ihn, ißt's* (for *ich liebe ihn, ißt es*) — especially often in poetry, as *Grenadier', heil'ge* for *Grenadiere, heilige*), etc. The apostrophe is not to be used with genitives in *-s*; as, *Karl's, Alexanders*; but will take the place of *-s* where this cannot be added; as, *Demosthenes' Reden*. It is written also in the more unusual contractions of the article, as, *brach's* (*daß*) *Rüßlein : um's* (*des*) *Himmel's* *willen*, etc.; but not in the regular contraction with prepositions, *an's*, etc. See § 191.

REVIEW EXERCISE.

Armut ist keine Schande.

Poverty is no shame.

Geduld' überwin'det alles.

Patience overcomes all.

Mor'genstun'de hat Gold im Munde.

Morning-hour has gold in the mouth.

Mü'ßiggang' ist aller Laster An'fang.

Idleness is of all vices beginning.

Beim Ei'genjinn' ist kein Gewinn'.

In [the] obstinacy is no profit.

Willst du immer weiter schweifen?

Wilt thou ever further roam?

Sieh, das Gute liegt so nah;

See, the good lies so near;

Lerne nur das Glück ergrei'fen,

Learn only [the] happiness (to) seize,

Denn das Glück ist immer da.

For [the] happiness is always there.

LESSON I.

Declension.

71. (a) There are in German two numbers — the Singular and the Plural.

(b) Four cases: — the Nominative, the case of the subject; the Genitive, representing, besides the English possessive, most of the relations expressed by the preposition *of*; the Dative, the case of the indirect object, often expressed by *to* or *for*; and the Accusative, the case of the direct object.

(c) Three genders, — the Masculine, the Feminine, and the Neuter. But the gender of nouns does not in all cases depend upon their meaning.

The Definite Article.

72. (a) The definite article is declined as follows:

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>masc. fem. neut.</i>
Nom.	der	die	das, <i>the</i>	die, <i>the</i>
Gen.	des	der	des, <i>of the</i>	der, <i>of the</i>
Dat.	dem	der	dem, <i>to the</i>	den, <i>to the</i>
Acc.	den	die	das, <i>the</i>	die, <i>the</i>

(b) The following remarks are important:

1. IN GENDER: The definite article has in the nominative singular a distinct form for each gender. Hence these forms are conveniently used to mark the gender of nouns; as, *der Tisch* (masc.), *the table*; *die Tinte* (fem.), *the ink*; *das Buch* (neut.), *the book*.

In the genitive and dative singular the masculine and the neuter have the same form; and all the genders have the same form in the plural.

2. IN CASE: The masculine singular alone has a distinct form for each

case. Elsewhere the accusative has the same form as the nominative; and in the feminine singular the genitive and the dative have the same form.

3. The definite article is frequently used — especially with *generic* and *abstract* nouns — when not employed in English. As, *der Mensch, man*; *die Tugend, virtue* (Lesson XLVI).

NOTE. — Some of the forms of the definite article suffer abbreviation in colloquial or poetic language — especially 's for das — less frequently 'n for den. For the contraction of the article with prepositions, see § 191

Declension of Nouns.

73. (a) There are two declensions of nouns in German, the *strong* and the *weak*. Nouns which form their plural in en or n are of the weak declension; all others are of the strong (except a few *mixed* nouns. Less. V.).

NOTE. — The *strong* is the older and more complete declension; the *weak* a later form. The two are usually defined by the genitive singular; but the definition by the plural is more convenient for feminine nouns.

(b) Feminine nouns remain unchanged in the singular.

(c) In all other nouns, the strong declension forms the genitive singular in *eſ* or *ſ*; the weak, in *en* or *n*. The other cases of the singular are known from the genitive — the neuter accusative being always like the nominative.

(d) The dative plural of all nouns ends in *n*. Other cases of the plural are like the nominative.

(e) Hence, generally, to decline a German noun, we must know the genitive singular and the nominative plural.

NOTE. — As will appear hereafter, the following points are important:

1. The gender — this is of capital importance.
2. The ending — which sometimes determines the declension.
3. The number of syllables — whether monosyllable or not.
4. The accent — as marking foreign words.
5. The root vowel — whether modified (if a, o, u, au).

The Strong Declension.

74. Nouns declined by the strong declension are subdivided into three classes :

(a) The *first class* contains nouns which take no additional termination in the nominative plural. (Sometimes called the *contracted* form.)

(b) The *second class* contains nouns which take in the nominative plural the termination *e*. (Sometimes called the *primary* form.)

(c) The *third class* contains nouns which take in the nominative plural the termination *er*. (Sometimes called the *enlarged* form.)

NOTE.— The chief difficulty of declension is in forming the plural. As will be seen, except in the *mixed nouns* (Less. V.), the whole declension may generally be known from the nominative plural.

First Class of the Strong Declension. Plural —, *u**

75. (a) To this class belong all masculine and neuter nouns with the unaccented endings *el, em, en, er, chen, sein, sel*; all neuters with prefix *Ge* and ending *e*; one masculine in *-e*, *der Käse, the cheese*; and, in the plural, two feminines, § 77.

(b) Here belong also, by the ending *en*, infinitives used as nouns and contracted infinitives in *-n* (as hereafter). These are neuter and have no plural.

NOTE.— This class includes no nouns with accented endings; and no monosyllables, except the contracted infinitives *Sein, Tun*.

76. In the singular the genitive adds *es*; other cases, like the nominative. The nominative plural adds no ending; but some masculines in *el, en, er*, and the neuter *das Kloster, the cloister*, modify the root vowel. The dative plural adds *n*, except to nouns ending in *n*.

*The symbol *u* indicates modification of the root-vowel.

† See Appendix, p. 367.

77. The two feminines, die Mutter, *the mother*, and die Tochter, *the daughter*, form their plurals after this declension: Mütter, Töchter; but, like other feminines, remain unchanged in the singular.

78. Nouns ending in chen or lein are diminutive derivatives, and are always neuter; as, das Mädchen, *the girl* (from die Magd, *the maid*); das Fräulein, *the young lady*, Miss (from die Frau, *the woman*) — with modified vowel.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N. der Spaten, <i>the spade.</i>	der Vater, <i>the father.</i>
G. des Spatens, <i>of the spade.</i>	des Vaters, <i>of the father.*</i>
D. dem Spaten, <i>to the spade.</i>	dem Vater, <i>to the father.*</i>
A. den Spaten, <i>the spade.</i>	den Vater, <i>the father.</i>

Plural.

N. die Spaten, <i>the spades.</i>	die Väter, <i>the fathers.</i>
G. der Spaten, <i>of the spades.</i>	der Väter, <i>of the fathers.</i>
D. den Spaten, <i>to the spades.</i>	den Vätern, <i>to the fathers.</i>
A. die Spaten, <i>the spades.</i>	die Väter, <i>the fathers.</i>

Singular.

N. das Gemälde, <i>the painting.</i>	die Mutter, <i>the mother.</i>
G. des Gemäldes, <i>of the painting.</i>	der Mutter, <i>of the mother.</i>
D. dem Gemälde, <i>to the painting.</i>	der Mutter, <i>to the mother.</i>
A. das Gemälde, <i>the painting.</i>	die Mutter, <i>the mother.</i>

Plural.

N. die Gemälde, <i>the paintings.</i>	die Mütter, <i>the mothers.</i>
G. der Gemälde, <i>of the paintings.</i>	der Mütter, <i>of the mothers.</i>
D. den Gemälden, <i>to the paintings.</i>	den Müttern, <i>to the mothers.</i>
A. die Gemälde, <i>the paintings.</i>	die Mütter, <i>the mothers.</i>

* With names of living things, the genitive is often translated by the English possessive, *the father's*, etc. And the preposition is not always required in translating the dative.

Decline, without vowel change in the plural: * der Amerikaner, *the American*; der Engländer, *the Englishman*; der Adler, *the eagle*; der Maler, *the painter*; der Lehrer, *the teacher*; der Schüler, *the scholar, pupil*; der Himmel, *the sky, heaven*; das Bäumchen, *the little tree*; der Flügel, *the wing*; das Fenster, *the window*.

Decline, modifying the vowel: der Acker, *the field*; der Garten, *the garden*; der Apfel, *the apple*; der Vogel, *the bird*; der Mantel, *the cloak*; der Bruder, *the brother*; das Kloster, *the cloister*; die Tochter, *the daughter*.

EXERCISE I.

1. Der Spaten des Bruders. 2. Das Gemälde des Vaters. 3. Die Lehrer der Amerikaner. 4. Die Äpfel des Gartens. 5. Dem Vater des Engländers. 6. Den Brüdern des Schülers. 7. Die Fenster des Klosters. 8. Der Flügel des Vogels. 9. Die Mütter der Mädchen. 10. Die Mäntel der Töchter. 11. Die Äpfel des Bäumchens. 12. In den (*dative*) Gärten der Amerikaner. 13. In dem Kloster—in den Klöstern. 14. Die Lehrer des Fräuleins.

1. The pupils of the teacher. 2. The paintings of the American. 3. The apples of the garden. 4. To the gardens of the Englishmen. 5. To the birds of (the) † heaven. 6. To the teacher of the scholars. 7. The wings of the birds—of the eagles. 8. The windows of the cloister—of the cloisters. 9. The mother of the girl—of the girls. 10. To the teacher's daughters. 11. Of the girl's cloak—of the cloaks of the girls. 12. The apples of the little trees in (*with dative*) the gardens.

A new series of Exercises, of a somewhat more advanced character, will be found at the end of the book. See Note to Preface, p. V.

NOTE.—The genitive, especially of names of persons or living things (*possessive genitive*), will often precede the governing noun, and then excludes the article; as, des Mädchens Mutter, for die Mutter des Mädchens, etc.

* This distinction applies, of course, only to a, o, u, au.

† In the Exercises, (–) indicates that the equivalent should be supplied; [–], that it should be omitted.

LESSON II.

79. Declension of the Indefinite Article.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ein	eine	ein, an, a.
G. eines	einer	eines, of an, of a.
D. einem	einer	einem, to an, to a.
A. einen	eine	ein, an, a.

The indefinite article, being originally the numeral *ein*, *one*, can have no plural.

80. The declension of the indefinite article differs from that of the definite article chiefly in having only two forms, instead of three, in the nominative singular — the masculine and neuter having no ending. Thus the indefinite article does not here, like the definite, distinguish the gender of masculine or neuter nouns.

NOTE. — Like the definite article, the indefinite also, but more rarely, suffers abbreviation in colloquial or poetic language; as, 'ne for *eine*, 'nen for *einen*, etc.

Second Class of the Strong Declension. Plural -e, -e.

81. This class includes all genders :

- (a) *Masculine* : most monosyllables, and most other nouns not in Class I nor ending in *e*.
- (b) *Neuter* : some monosyllables, and most other nouns not in Class I nor ending in *um*.
- (c) *Feminine* : (In the plural) some monosyllables, and a few nouns ending in *niß*, *fal*.

82. (a) This is the largest and most heterogeneous of all the declensions. It is, however, prevailingly masculine, and includes most monosyllables.

- (b) The neuter and feminine monosyllables here belonging are important groups of mostly common words. The neuters include all ending in *-r*. See Appendix, p. 368.

83. The form of the declension is as follows :

(a) The genitive singular adds *eſ*, the dative *e*, the accusative being like the nominative. The nominative plural adds *e*. Nouns ending in *niſ* double the *ſ* (*ff*) before all endings (§ 41).

(b) Monosyllables, if masculine, will in the plural modify the root-vowel *generally*; if feminine, *always*; if neuter, *never*.* In words of more than one syllable the root-vowel is generally left unmodified.

84. As will appear hereafter, compound nouns whose last component is a monosyllable, count as monosyllables in declension; as, *der Apfelbaum, the appletree*; plural, *Apfelbäume*; *die Hauptſtadt, the capital city*; plural, *Hauptſtädte* — like *der Baum, die Stadt*.

85. The *e* of the genitive (*eſ*) and of the dative singular may be omitted when euphony permits, especially in words of more than one syllable. The omission is more usual in conversation and in familiar writing than in formal style.

NOTE. — It is the regular omission of this *e*, as well as of the ending of the plural (after unaccented *liquid* or *vowel* terminations), that distinguishes the first class (or contracted form) of nouns. At first the omission was purely euphonic. Like examples will be found § 94; in adjectives, §§ 139, 150; in verbs, §214, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

N. <i>der Sohn, the son.</i>	<i>daß Jahr, the year.</i>
G. <i>deß Sohneſ, of the son.</i>	<i>deß Jahreſ, of the year.</i>
D. <i>dem Sohne, to the son.</i>	<i>dem Jahre, to the year.</i>
A. <i>den Sohn, the son.</i>	<i>daß Jahr, the year.</i>

* Except *daß Floß, pl. Flöße*. See also § 105.

Plural.

N. die Söhne, <i>the sons.</i>	die Jahre, <i>the years.</i>
G. der Söhne, <i>of the sons.</i>	der Jahre, <i>of the years.</i>
D. den Söhnen, <i>to the sons.</i>	den Jahren, <i>to the years.</i>
A. die Söhne, <i>the sons.</i>	die Jahre, <i>the years.</i>

Der Mo'nat, *the month.***Das Hinderniß, *the obstacle.****Singular.*

N. der Monat,	das Hinderniß,
G. des Monats,	des Hindernisses,
D. dem Monat,	dem Hindernisse,
A. den Monat.	das Hinderniß.

Plural.

N. die Monate,	die Hindernisse,
G. der Monate,	der Hindernisse,
D. den Monaten,	den Hindernissen,
A. die Monate.	die Hindernisse.

Feminines :**Die Hand, *the hand.*****Die Kuh, *the cow.***

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. die Hand,	die Hände,	die Kuh,	die Kühe,
G. der Hand,	der Hände,	der Kuh,	der Kühe,
D. der Hand,	den Händen,	der Kuh,	den Kühen,
A. die Hand,	die Hände.	die Kuh,	die Kühe.

With the indefinite article :*Masc.**Fem.**Neut.***Ein Freund, *a friend.*****Eine Gans, *a goose.*****Ein Meer, *a sea.***

N. ein Freund,	eine Gans,	ein Meer,
G. eines Freundes,	einer Gans,	eines Meeres,
D. einem Freunde,	einer Gans,	einem Meere,
A. einen Freund.	eine Gans.	ein Meer.

Decline with modification of vowel in the plural: *der Stuhl, the chair*; *der Fluß, the river*; *der Fuß, the foot*; *der Zahn, the tooth*; *der Gast, the guest*; *der Kopf, the head*; *der Rock, the coat*; *der Stock, the stick*; *der Tanz, the dance*; *der Baum, the tree*. (See § 41).

Also the following feminines: *die Bank, the bench*; *die Magd, the maid-servant*; *die Nacht, the night*; *die Stadt, the town*; *die Luft, the air*; *die Maus, the mouse*; *die Frucht, the fruit*; *die Nuß, the nut*; *die Braut, the bride*.

Without vowel modification, the masculines: *der Arm, the arm*; *der Hund, the dog*; *der Schuh, the shoe*; *der Tag, the day*; *der Jüngling, the youth*; *der Offizier, the officer*. The feminines: *die Besorgniß, the care*; *die Trübsal, the trouble*.

And the neuters: *das Haar, the hair*; *das Heft, the notebook*; *das Pferd, the horse*; *das Paar, the pair*; *das Pfund, the pound*; *das Schiff, the ship*; *das Thor, the gate*; *das Zeug, the stuff*.

EXERCISE II.

1. Die Söhne des Vaters. 2. Ein Bruder der Magd. 3. Die Hand eines Freundes. 4. Die Luft des Gebirges. 5. Die Kuh des Engländers. 6. Die Füße der Gänse. 7. Die Röcke der Gäste. 8. Die Tore der Stadt — der Städte. 9. Die Schuhe des Gastes. 10. Die Stöcke des Jünglings. 11. Auf (*dat.*) der Bank in dem Garten. 12. Auf den Bänken in den Gärten. 13. Die Schiffe der Engländer. 14. Auf den Schiffen der Amerikaner. 15. Die Mägde der Braut. 16. Die Besorgnisse der Mütter. 17. Die Pferde der Offiziere. 18. Die Monate des Jahres.

1. The trees of the garden. 2. To the brothers of the maid-servant. 3. The air of the town. 4. The guest of a friend. 5. The gardens of a convent. 6. The days of the month. 7. The teeth of a mouse. 8. To the friends of the brother. 9. The dances of the guests. 10. The benches of the garden. 11.

The chair of the maid-servant. 12. The chairs and (und) the benches of the scholars. 13. A night, a month, a year. 14. The officer's shoes. 15. The fruits of the trees. 16. The bride's brothers. 17. The mothers of the brides. 18. The days and the nights, 19. The fruits and the nuts. 20. The troubles of the youths. 21. On (auf, *dat.*) the officer's ship. 22. On the officers' horses. 23. The air in the towns. 24. The teeth of the mice.

LESSON III.

86. The adjective pronouns: *dieser, diese, dieses, this; jener, jene, jenes, that (yon); welcher, welche, welches, which, what; jeder, jede, jedes, each, every,** are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>
Nom.	<i>dieser,</i>	<i>diese,</i>	<i>dieses.</i>	<i>diese.</i>
Gen.	<i>dieses,</i>	<i>dieser,</i>	<i>dieses.</i>	<i>dieser.</i>
Dat.	<i>diesem,</i>	<i>dieser,</i>	<i>diesem.</i>	<i>diesen.</i>
Acc.	<i>diesen,</i>	<i>diese,</i>	<i>dieses.</i>	<i>diese.</i>

87. This declension is like that of the definite article in giving three endings — one for each gender — in the nominative singular. But it has the ending *-e* instead of *-ie*, and *eß* instead of *-aß*. In these endings the definite article is irregular

88. Like the indefinite article (§ 79) ~~in the singular and like *dieser* in the plural,~~ are declined the possessives:

mein, meine, mein, my.
dein, deine, dein, thy, (your).
sein, seine, sein, his, its.
ihr, ihre, ihr, her.

* *Jeder*, however, has no plural.

unſer, unſ(e)re, unſer, *our*.

euer, eu(e)rē, euer, *your*.

ihr, ihre, ihr, *their*, and the negative :

kein, keine, kein, *not a, no*.

Third Class of the Strong Declension ; Plural *er*.

89. To this class belong a large number of monosyllabic neuters, with a few masculines ; nouns ending in *tum* ; and a few other neuters of more than one syllable. No feminines. They form the genitive and dative singular, like Class II. ; and the nominative plural in *er*, with vowel modification.

NOTE. — Neuter monosyllables are thus divided between II (§ 82, *b*), and III, and should therefore have special attention.

(*a*) Observe that the nouns in *tum* modify, not the radical vowel, but the vowel of the suffix.

(*b*) The *e* of the genitive and dative singular may be omitted under the same conditions as in the preceding declension. (§ 85).

EXAMPLES.

Das Haus, the house.

Das Fürſt'entum, the principality.

Singular.

N. das Haus,

das Fürſtentum,

G. deſ Hauſeſ,

deſ Fürſtentumſ,

D. dem Hauſe,

dem Fürſtentum,

A. das Haus.

daſ Fürſtentum.

Plural.

N. die Häuſer,

die Fürſtentümer,

G. der Häuſer,

der Fürſtentümer,

D. den Häuſern,

den Fürſtentümern,

A. die Häuſer.

die Fürſtentümer.

In the same manner : der Geiſt, *the spirit* ; der Gott, *the god* ; der Leib, *the body* ; der Mann, *the man* ; der Ort, *the place* ; der

Rand, *the edge, margin*; der Wald, *the forest*; der Wurm, *the worm*; der Vormund, *the guardian*; der Irrtum, *the error*; der Reichtum, *the riches*.

NOTE.— This important list of the masculines of this class should be remembered. A few others are sometimes so declined. (See Appendix.)

The following examples of monosyllabic neuters: das Amt, *the office*; das Bad, *the bath*; das Blatt, *the leaf*; das Buch, *the book*; das Dach, *the roof*; das Dorf, *the village*; das Feld, *the field*; das Geld, *the money*; das Glas, *the glass*; das Kind, *the child*; das Land, *the land*; das Lied, *the song*; das Schloß, *the lock, castle*; das Thal, *the valley*; das Volk, *the people*.

And the following neuters of more than one syllable: das Gemach', *the apartment*; das Gemüt', *the feeling*; das Gesicht', *the face*; das Geschlecht', *the sex*; das Gespenst', *the spectre*; das Gewand', *the garment*; das Regiment', *the regiment*; das Spital', or Hospital', *the hospital* — all with *final accent*.

NOTE.— This list should also be remembered.

90. The Verb sein, *to be*.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
ich bin, <i>I am.</i>	wir sind, <i>we are.</i>
du bist, <i>thou art (you are).</i>	ihr seid, <i>you are.</i>
er ist, <i>he is.</i>	sie sind, <i>they are.</i>
sie ist, <i>she is.</i>	Sie sind, <i>you are.*</i>
es ist, <i>it is.</i>	bin ich? <i>am I? etc.</i>

VOCABULARY.

gut, <i>good.</i>	groß, <i>tall, large.</i>
schlecht, <i>bad.</i>	klein, <i>small, little.</i>

* The pronouns of the third plural — then written with capitals — are regularly used in ordinary address, to one or more persons. The corresponding possessive is then Ihr, Ihre, Ihr (§ 88). See also §§ 186–8.

kalt, *cold*.jung, *young*.warm, *warm*.alt, *old*.hoch, *high*.neu, *new*.grün, *green*.fleißig, *industrious*.

91. Adjectives standing alone as predicate are not inflected.

EXERCISE III.

1. Ich bin ein Kind. 2. Wir sind Kinder. 3. Die Bücher der Schüler sind klein. 4. Die Blätter des Baumes sind grün. 5. Dieser Mann ist der Vater jenes Kindes. 6. Die Brüder meines Vaters sind seine Freunde. 7. Sind die Dörfer groß? 8. Ist dieser Mann der Bruder deines Vaters? 9. Ist sie die Tochter dieses Mannes? 10. Sind die Schüler fleißig? 11. Die Häuser des Dorfes sind alt. 12. Die Bäume des Waldes sind hoch. 13. Seid ihr die Kinder dieses Mannes? 14. Die Mägde unseres Bruders sind jung. 15. Welches Haus ist das Haus unseres Freundes? 16. Die Bücher dieses Schülers sind neu. 17. Die Dörfer und die Schlösser dieses Landes sind klein. 18. Jenes Haus ist alt; diese Häuser sind neu. 19. Diese Männer sind unsere Freunde. 20. Die Vögel sind in den Wäldern. 21. Die Gläser sind auf dem Tische des Tisches. 22. Sind jene Mädchen die Töchter unserer Gäste? 23. In welchem Tale sind die Felder jenes Mannes? 24. Die Vormünder dieser Kinder sind in diesem Dorfe.

1. *Are you* a child? 2. Are you children? 3. We are the children of *your* friends. 4. The daughters of this man are tall. 5. The houses of the village are small. 6. The trees of the forest are green. 7. The scholars of this teacher are industrious. 8. The sons of our friend are young. 9. This song is old. 10. These books are new. 11. Are these children the sons of my friend? 12. The roofs of the houses are high. 13. She is the daughter of my brother. 14. The fields are green. 15. The air is cold. 16. The bath is warm. 17. The sons of

my guest are Englishmen. 18. In which lands are those villages? 19. The fields of these valleys are green. 20. These baths are cold. 21. The birds of the forest are industrious. 22. The apartments of the king's castle are large. 23. The officers of these regiments are old. 24. The songs of the people — of the peoples. (*See notes on the Exercises, préface p. V.*)

LESSON IV.

The Weak Declension.

92. The weak declension comprises all nouns of the feminine gender (except *Mutter*, *Tochter*, and those of the second class of the strong declension); most masculines ending in *e*; a few masculine monosyllables which formerly ended in *e*; and many foreign masculines accented on the last syllable. No neuters.

(*a*) This declension includes, therefore, all feminines of more than one syllable, except those in *-niß* and *-fal* (II), and the two words *Mutter* and *Tochter* (I).

(*b*) Feminine monosyllables are nearly equally divided between this declension and the second class of the strong declension. The weak declension includes all foreign or derivative feminines, and those that once ended in *-e*.

(*c*) Foreign masculines are also divided between the same two declensions. Those in *-al'*, *-añ'*, *-aſt'*, *-ier'*, belong to the strong; most others, including all that once ended in *-e*, belong to the weak declension.

(*d*) Hence, words in either of the foregoing groups must be carefully observed.

93. Nouns of this declension form their plural in *-en* or *-n*. The feminines remain unchanged in the singular,

but the masculines take the termination *-en* or *-n* also in the singular, for all cases except the nominative.

94. Nouns ending in *c*, *el*, *er*, and *ar*, unaccented, take the termination *n*; all others take *en*. Thus: *die Blume*, *die Blumen*; *die Nadel*, *die Nadeln*; *die Feder*, *die Federn*; *der Ungar*, *die Ungarn*. But: *die Tugend*, *die Tugenden*; *die Station'*, *die Station'en*; *der Student'*, *die Student'en*; *der Husar'*, *die Husar'en* (§ 85).

95. Feminine derivatives in *-in* double the *n* in the plural; as *die Fürstin*, *the princess*: pl. *die Fürstinnen* (§ 3, *a*).

For a special form in feminine singular, see § 106.

96. No noun of the weak declension modifies the root-vowel in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

Die Blume, the flower.

Der Knabe, the boy.

Singular.

N.	<i>die Blume,</i>	<i>der Knabe,</i>
G.	<i>der Blume,</i>	<i>des Knaben,</i>
D.	<i>der Blume,</i>	<i>dem Knaben,</i>
A.	<i>die Blume.</i>	<i>den Knaben.</i>

Plural.

N.	<i>die Blumen,</i>	<i>die Knaben,</i>
G.	<i>der Blumen,</i>	<i>der Knaben,</i>
D.	<i>den Blumen,</i>	<i>den Knaben,</i>
A.	<i>die Blumen.</i>	<i>die Knaben.</i>

Die Feder, the pen; gen. *der Feder*; pl. *die Federn*, etc.

Monosyllables: *die Art, the kind*; gen. *der Art*; pl. *die Arten*, etc. — *Der Held, the hero*; gen. *des Helden*; pl. *die Helden*, etc.

Foreign: *der Poet', the poet*; gen. *des Poet'en*; pl. *die Poet'en*, etc.

Decline like die Blume : die Stube, *the room* ; die Freude, *the joy* ; die Schule, *the school*, etc.

Like die Feder : die Nadel, *the needle* ; die Mauer, *the wall* ; die Schüssel, *the dish*, etc.

Like die Art : die Uhr, *the watch* ; die Frau, *the woman, wife* ; die That, *the deed* ; die Thür, *the door* ; die Zahl, *the number*, etc.

Like der Knabe : der Preuße, *the Prussian* ; der Affe, *the monkey* ; der Neffe, *the nephew*, etc.

Like der Poet : der Advokat', *the lawyer* ; der Student', *the student* ; der Philosoph', *the philosopher*, etc.

Like der Held : der Bär, *the bear* ; der Christ, *the Christian* ; der Fürst, *the prince* ; der Graf, *the count* ; der Hirt, *the herdsman* ; der Mensch, (*the*) *man* ; der Mohr, *the Moor* ; der Narr, *the fool* ; der Ochse, *the ox* ; der Prinz, *the prince* ; der Tor, *the fool*.

NOTE.—This list—which comprises the most important masculine monosyllables of this declension—should be remembered. Apparently they would belong to the second class of the strong declension ; but -t has been dropped from the nominative singular. (See Appendix.)

97. The noun, der Herr, *the Lord, gentleman* (also, *Mr. or Sir*) adds in the singular only n ; in the plural en ; as, des Herrn ; pl. die Herren, etc.

98. PAST INDICATIVE OF *sein, to be.*

Singular.

Plural.

ich war, *I was.*

wir waren, *we were.*

du warst, *thou wast (you were).*

ihr war(e)t, *you were.*

er war, *he was.*

sie waren, *they were.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie waren, *you were.*

VOCABULARY.

und, *and.*

wo, *where.*

oder, *or.*

war ich, *was I?*

aber, *but.*

warst du, *wast thou?*

schr, *very.*

EXERCISE IV.

1. Die Blumen des Gartens sind die Freude meiner Mutter. 2. Jene Herren sind Fürsten und Grafen. 3. Die Mauern der Stadt sind hoch und alt. 4. Die Stuben sind klein. 5. Das Land unseres Herrn, des Fürsten, ist ein Fürstentum. 6. Die Preußen und die Ungarn waren fleißig. 7. Die Ochsen waren groß, aber die Kühe waren sehr klein. 8. Dieser Knabe ist der Sohn des Grafen. 9. Die Uhr dieses Herrn war neu. 10. Diese Uhren sind sehr alt aber gut. 11. Ist er ein Preuße oder ein Ungar? 12. Die Taten des Helden. 13. Die Türen des Hauses. 14. Die Knechten des Grafen. 15. Die Hefte des Studenten. 16. Diese Herren sind Preußen. 17. Die Knaben sind in der Schule — in den Schulen. 18. Die Zahl der Studenten ist groß. 19. Die Taten der Christen. 20. Die Stuben des Hauses. 21. Die Blumen der Gärten. 22. Die Schüler des Herrn. 23. Die Nadeln der Mädchen. 24. Die Schüsseln sind auf dem Tische.

1. The Prussians and the Hungarians are Christians. 2. These boys were pupils of my father. 3. The schools of this town are good. 4. It was the deed of a fool. 5. The daughters of the count were old, but the sons of the prince were young. 6. The hands of the ladies. 7. The doors of my house. 8. Where are my needles? 9. Where were the ladies and the gentlemen? 10. The boys were industrious. 11. These dishes are new. 12. The deeds of the heroes. 13. The watches of those gentlemen. 14. The number of the boys and of the girls. 15. The lands of the count. 16. The monkeys and the bears. 17. These princes are Christians. 18. The teeth and the feet of the oxen. 19. A daughter of a lawyer. 20. The wife of an officer. 21. That gentleman is a Prussian. 22. I was in the room. 23. We were in the rooms. 24. Was he the son of a poet?

NOTE. — For more advanced exercises see end of the book.

LESSON V.

Peculiarities in Declension.

99. The following masculines ending in *e* form their genitive in *-ns*, and their other cases in *-n* according to the weak declension :

der Friede, <i>peace.</i>	der Haufe, <i>heap.</i>
der Funke, <i>spark.</i>	der Name, <i>name.</i>
der Gedanke, <i>thought.</i>	der Same, <i>seed.</i>
der Glaube, <i>faith.</i>	der Wille, <i>will.*</i>

— with a few others, more or less variable.

100. Der Schade, *harm*, gen. Schadens, usually modifies the vowel in the plural, die Schäden ; but sing. also der Schaden.

101. Der Schmerz, *the pain*, is occasionally declined in the same way: gen. des Schmerzens, dat. dem Schmerzen, etc. ; but usually des Schmerzes, etc. ; pl. die Schmerzen. And der Fels, *the rock*, has also the shorter form, der Fels, gen. des Felsens or Felsen ; pl. die Felsen.

102. One neuter, das Herz, *the heart*, forms its genitive in *-ens*, des Herzens, dat. dem Herzen, acc. das Herz ; plur. die Herzen. (§73, *c*).

103. Some of these nouns have also the nominative in *-en*, and are then regularly of the first class of the strong declension ; as, der Frieden, des Friedens, etc.

104. A few masculines and neuters follow the strong declension in the singular, and the weak in the plural. Such are :

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
der Bauer, <i>farmer, peasant.</i>	des Bauers,	die Bauern,
der Mast, <i>mast (of a ship).</i>	des Mastes,	die Masten.

* This declension is based on a (strong) nominative *-e(n)*. See § 76.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
der Muskel, <i>muscle.</i>	des Muskels,	die Muskeln.
der Nachbar, <i>neighbor.</i>	des Nachbars,	die Nachbarn.
der Pantoffel, <i>slipper.</i>	des Pantoffels,	die Pantoffel(n).
der See, <i>lake.</i>	des Sees,	die See(e)n.
der Staat, <i>state.</i>	des Staates,	die Staaten.
der Stachel, <i>sting.</i>	des Stachels,	die Stacheln.
der Stiefel, <i>boot.</i>	des Stiefels,	die Stiefel(n).
der Strahl, <i>ray.</i>	des Strahles,	die Strahlen.
der Vetter, <i>cousin.</i>	des Veters,	die Vettern.
das Auge, <i>eye.</i>	des Auges,	die Augen.
das Bett, <i>bed.</i>	des Bettes,	die Betten.
das Ende, <i>end.</i>	des Endes,	die Enden.
das Hemd, <i>shirt.</i>	des Hemdes,	die Hemden.
das Ohr, <i>ear.</i>	des Ohres,	die Ohren.

and the foreign masculine titles in -or (§ 117); with a few foreign neuters; as, das Insekt', *the insect.* See Appendix.

These constitute what is called the *mixed declension*, in which are sometimes included also the nouns, §§ 99-102, and the neuters, § 118 and § 119.

105. Some of these words have double forms: des Bauern, des Nachbarn, etc.; also pl. die Pantoffel, and (better) die Stiefel. And there are a few other nouns in which usage is divided, in the singular or plural, or both, between the weak and the strong declensions, or even between different classes of the strong declension; as, der Baier, *the Bavarian*; gen. Baiers or Baiern; pl. Baier or Baiern; der Dorn; *the thorn*; pl. Dörner, Dorne, or Dornen; der Sporn, *the spur*; pl. Sporne or Spornen, or even Sporen; das Boot, pl. die Boote or Böte; das Rohr, pl. die Röhre or Röhre, etc. Such details must be found in the dictionaries. (See Appendix).

106. The n of an earlier weak inflection is retained regularly as dative singular in the phrase auf Erden, *on earth*; and sometimes elsewhere — especially in poetry.

NOTE I.— In poetry the form is sometimes found with the article; as, *in der Erden*, etc.; and, rarely also in the genitive; as, *die Güter dieser Erden*, *the goods of this earth*.

2. Note also such phrases as: *vor Freuden*, *for joy*; *zu Ehren*, *in honor (of)*; *zu Gunsten*, *in favor (of)*; *von Seiten*, *on the part (of)*, etc.— some of which, however, were originally plurals.

107. A few words give two plurals in different senses, having both senses in the singular. Such are: *das Band*; pl. *Bänder*, *ribbons*; *Bande*, *bonds*. *Die Bank*; pl. *Bänke*, *benches*; *Banken*, *banks*. *Das Wort*; pl. *Wörter*, *words* (singly); *Worte*, *words* (connected). (§§ 424–426).

NOTE.— Colloquially—in imitation of French or English—are found plurals in *s*; as, *Perls*, *Säbels*, *Mädchens*, etc.

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT OF *sein*.

108. The perfect and pluperfect of the verb *sein* are formed by adding the perfect participle *gewesen*, *been*, to the present and past tenses of the same verb.

(a) Observe that *sein* is here its own auxiliary, where in English we use *have*.

PERFECT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>ich bin gewesen</i> , <i>I have been.</i>	<i>wir sind gewesen</i> , <i>we have been.</i>
<i>du bist gewesen</i> , <i>thou hast been.</i>	<i>ihr seid gewesen</i> , <i>you have been.</i>
<i>er ist gewesen</i> , <i>he has been.</i>	<i>sie sind gewesen</i> , <i>they have been.</i>

Sing. or Plur., *Sie sind gewesen*, *you have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

<i>ich war gewesen</i> , <i>I had been.</i>	<i>wir waren gewesen</i> , <i>we had been.</i>
<i>du warst gewesen</i> , <i>thou hadst been.</i>	<i>ihr war(e)t gewesen</i> , <i>you had been.</i>
<i>er war gewesen</i> , <i>he had been.</i>	<i>sie waren gewesen</i> , <i>they had been.</i>

Sing. or Plur., *Sie waren gewesen*, *you had been.*

(b) Observe that when the verb is used in a compound form, the participle stands at the end of the sentence. Thus: *Du bist gut gewesen.* *Der Knabe war fleißig gewesen.*

VOCABULARY.

reich, <i>rich</i> .	stark, <i>strong</i> .	in, <i>in</i>	} govern the dative } when expressing <i>rest</i> .
arm, <i>poor</i> .	schwach, <i>weak</i> .	auf, <i>on</i>	
nützlich, <i>useful</i> .	scharf, <i>sharp</i> .	wie, <i>as, like</i> ; nicht, <i>not</i> .	

EXERCISE V.

1. Der Vater dieses Bauers war der Nachbar meines Betters gewesen. 2. Die Jahre des Friedens sind dem Staate sehr nützlich gewesen. 3. Die Stiefel(n), die Pantoffel(n), die Hemden und die Röcke sind neu gewesen. 4. Die Dornen sind scharf wie Nadeln. 5. Der Sohn meines Nachbarn war reich gewesen. 6. In dieser Stube waren die Betten der Schüler. 7. Der Bruder unseres Betters war reich gewesen. 8. Seine Augen und seine Ohren sind groß, aber seine Füße sind klein. 9. Der Frieden des Herrn. 10. Meine Augen sind schwach. 11. Die Schmerzen des Herzens. 12. Der Friede der Staaten. 13. Die Bänder der Mädchen. 14. Diese Bauern sind Nachbarn gewesen. 15. Diese Wörter sind die Namen jener Männer. 16. Die Worte [des] Glaubens. 17. Die Namen jener Insekten. 18. Die Banken sind in den Städten. 19. Die Bande [des] Friedens. 20. Jene Herren sind Bettern.

1. The masts of this ship are very strong. 2. Your neighbors *have* been in this room. 3. The thoughts of the Christians. 4. The names of the peasants. 5. The brothers of my cousin *had* been poor. 6. My mother's slippers are old. 7. The hearts of (the) men. 8. His ears are large, but his eyes are very small. 9. My father's boots and my cousin's slippers and the shirts of the boys are not very new. 10. The beds of the scholars had been in this room. 11. The thoughts of my cousin are the thoughts of a Christian. 12. The eyes and the ears of a mouse are small. 13. The faith of the heart is strong. 14. These farmers are my neighbors. 15. The masts of the ships are high. 16. The peasants of these states have been very rich. 17. The ribbons of my slippers

are green. 18. The boots are on the benches. 19. The faces of the neighbors. 20. The thoughts and the words of (the) peace (see § 72, *b*, 3).

LESSON VI.

Declension of Proper Names.

109. Names of persons, places, and the neuter names of countries, when inflected, usually take *-s* in the genitive. Friedrich, *Frederick*, Friedrichs; Elisabeth, Elisabeths; Hilda, Hildas; Amerika, Amerikas; Straßburg, Straßburgs.

NOTE.— An earlier dative, or accusative, in *-n* or *-en* sometimes occurs colloquially; as, Peter-*n*, Just-*en*. (For plurals, see § 427.)

110. (*a*) Names of females ending in *e* may have in the genitive *-ens*, and in the dative and accusative *-en*: Sophi'e, Sophi'ens, Sophi'en; Ama'lie, Ama'liens, Ama'lien; but usually, only *-s* in genitive, and no ending in dative and accusative.

(*b*) Masculine names ending in a sibilant (*s*, *ß*, *sch*, *x*, *z*, *ß*) may take *-ens*, *-en*, *-en*: Max, Maxens, Maxen; but if surnames, or foreign, they take the apostrophe only (§ 70); as, Boß' Werke.

(*c*) Place names ending in a sibilant are not declined; as, Paris, Mainz, etc.

111. In speaking of sovereigns and dignitaries, the preposition *von* is used in such phrases as: der Kaiser von Rußland, *the Emperor of Russia*; die Königin von England, *the Queen of England*; der Bürgermeister von Magdeburg, *the mayor of Magdeburg*. This form may, generally, be used instead of the genitive of countries or places.

112. And, generally, the inflection of a personal name may be avoided by the use of the article; as, gen. des Karl, der Sophie, des Schiller, etc.; or of an apposition with the article; as, des Königs Heinrich (§§ 427–8).

113. The Latin nouns *Christus* and *Jesús* usually retain their Latin declension; thus:

N. <i>Christus</i> ;	G. <i>Christi</i> ;	D. <i>Christo</i> ;	A. <i>Christum</i> .
N. <i>Jesús</i> ;	G. <i>Jesu</i> ;	D. <i>Jesu</i> ;	A. <i>Jesum</i> .

THE FUTURE OF THE VERB *sein*, *to be*.

114. The future of the verb *sein* is formed by combining with the infinitive *sein* the present tense of the auxiliary verb *werden*, *to become*.

Singular.

Plural.

ich werde sein, *I shall be.*

wir werden sein, *we shall be.*

du wirst sein, *thou wilt be.*

ihr werdet sein, *you will be.*

er wird sein, *he will be.*

sie werden sein, *they will be.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie werden sein, *you will be.*

(a) And interrogatively: *werde ich sein? shall I be? wird er sein, will he be?* etc. Note that the infinitive goes to the end of the sentence; as, *ich werde fleißig sein, wird er fleißig sein?* etc.

VOCABULARY.

hier, *here.*

auch, *also.*

heute, *to-day.*

bald, *soon.*

morgen, *to-morrow.*

die Schwester, *the sister.*

gestern, *yesterday.*

mit, *with* (governs the dative).

EXERCISE VI.

1. Charlotte(n)s Mutter ist heute hier gewesen, und der Vater Marie(n)s wird morgen auch hier sein. 2. Der König von Spanien und die Königin von Portugal werden morgen in Madrid sein. 3. Die Flüsse Rußlands sind groß. 4. Ist er mit Sophie(n)s Schwester in Amalie(n)s Garten gewesen? 5. Er wird mit Marie(n) in der Stube sein. 6. Die Bettern Friedrichs werden auch bald hier sein.

7. Die Häuser von Paris sind groß. 8. Der Vater und die Mutter [der] Marie sind gestern hier gewesen. 9. Werden ihre Brüder und ihre Schwestern bald hier sein? 10. Der Kaiser und die Kaiserin von Deutschland sind in Berlin. 11. Das Leben Jesu. 12. Die Worte Jesu Christi. (*Adverbs of time precede adverbs of place.*)

1. I am Mary's brother and thou art Charlotte's sister. 2. The sister of the Emperor of Russia will be here tomorrow. 3. He is with Mary in Frederick's garden. 4. The mayor of Strasburg has been here today. 5. The deeds of Frederick have been useful. 6. Will the father of Charles be here tomorrow? 7. He will be here to-morrow, and the mother of Sophia will also soon be here. 8. Has the mother of the Queen of Spain been here? 9. She will soon be here. 10. The rivers and the lakes of Russia are large. 11. The son of Elizabeth is a friend of our neighbor. 12. Mary's slippers and Charles' boots are new.

LESSON VII.

Declension of Foreign Nouns.

Orinif
115. Nouns of foreign origin generally retain their foreign accent (see § 59, note), but most of them are declined like German nouns. Others retain some peculiarities.

116. Like German nouns are declined such words as: der Bischof, *the bishop*, die Bischöfe; der Kaplan', *the chaplain*, die Kapläne; der Instinkt', die Instinkte; das Monument', die Monumente; das Hospital', die Hospitäler; das Regiment', die Regimenter, etc.; and the foreign masculines and feminines of the weak declension; as, der Advokat', *the advocate*; die Republik', *the republic*, etc.

117. Foreign titles of male persons ending in unaccented *or* take *s* in the genitive singular and *en* in the plural: *der Doct'or*, *des Doctors*, *die Docto'ren*, etc.; according to the *mixed* declension. (See § 104; for the accent, see §§ 57, 58.)

118. Foreign neuters in *um* and *ium* add *s* in the gen. sing., and change *um* to *en* in the plural; as *das Stu'dium*; gen. *des Studiums*; pl. *die Studien*, etc. Some have dropped *ium* in the singular, but retain *ien* in the plural; as, *das Adverb'*, (or *Adverbium*); pl. *die Adverbien*, etc.*

119. Foreign neuters in *al'* and *il'* take *s* in the genitive singular and *ien* in the plural: *das Material'*, *des Materials*, *die Materialien*; *das Fossil'*, *des Fossils*, *die Fossilien*.*

120. Words transferred from French, English, and other modern languages usually take *s* in the genitive singular and in the plural: *Lords*, *Genie's*, *Solos*, *Dons*, *Pascha's*; but if ending in *-s* are not declined; as, *der Kommiss'*, *the clerk* (*s* silent).

(*a*) A few other foreign nouns, mostly of technical use, retain foreign plurals: as, *Casus*, *Modi*, *Facta*, *Cherubim*, etc. And a few others form plurals in *-en*: as, *das Drama*, *die Dramen*. But there is much irregularity. Sometimes all inflection is omitted. Details must be learned by experience. (See also Less. XLVII.)

Declension of Compound Nouns.

121. Compound nouns are formed much more freely in German than in English (as will be explained hereafter). Such nouns are inflected according to the gender and declension of the last component, the rest remaining unchanged. (See §84. For accent, see §53.)

* These groups from Latin neuters, pl. *a, ia*, are now nearly like the mixed declension. A few other such nouns belong here; also the German *das Kleinod*, pl. *die Kleinodien* (or *Steinodet*).

122. There are a few exceptions: die Antwort, *the answer*, pl. Antworten (comp. of das Wort); der Abscheu (comp. of die Scheu), and a few others. (See § 388.)

THE FUTURE PERFECT OF *sein*.

123. The future perfect of *sein* is formed by joining the perfect participle *gewesen* and the infinitive *sein* to the present of the auxiliary verb *werden*.

Singular.

ich werde gewesen sein, <i>I shall have been</i>	} or, <i>I have probably been, etc.</i>
du wirst gewesen sein, <i>thou wilt have been</i>	
er wird gewesen sein, <i>he will have been</i>	

Plural.

wir werden gewesen sein, <i>we shall have been</i>	} or, <i>we have probably been, etc.</i>
ihr werdet gewesen sein, <i>you will have been</i>	
sie werden gewesen sein, <i>they will have been</i>	
Sie werden gewesen sein, <i>you will have been</i>	

(a) And interrogatively: werde ich gewesen sein? etc. Observe that the participle and infinitive stand together at the end — the participle before the infinitive, *reversing the English order*.

NOTE. — As will be seen § 172, these form the *infinitive perfect*.

VOCABULARY.

der Augapfel, <i>the pupil</i> (of the eye), <i>the pet</i> .	der Hausherr, <i>the landlord</i> .
der Ackerzmann, <i>the husbandman</i> .	das Herrenhaus, <i>the House of Lords</i> . [house.
der Baumgarten, <i>the orchard</i> .	das Landhaus, <i>the country-</i>
der Blumengarten, <i>the flower-garden</i> .	der Tanzlehrer, <i>the dancing-master</i> .
der Feldherr, <i>the general</i> (§ 97).	die Kinderstube, <i>the nursery</i> .
	die Knabenschule, <i>the boys'-school</i> .

die Stadtmauer, <i>the city-wall.</i>	das Evange'lium, <i>the gospel.</i>
das Wörterbuch, <i>the dictionary.</i>	das Laborato'rium, <i>the laboratory.</i>
der Abt, <i>the abbot.</i>	das Muse'um, <i>the museum.</i>
der Papst, <i>the pope.</i>	der Student', <i>the student.</i>
der König, <i>the king.</i>	die Universität', <i>the university.</i>
Preußen, <i>Prussia.</i>	zu, <i>to, (dat.).</i>

EXERCISE VII.

1. Diese Stadt ist reich an (in, *dat.*) Monumenten. 2. Der Kaplan des Bischofs ist ein Doktor [der] Theologie. 3. Die Kapläne der Päpste sind Bischöfe. 4. Die Lords sind in dem Herrenhause. 5. In dem Museum waren Fossilien. 6. Das Wörterbuch dieses Professors wird gut sein. 7. Die Söhne des Doktors werden mit dem Tanzlehrer in der Kinderstube gewesen sein. 8. Unsere Regimenter werden mit dem Feldherrn an (at, *dat.*) der Stadtmauer sein. 9. Das Buch in der Hand unseres Pastors ist ein Wörterbuch zu den Evangelien. 10. In dem Landhause des Grafen ist ein Museum von Fossilien. 11. Die Studenten der Universität sind in dem Laboratorium des Professors der Chemie. 12. Die Antwort des Feldherrn in dem Herrenhause war sehr gut.

1. The hospitals of this town are near (an, *dat.*) the city-wall. 2. The kings of Prussia are rectors of the universities [of] Bonn and Berlin. 3. Here are the materials for (zu, *dat.*) a dictionary of the gospels. 4. The professors and the doctors have been in the orchard of the pastor. 5. In the museum of the bishop are fossils. 6. The dancing-master is in the nursery with the sons of the general and the daughters of the professor. 7. The monuments of this town are very old. 8. These bishops are doctors of (the) theology. 9. The flower-garden of the abbot is large. 10. The study of the gospels is the joy of the student. 11. The professor of chemistry is in the laboratory with the students of the university. 12. The answers are in the dictionaries.

REMARK.—The comprehensive Table of Noun Declensions on the next page is intended only for reference or review.

124. In this table *m*, *f*, *n* = masculine, feminine, neuter; ^u, modified vowel; —, monosyllable; —' —, or — —', polysyllable, with accent; -, ending. The numbers (IV) (V) are used for convenience. Remember that feminine nouns are unchanged in the singular.

Synopsis of Noun Declension.

STRONG		WEAK		MIXED
I	II	III	(IV)	(V)
<i>m. n.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>	<i>n. m.</i>	<i>f. m.</i>	<i>m. n.</i>
—' -el, -em, -en, -er <i>m.</i> —	<i>m. f. n.</i>	<i>n. —</i> (see II) ²	<i>f. —</i> (see II)	<i>m. —</i>
<i>n. —</i> -en, -lein, -lein	<i>f. —</i> (see IV). ¹	<i>m. —</i> (<i>few</i>) ³	<i>f. — —</i> (see I, II)	<i>m. —</i> —
<i>n. ge —</i> -e	<i>n. —</i> (see III). ²	<i>n. — —</i> (<i>few</i>) ⁴	<i>m. —</i> (<i>few</i>) ⁵	<i>m. —</i> -e(n)
<i>n. Infinitives.</i>	<i>m. n. —</i> -' (see I)	<i>n. m. -titt</i>	<i>m. — -e, — —</i> -'	<i>n. (few)</i> ⁶
<i>f. Mutter, Tochter.</i>	<i>f. -niß, -fal</i>	No fem.	No neut.	No fem.
Sing. gen. -ß	-(e)ß	-(e)ß	-(e)n	-(e)ß -(e)nß
<i>m. — —, — —</i>	<i>m. —e, —e</i>	PLURAL	<i>f. m. —(e)n</i>	<i>m. n. —(e)n</i>
<i>n. — —</i> (ex. Klopfer)	<i>f. —e (-niße, -fale)</i>	<i>n. m. —er</i>		
<i>f. Mütter, Töchter</i>	<i>n. —e</i>	-tümer		

NOTES.— The following may be specially remembered: ¹ *f.* — usually IV; about 30, II. ² *n.* — nearly equal II, III. ³ *m. pl. —et*, p. 29. ⁴ *n. —* -' *pl. —et*, p. 30. ⁵ *m. — pl. —en*, p. 34. ⁶ *n. — pl. —(e)n*, p. 37.

⁷ Note also: *ber Kufe*, p. 21; *ber Hert*, p. 34; *das Hert*, p. 36; Double plurals, p. 38.

For special details, see Appendix, p. 367.

Gender of Nouns.

125. The gender of nouns is important in itself, and also because it largely determines declension. But, as already seen, gender is in German to a great extent independent of meaning; and as to the form of words, no sufficient general rules can be given. The following are some of the most useful:

- I. Generally: Sex names and appellations will follow the sex; except, *das Weib, the woman*; *das Menſch, the wench*; and neuter diminutives in *-chen, -lein*.
- II. Masculine are: 1. Nouns ending in *-ig, -ich, -ling, -m*; and most nouns ending in *-el, -en, -er*.
2. Most strong derivatives; that is, derivatives formed of verb roots without suffix. (See § 382-3.)
3. Names of winds, seasons, months, days, mountains.
- III. Feminine are: 1. Most nouns in *-e*, not of masculine meaning, and not beginning with *ge-*.
2. Derivatives in *-t, -ei, -heit, -feit, -ſchaft, -ung, -in, -ie, -ion, -ur*.
3. Most abstract nouns; and most names of plants, trees, flowers.
- IV. Neuter are: 1. Most derivatives with prefix *ge-*, or suffix *-niß, -tum*.
2. All diminutives ending in *-chen, -lein*.
3. Infinitives, and other parts of speech, used as nouns (unless denoting persons).
4. Most collective nouns; most names of countries, places, metals.
5. Many generic names of animals — without regard to sex.
- V. Foreign nouns usually retain their original gender.
- VI. Compound nouns follow the gender of their last component. (Exceptions; see § 122.)
- VII. Some nouns have two genders, with a difference of meaning; as, *der Band, das Band*, etc. These will be referred to hereafter. (§ 426.)
- VIII. Some nouns are of uncertain gender, or at least of divided usage. These details must be found in the dictionary.

126. Yet, after all rules, the gender of German nouns must be learned largely by experience. The subject should, therefore, receive the constant attention of the student. Especially it is recommended that the habit should be formed of associating, with every noun that is learned, the appropriate form of the definite article, and of regularly using the article when naming a noun; as, *der Zug, die Zucht, das Zeug*, etc.

LESSON VIII.

The Declension of Adjectives.

127. Adjectives used as the predicate — that is, in connection with the verb — are not declined; as has been seen already.

128. Adjectives used appositively — that is after the noun — are also not declined; as, *die Bäume, groß und grün, the trees, large and green.*

NOTE. — This may be considered as a kind of elliptical predicate construction, for *the trees* (which are) *large and green.*

129. Adjectives used attributively — that is before a noun, expressed or understood — are declined; also adjectives when used as nouns.

130. There are two declensions of the attributive adjective, the *strong* and the *weak*. The combination of these forms the *mixed* declension. (See § 166).

NOTE. — The term *adjective* here includes only *qualifying* adjectives, not the pronominals.

The Strong Declension of Adjectives.

131. When the attributive adjective is not preceded by one of the articles, or by any other pronominal adjective of like inflection, it takes the endings of *dieser* (§ 86).

NOTE. — It is usual to speak of this declension as like that of the definite article. But see § 87.

132. These endings are (see § 86):

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>
Nom. -er	-e	-es	-e
Gen. -es	-er	-es	-er
Dat. -em	-er	-em	-en
Acc. -en	-e	-es	-e

Similarly, all adjective pronouns, except those in § 88.

With these endings decline in full, both *horizontally* and *vertically*, the adjectives *gut*, *schlecht*, *alt*, *jung*, *neu*, *groß*, *klein*, etc. Decline also with nouns, as follows (but see § 133):

EXAMPLES.

MASCULINE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. guter Wein, <i>good wine.</i>	gute Weine, <i>good wines.</i>
G. gutes* Weines, <i>of good wine.</i>	guter Weine, <i>of good wines.</i>
D. gutem Weine, <i>to good wine.</i>	guten Weinen, <i>to good wines.</i>
A. guten Wein, <i>good wine.</i>	gute Weine, <i>good wines.</i>

FEMININE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. große Freude, <i>great joy.</i>	große Freuden, <i>great joys.</i>
G. großer Freude,	großer Freuden,
D. großer Freude,	großen Freuden,
A. große Freude.	große Freuden.

* Or guten, as § 133.

NEUTER.

Singular.

N. feines Tuch, <i>fine cloth.</i>
G. feines* Tuches,
D. feinem Tuche,
A. feines Tuch.

Plural.

feine Tücher,
feiner Tücher,
feinen Tüchern,
feine Tücher.

133. Before masculine and neuter genitives in *es* or *s*, the adjective genitive now usually ends in *en* instead of *es*. Thus: *guten Weines, feinen Tuches*, etc.

NOTE. — This is to avoid repetition of the same *strong* form.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *haben*, to have.*Singular.*

ich habe, <i>I have.</i>
du hast, <i>thou hast.</i>
er hat, <i>he has.</i>
sie hat, <i>she has.</i>
es hat, <i>it has.</i>

Plural.

wir haben, <i>we have.</i>
ihr habt, <i>you have.</i>
sie haben, <i>they have.</i>
Sie haben, <i>you have.</i> †
haben wir, <i>have we?</i> etc.

VOCABULARY.

blau, <i>blue.</i>	schwarz, <i>black.</i>	der Platz, <i>the place, square.</i>
gelb, <i>yellow.</i>	rot, <i>red.</i>	die Hütte, <i>the hut, cottage.</i>
weiß, <i>white.</i>	breit, <i>broad.</i>	die Flasche, <i>the bottle.</i>

EXERCISE VIII.

1. In den Gärten des Fürsten sind große, grüne Bäume und schöne blaue und gelbe Blumen. 2. Weißes Brot ist gut, aber schwarzes ist auch gut. 3. Die Soldaten haben blaue oder rote Röcke. 4. Paris und London sind große Städte. 5. Hier sind lange Straßen und breite Plätze. 6. Gute Kinder sind die Freude ihres Vaters und ihrer Mutter. 7. Fleißige Schüler haben nütz-

* Or feinen. † See *, p. 30.

liche Bücher. 8. Hast du blaues oder weißes Papier? 9. Ich habe rotes. 10. Hat er rotes Papier? 11. Er hat weißes. 12. Meine Brüder haben neue Röcke und neue Pantoffel(n), aber alte Stiefel(n). 13. Die Häuser reicher Fürsten sind groß; aber die Hütten armer Bauern sind klein. 14. Alter Freund, wo bist du? 15. Liebes Kind, neue Bücher sind oft schlecht; gute Bücher sind oft alt. 16. Eine Flasche roten Weines ist auf (on, *dat.*) dem Tische.

1. The streets of large towns are long. 2. This (*dieß*) is a day of great joy. 3. Young children and old men were in the garden of the prince. 4. Have you new slippers, new hats, and new coats? 5. The houses of poor peasants are often small huts. 6. Dear brother, you * are the joy of your father. 7. Dear sister, you are the joy of your mother. 8. Good scholars are industrious. 9. Have these soldiers blue or red coats? 10. They have red [ones]. 11. Have you † warm water? 12. We have cold [water]. 13. My father has good old friends. 14. In the nursery are good beds. 15. Dear children, you ‡ are industrious. 16. I am the teacher of industrious boys. 17. She has sharp needles. 18. They have bottles of old wine.

LESSON IX.

Weak Declension of Adjectives.

134. When the attributive adjective is preceded by the definite article or an adjective pronoun of three terminations (§ 87), it loses its own distinctive endings; that is, it takes in the nominative singular of all three genders, and in the accusative singular feminine and neuter, the termination *-e*, and in all other cases of the singular and plural, *-en*. This is called the *weak* declension.

* Use *du*, *dein*. † Use *Sie*. ‡ See § 187.

The combined endings, pronominal and adjective, will then be (the former *strong*, the latter *weak*):

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>
Nom.	-er -e	-e -e	-es -e	-e -en
Gen.	-es -en	-er -en	-es -en	-er -en
Dat.	-em -en	-er -en	-em -en	-en -en
Acc.	-en -en	-e -e	-es -e	-e -en

Thus decline, *masc.* dieser alte; *fem.* diese alte; *neut.* dieses alte. Similarly, der gute, die gute, das gute (bearing in mind the peculiarities of the definite article). For the adjective endings alone, see Synopsis, p. 67.

It may be noted that the weak endings of the adjective are the same as of the weak *masc. noun* der Knabe (§ 96), except in the *accus. sing. fem. and neut.*, where the *nom. ending -e* remains unchanged. Also, that there are only *five forms in -e*, all others -en. Other endings, -er, -es, -em are *always strong*.

135. It will be observed that the declension of the adjective itself is here less *explicit*, the forms of gender, number, case being for the most part expressed by the foregoing pronominal. It is therefore to the latter, chiefly, that in this combination the student will look to determine the form of the adjective or of the noun.

EXAMPLES.

MASCULINE.

Dieser grüne Baum, *this green tree.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. dieser grüne Baum,	diese grünen Bäume,
G. dieses grünen Baumes,	dieser grünen Bäume,
D. diesem grünen Baume,	diesen grünen Bäumen,
A. diesen grünen Baum.	diese grünen Bäume.

FEMININE.

Jene schöne Frau, that beautiful woman.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. jene schöne Frau,	jene schönen Frauen,
G. jener schönen Frau,	jener schönen Frauen,
D. jener schönen Frau,	jenen schönen Frauen,
A. jene schöne Frau.	jene schönen Frauen.

NEUTER.

Welches alte Schloß, which old castle.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. welches alte Schloß,	welche alten Schlösser,
G. welches alten Schlosses,	welcher alten Schlösser,
D. welchem alten Schlosse,	welchen alten Schlössern,
A. welches alte Schloß.	welche alten Schlösser.

Decline in the same way: jeder treue Freund, der gute Knabe, die liebe Tochter, das neue Haus, etc., etc.

(a) The *h* of *hoch* is changed into *h*, in all inflections, before *e* (§ 156): *der hohe Berg, the high mountain; hohe Tannen, tall firs.*

Let the teacher add similar examples; and also, such as the following: Determine gender, number, case of *des alten Mannes, den alten Mann, der neuen Bücher, den neuen Büchern, etc.* And point out ambiguity of form; as in *die alten Männer* (nom. or acc. pl.), *den guten Knaben* (acc. sing. or dat. pl.), etc. Also, given the gender of the noun, decline, from root-forms only: *dies- hoch- Baum, jen- blau- Blume*; or with the article: *der lang- Jahr, etc. etc.*

REMARK.— This is really a *combined declension* of the adjective with the preceding pronominal. The adjective endings occur only when so preceded, and the *two together* determine the form. For this reason the paradigms have been given in combination. The same principle applies to the *mixed declension*. (Less. X.)

THE PAST INDICATIVE OF *haben*.*Singular.*

ich hatte, *I had.*
 du hattest, *thou hadst.*
 er hatte, *he had.*

Plural.

wir hatten, *we had.*
 ihr hattet, *you had.*
 sie hatten, *they had.*

Sing. or Plur., Sie hatten, you had.

VOCABULARY.

zwei, <i>two.</i>	der Norden, <i>the North.</i>	fett, <i>fat.</i>
der Schnee, <i>the snow.</i>	der Süden, <i>the South.</i>	preußisch, <i>Prussian.</i>
die Erde, <i>the earth,</i>	der Maler, <i>the painter.</i>	englisch, <i>English.</i>
<i>world.</i>	[<i>land.</i>]	bedeckt, <i>covered.</i>
die Schweiz, <i>Switzer-</i>	berühmt, <i>famous.</i>	französisch, <i>French.</i>
		unter, <i>under.</i>

EXERCISE IX.

1. Der junge König und der alte Fürst sind in dem großen Schlosse des reichen Grafen. 2. Jene alte Frau hat zwei schöne Töchter. 3. Die kleinen Knaben hatten neue Röcke. 4. Die tiefen Täler und die hohen Gebirge [der] Schweiz sind mit grünen Tannen und mit weißem Schnee bedeckt. 5. Die starken Völker der Erde sind in dem kalten Norden. 6. Die Menschen in dem warmen Süden sind schwach. 7. Die warmen Bäder der kleinen aber alten Stadt Ems sind berühmt. 8. Die reichen Bauern hatten schöne Häuser. 9. Hatten die Kinder des berühmten Professors das große neue Wörterbuch des [Herrn] Doktor Schwarz? 10. Sie hatten die alte Grammatik unseres guten Lehrers. 11. Die fetten Ochsen und Kühe sind unter den hohen Bäumen in dem grünen Felde. 12. Hatten die fleißigen Schüler die neue Grammatik des berühmten Professors? 13. Unter den hohen Bäumen in dem großen Walde ist noch tiefer, weißer Schnee.

1. The young princes are with their English teacher in the king's new castle. 2. This high tree has green leaves. 3. The famous old count had two young children. 4. The blue coats

of the Prussian soldiers. 5. The red coats of the English soldiers. 6. The French grammar of this famous professor. 7. In the beautiful houses of these rich ladies are the paintings of famous painters. 8. This famous painter has been in the South of England. 9. The snow of the cold North is deep. 10. Those white flowers are from (aus, *dat.*) our new garden. 11. The green fields are covered with white snow. 12. The warm beds of the little children are in the nursery. 13. This Englishman and this American have been on (auf, *with the dative*) the high mountains of Switzerland. 14. The long streets of this old town are broad. 15. The new names of the old streets of Paris. 16. This old teacher is the good friend of the poor scholars.

NOTE.— Use the article with feminine names of countries.

LESSON X.

The Mixed Declension of Adjectives.

136. It has been seen that when the distinctive endings of gender, number, case, are expressed by the preceding word, these are not repeated by the adjective, in the weak declension. The same principle determines the *mixed declension*.

137. When the adjective is preceded by the indefinite article, or by one of the pronominals declined like it (§ 88), it takes the distinctive forms of the strong declension where these words are without ending; that is, in the singular nominative, er for the masculine, es for the neuter; and es also for the accusative neuter. In all other parts the endings follow the weak declension.

138. The combined endings, pronominal and adjective, will then be as follows:

		SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
		<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>		<i>m. f. n.</i>	
<i>masc.</i>						
Nom. —	-er	-e -e	—	-es	-e	-en
Gen.	-es -en	-er -en	-es	-en	-er	-en
Dat.	-em -en	-er -en	-em	-en	-en	-en
Acc.	-en -en	-e -e	—	-es	-e	-en

— the adjective differing from the weak declension only in the forms printed with heavy type. (See § 134.)

(b) It is this form of the adjective, partly strong and partly weak, that gives rise to the term *mixed declension*. But it must be observed that there are only two possible forms of the adjective — one, *strong*, when not preceded by a determining ending, one, *weak*, when so preceded. In the former it is the adjective itself, in the latter the determining word, that must be looked to, for gender, number, case. (See § 166).

NOTE. — Observe that the endings -e of fem. nom. and accus. sing., and -en of masc. sing. and dat. plur. remain *always* the same. Also, that in adjectives as well as in nouns, fem. and neut. accusatives are always like the nominatives (§ 73). So, too, in pronouns (as hereafter).

MASCULINE.

Ein hoher Berg, a high mountain.

Singular.

*No Plural**

- N. ein hoher Berg,
- G. eines hohen Berges,
- D. einem hohen Berge,
- A. einen hohen Berg.

FEMININE.

Meine liebe Schwester, my dear sister.

Singular.

Plural (weak).

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| N. meine liebe Schwester, | meine lieben Schwestern, |
| G. meiner lieben Schwester, | meiner lieben Schwestern, |
| D. meiner lieben Schwester, | meinen lieben Schwestern, |
| A. meine liebe Schwester. | meine lieben Schwestern. |

* The indef. art. has no plural. But: *Seine hohen Berge, no high mountains*, etc. as below.

NEUTER.

Sein volles Glas, *his full glass.*

*Singular.**Plural (weak).*

N. fein volles Glas,	feine vollen Gläser,
G. feines vollen Glases,	feiner vollen Gläser,
D. feinem vollen Glase,	feinen vollen Gläsern,
A. fein volles Glas.	feine vollen Gläser.

REMARKS ON ADJECTIVE DECLENSION.

139. Adjectives ending in the unaccented syllables *el, en, er,* usually reject the *e* either of the termination or of the declensional ending: *edel, noble,* is usually declined *edler, edle, edles;* *selten, rare, feltner, feltne, feltnes;* *heiter, cheerful, heitrer, heitre, heitres;* but sometimes (before *n* or *m*) *edeln, heiterm* (§85, note.)

140. Adjectives used as nouns retain the declension of adjectives. Thus: *deutsch, German; ein Deutscher, a German; eines Deutschen, of a German; eine Deutsche, a German woman; die Deutschen, the Germans; die Alte, the old woman; der Reiche, the rich man; die Reichen, the rich (persons); das Gute, the good (abstract).*

141. Participles, when used attributively, are declined as adjectives; as, *liebend, loving; geliebt, loved; ein liebender Bruder, a loving brother; der geliebte Freund, the loved friend.* Also when used as nouns: *ein Liebender, a lover; die Geliebte, the beloved (one); die Geliebten, the beloved (ones).*

142. Adjectives, generally, may be used, without inflection, as adverbs: *er schreibt schnell, he writes rapidly.*

143. Adjectives in *er,* derived from names of places, are indeclinable: *das Heidelberger Faß, the Heidelberg tun; der Kölner Dom, the Cathedral of Cologne.* (See § 395, 3).

144. Ganz, *whole*, and halb, *half*, are indeclinable when used alone before the names of countries and places, but are elsewhere declined. Thus: ganz England, *all England*; but daß ganze England; halb London, die halbe Schweiz, ein halber Taler.

145. The neuter termination eß of the nominative and accusative sing. is frequently dropped in familiar conversation and in poetry. Thus: Lieb Kindlein, *dear child*; alt Eisen, *old iron*; kalt Wasser, *cold water*; ein schwer Verbrechen, *a heavy crime*.

146. The declension of the adjective remains the same if its noun is understood. In this case the English *one, ones*, are not expressed in German; as, ein reifer Apfel und ein unreifer; *a ripe apple and an unripe one*.

147. Two or more adjectives under the same circumstances will take the same declension; as, mein lieber, alter Freund, *my dear old friend*; der liebe, alte Mann, *the dear old man*.

NOTE. — Sometimes, especially in poetry, occurs a euphonic form in -e, as helle for hell, etc.

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT OF **haben**.

148. The perfect and pluperfect of the verb **haben** are formed, as in English, by adding the perfect participle **gehabt, had**, to the present and past tenses of the same verb.

<i>Singular.</i>	PERFECT.	<i>Plural.</i>
ich habe gehabt, <i>I have had.</i>	wir haben gehabt, <i>we have had.</i>	
du hast gehabt, <i>thou hast had.</i>	ihr habt gehabt, <i>you have had.</i>	
er hat gehabt, <i>he has had.</i>	sie haben gehabt, <i>they have had.*</i>	

<i>Singular.</i>	PLUPERFECT.	<i>Plural.</i>
ich hatte gehabt, <i>I had had.</i>	wir hatten gehabt, <i>we had had.</i>	
du hattest gehabt, <i>thou hadst had.</i>	ihr hattet gehabt, <i>you had had.</i>	
er hatte gehabt, <i>he had had.</i>	sie hatten gehabt, <i>they had had.</i>	

* The plural form Sie, *you*, for one or more persons, is hereafter to be understood in all verb inflections.

VOCABULARY.

die Bibliothek' <i>the library.</i>	glücklich, <i>happy.</i>
das Landgut, <i>the estate.</i>	an'genehm, <i>agreeable, pleasant.</i>
das Kleid, <i>the dress, garment.</i>	seiden, <i>silken, silk.</i>
die Weste, <i>the vest, waistcoat.</i>	süß, <i>sweet.</i>
die Zeit, <i>the time.</i>	sauer, <i>sour.</i>
die Zeitung, <i>the newspaper.</i>	reif, <i>ripe.</i>
der Franzo'se, <i>the Frenchman.</i>	unreif, <i>unripe.</i>
der Rhein, <i>the Rhine.</i>	königlich, <i>royal.</i>
das Glück, <i>fortune, luck.</i>	nicht, <i>not.</i>
die Sprache, <i>the speech, language.</i>	immer, <i>always.</i>

EXERCISE X.

1. Der alte Soldat hatte einen roten Rock gehabt. 2. Ein schwarzer Hut, eine blaue Weste und ein weißes Hemd. 3. Meine Schwester hat ein seidnes Kleid. 4. In der königlichen Bibliothek sind englische, französische und deutsche Bücher. 5. Ich habe ein deutsches Wörterbuch. 6. Meine Schwester hat ein französisches Wörterbuch gehabt. 7. Hat sie eine englische Grammatik gehabt? 8. Ein reifer Apfel ist süß, aber ein unreifer ist sauer. 9. Dieses große Landgut ist das Eigentum einer alten Dame. 10. Schön(es) Wetter ist Alten und Jungen (*dat.*) angenehm. 11. Das Studium der Sprachen ist sehr nützlich. 12. Die Reichen sind nicht immer glücklich. 13. Meine Brüder hatten großes Glück gehabt. 14. Hast du die Köhler Zeitung, mein guter Knabe? 15. Wir haben kein Zeit gehabt. 16. Ein Guter liebt (loves) das Gute, ein Edler das Edle.

1. We have no German and no French books. 2. My English dictionary is a good book. 3. My brother has had no time. 4. Has your sister no black dress? 5. Masson's Grammar of the French language is a very useful book. 6. In the royal library are French grammars and English dictionaries. 7. The gentleman with the white hat is an old general. 8. In this long street is a large old house; it is the boys'-school. 9. Ripe apples are sweet, but unripe [ones] are sour. 10. The

Rhine is a large river. 11. The language of the Germans is the German language. 12. The language of the French is the French language. 13. The old and the young were happy. 14. The Rhine was not always a German river. 15. Have you had the Cologne newspaper? 16. Had the scholars had new books? 17. Every good child had had a beautiful flower. 18. All Germany was under the noble old German emperor (*dat.*).

LESSON XI.

Comparison of Adjectives.

149. The comparative and superlative of adjectives are formed by adding *er* for the comparative and (*e*)*st* for the superlative.

150. The *e* of the superlative ending is regularly dropped, except after *ð*, *t*, and the sibilants *ß*, *z*, *ß*, *sch*. Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, *e*, drop *e* before the comparative *er* (§ 139).

EXAMPLES.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
laut, <i>loud,</i>	lauter,	lautest.
süß, <i>sweet,</i>	süßer,	süßest.
schön, <i>beautiful,</i>	schöner,	schönst.
reich, <i>rich,</i>	reicher,	reichst.
edel, <i>noble,</i>	edler,	edelst.
träge, <i>lazy,</i>	träger,	trägest.

151. Most monosyllabic adjectives whose vowel is *a*, *o*, or *u* (not *au*) modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative.

alt, <i>old,</i>	älter,	ältest.
rot, <i>red,</i>	röter,	rötest.
kurz, <i>short,</i>	kürzer.	kürzest.

152. Some of the adjectives which do not modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative are:—

brav, <i>good, worthy.</i>	rasch, <i>quick.</i>
bunt, <i>variegated, gay.</i>	stolz, <i>proud.</i>
falsch, <i>false.</i>	toll, <i>mad.</i>
froh, <i>joyful, happy.</i>	voll, <i>full.</i>
lahm, <i>lame.</i>	zähm, <i>tame.</i>

(a) A few adjectives use both forms; as, fromm, *pious*, frommer or frömmer, frömmst or frömmst.

153. A comparison of equality is expressed by placing so or eben so (*even so*) before the adjective, and after it wie or, after a negative, also als, *as*. Herr Schmidt ist eben so reich wie Herr Schulze, *Mr. Schmidt is as rich as Mr. Schulze*. Herr Heinrich ist ein eben so braver Mann wie Herr Müller, *Mr. Henry is as worthy a man as Mr. Müller*. Er ist nicht so edel als klug, *he is not as noble as prudent* (§450, 2).

154. The English *than* is expressed by als. Thus: Die Tage sind länger im Sommer als im Winter, *the days are longer in summer than in winter*.

155. Comparatives and superlatives are subject to the same rules of declension as the positive. Thus: ein reicherer Mann, *a richer man*; der reichste Mann, *the richest man*; reichere Männer, *richer men*; mein ältester Bruder ist reicher als ich, *my eldest brother is richer than I*, etc.

NOTE.—The er of the comparative must not be confounded with the er of the adjective inflection; as, reicher may be either positive or comparative, in different positions. Note also that all adjectives are compared alike, without regard to their length.

156. The following are irregular:—

gut, <i>good,</i>	besser,	best, der beste.
viel, <i>much,</i>	mehr,	meist, der meiste.
wenig, <i>little,</i>	minder,	mindest, der mindeste.
but also regular:	weniger,	wenigst, der wenigste.

Hoch, *high*, changes *ch* to *h* (§135, *a*) in the comparative, höher, höchst, der höchste. The *h* of nah, *near*, näher, becomes *ch* in the superlative: nächst, der nächste. Groß, *great, tall*, größer, is contracted in the superlative: der größte, instead of der größteste.

157. From erst, lezt (der erste, *the first*, der lezte, *the last*), which are really superlatives, are formed the new comparatives: der erstere, *the former*, der leztere, *the latter*. Similarly, mehrere, *several*, from mehr, *more*. (Compare the English *lesser*.)

158. The following adjectives, derived from adverbs or prepositions, are comparatives in form, but have the meaning of simple adjectives. They form their superlative by adding the superlative suffix of the comparative: —

ober, <i>upper</i> ;	(der obere) der oberste, <i>the uppermost</i> .
unter, <i>under</i> ;	der unterste, <i>the undermost</i> .
inner, <i>inner</i> ;	der innerste, <i>the inmost</i> .
äußer, <i>outer</i> ;	der äußerste, <i>the outmost</i> .
vorder, <i>fore</i> ;	der vorderste, <i>the foremost</i> .
hinter, <i>hinder</i> ;	der hinterste, <i>the hindmost</i> .
mittler, <i>middle</i> ;	der mittelste, <i>the middlemost</i> .

THE FUTURE OF *haben*.

159. The future of the verb *haben* is formed by adding the infinitive *haben* to the present tense of the auxiliary verb *werden* — the infinitive at end of the clause (as § 114).

ich werde *haben*, *I shall have*. wir werden *haben*, *we shall have*.
 du wirst *haben*, *thou wilt have*. ihr werdet *haben*, *you will have*.
 er wird *haben*, *he will have*. sie werden *haben*, *they will have*.

And interrogatively: werde ich *haben*? etc. Also, as heretofore, and generally: Sie werden *haben*, werden Sie *haben*?

VOCABULARY.

das Eisen, <i>iron.</i>	der Sommer, <i>summer.</i>
der Fehler, <i>the mistake, fault.</i>	die Noth, <i>the distress.</i>
in (contraction of in dem), <i>in the.</i>	der Stoß, <i>the story, floor.</i>
der Winter, <i>winter.</i>	wenig, <i>little; pl. few.</i>

EXERCISE XI.

1. Die reichsten Leute sind nicht immer die glücklichsten. 2. Er ist der reichste Mann in der ganzen Stadt. 3. Die Tage sind kürzer im Winter als im Sommer. 4. Die besten Äpfel sind nicht immer auf den höchsten Bäumen. 5. Wir hatten die heitersten Gedanken. 6. Wir werden morgen das schönste Wetter haben. 7. Die Armen sind oft froher als die Reicheren. 8. Das Eisen ist das nützlichste Metall'. 9. Mein Bruder hat einen längeren Brief als ich. 10. Die Gebirge der Schweiz sind höher als die Gebirge Deutschlands. 11. Die höchsten Gebirge sind in Asien. 12. In meinem Exercitium sind die wenigsten Fehler. 13. Ich werde morgen wenige Fehler in meinem Exercitium haben. 14. Die buntesten Vögel sind nicht immer die schönsten. 15. Das Heiligste war im Innersten des Tempels. 16. Reife Früchte sind besser als die unreifen.

1. When shall we have the longest day and the shortest night? 2. Frederick was the greatest and most famous king of Prussia. 3. She has two younger sisters. 4. He is with his elder brother in Berlin. 5. He is taller than his brother. 6. His younger brother has been [a] soldier. 7. This little book is better than that big [one]. 8. We shall soon have the most beautiful weather. 9. Ney was the bravest of the French. 10. The poorest peasants are in Russia. 11. Henry will have a longer letter than his younger brother. 12. The houses of (the) towns are larger than the houses of (the) villages. 13. The house of my father is on the longest street of the town. 14. We shall next month (*acc.*) have the shortest days and the longest nights. 15. The best cows are in Switzerland. 16. They

were in the utmost distress. 17. My room is in the uppermost story. 18. Henry is the first and Charles is the last in the whole school. 19. We were the foremost. 20. The largest rooms are not always in the largest houses.

LESSON XII.

The Predicate Superlative.

160. The uninflected form of the superlative cannot, like the other degrees (§127), be used alone in the predicate. Instead of this, there is a special form made up of *an dem*, contracted into *am*, *at the*, and the dative of the superlative, which is used predicatively. Thus: *Im Winter sind die Tage am kürzesten und im Sommer am längsten, in winter the days are shortest and in summer longest; i. e., at the shortest, etc.*

161. This form, however, must be used only when the adjective is the true predicate. If the noun is understood, or the superlative is definitely limited, the regular inflected form will be used; as, *die Tage im Winter sind die kürzesten (Tage) des Jahres, the days in winter are the shortest (days) of the year.* For further distinction, see §450,3.

162. (a) Many adjectives are derived from nouns:—

mütterlich, <i>motherly.</i>	freundlich, <i>friendly, pleasant.</i>
väterlich, <i>fatherly.</i>	herrlich, <i>splendid, lordly.</i>

(b) Others are derived from other adjectives:—

bläulich, <i>bluish.</i>	weißlich, <i>whitish.</i>
rötlich, <i>reddish.</i>	grünlich, <i>greenish.</i>

(c) Many are formed by composition (see Less. XLIV.):—

eiskalt, <i>ice-cold.</i>	feuerrot, <i>red as fire.</i>
schneeweiß, <i>snow-white.</i>	kohlschwarz, <i>coal-black, etc.</i>

THE FUTURE PERFECT OF *haben*.

163. The future perfect of *haben* is formed by adding the perfect participle and infinitive of *haben*, to the present tense of the auxiliary verb *werden*. The participle and infinitive stand at the end of the clause, as § 123, a.

ich werde gehabt haben, <i>I shall have had</i>	} or, <i>I have probably had, etc.</i>
du wirst gehabt haben, <i>thou wilt have had</i>	
er wird gehabt haben, <i>he will have had</i>	
wir werden gehabt haben, <i>we shall have had</i>	} or, <i>we have probably had, etc.</i>
ihr werdet gehabt haben, <i>you will have had</i>	
sie werden gehabt haben, <i>they will have had</i>	

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

164. The following prepositions always govern the dative:—

auß, <i>out of, from.</i>	nach, <i>to, after, according to.</i>
außer, <i>without, except, besides.</i>	seit, <i>since.</i>
bei, <i>by, near, with, at the house</i>	von, <i>of, from, by.</i>
mit, <i>with.</i>	[of. zu, <i>to, at, in, for, to the house of.</i>
	<i>gegenüber - opposite</i>

VOCABULARY.

Der Onkel, <i>the uncle.</i>	heiß, <i>hot.</i>
die Tante, <i>the aunt.</i>	kühl, <i>cool.</i>
der Frühling, <i>spring.</i>	bedeckt, <i>covered.</i>
der Herbst, <i>autumn.</i>	gehen, <i>to go.</i>
die Jahreszeit, <i>the season.</i>	kommen, <i>to come.</i>
das Wetter, <i>the weather.</i>	wann, <i>when?</i>
die Wolke, <i>the cloud.</i>	niemand, <i>no one, nobody.</i>
das Haar, <i>the hair.</i>	von Hause, <i>from home.</i>
die Gefahr, <i>the danger.</i>	zu Hause, <i>at home.</i>
vier, <i>four.</i>	zu (adverb), <i>too.</i>

165. When a sentence is introduced by any word or words modifying the verb, an *inversion* takes place; that is, the verb, instead of following, precedes the subject. Gestern war ich zu Hause, instead of : ich war gestern zu Hause; but never : gestern ich war zu Hause.

EXERCISE XII.

1. Im Frühling und im Herbst ist das Wetter am schönsten. 2. Es ist nicht zu heiß und nicht zu kalt. 3. Die Knaben kommen aus der Schule. 4. Mein Bruder ist nicht zu Hause. 5. Meine jüngere Schwester ist von Hause; sie ist bei einer alten Tante. 6. Außer meinem Onkel war niemand zu Hause. 7. Bei diesem heißen Wetter war der Himmel mit rötlichen und weißlichen Wolken bedeckt. 8. Nach dem eiskalten Wetter hatten wir den herrlichsten Frühling. 9. Ich habe kein Geld bei mir. 10. Wir kommen von Paris und gehen nach London. 11. Die vier Jahreszeiten sind : der Frühling, der Sommer, der Herbst und der Winter. 12. Der Lehrer ist mit seinen Schülern in der Schulstube. 13. Dein Bruder ist außer Gefahr. 14. Die neuen Straßen von Paris sind die schönsten in ganz Europa. 15. Nach dem Sommer sind die Tage nicht so lang wie im Sommer. 16. Meine jüngste Tochter ist bei ihrer Tante (at her aunt's). 17. Der Frühling ist die beste Jahreszeit des ganzen Jahres. 18. Im Frühling ist das Wetter am angenehmsten.

1. She had a snow-white dress. 2. No one is here except my teacher. 3. The new spring is loveliest after a very cold winter. 4. When will your brother be at home? 5. He has been from home the whole day (*acc.*). 6. He has been at (bei) my aunt's. 7. The children are in (the) school with their books. 8. A cool night is agreeable after a hot day. 9. The boy with the blue eyes and the very dark (schwarz) hair is a son of our English teacher. 10. The sky is red-as-fire. 11. Have you no money about you (bei dir)? 12. When is the weather most beautiful? 13. It is most beautiful in (the) sum-

mer. 14. In winter *it is* coldest. 15. They *have probably had* no money. 16. The children will have had a pleasant evening. 17. A good son is the greatest joy of his father and of his mother. 18. The highest mountains in all Europe are in Switzerland. 19. In (the) summer the days are longest and the nights shortest. 20. In (the) winter the days are the shortest of the whole year.

166. Synopsis of Declension of Adjectives.

	STRONG.				WEAK.				MIXED.			
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>pl.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>pl.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
N.	er	e	eſ	e	e	e	e	en	er	e	eſ	en
G.	eſ(en)	er	eſ(en)	er	en	en	en	en	en	en	en	en
D.	em	er	em	en	en	en	en	en	en	en	en	en
A.	en	e	eſ	e	en	e	e	en	en	e	eſ	en

REMARK. — The inclusion — as here, in accordance with usage — of the *mixed declension* of adjectives is of doubtful advantage. All inflected adjective forms are always either *strong* or *weak*; and *always* the principle is the same.

LESSON XIII.*

The Auxiliary Verbs.

167. The conjugation of verbs in German, as in English, is made up of simple and compound forms.

(a) The simple forms are those which are expressed by a single word; as, (ich) habe (*I have*); (ich) war (*I was*), etc.

(b) The compound forms consist of two or more words, and are formed by the help of auxiliaries; as, (ich) habe

* With brief explanation, this Lesson, and the detailed verb-paradigms following, might be omitted, with pupils of some maturity.

gehabt (*I*) *have had*; (ich) werde haben (*I*) *shall have*; (ich) werde gehabt haben, (*I*) *shall have had*, etc.

168. The verbs used as auxiliaries in conjugation are haben, *to have*; sein, *to be*; werden, *to become*. These are employed, as in English, with the perfect (past) participle or infinitive of a verb to form its compound parts. Hence it is necessary that the uses of these verbs as auxiliaries, and their conjugation, should be given in advance.

NOTE.—The simple parts of haben, sein, werden, have been in part given already, with some of their auxiliary uses. But for convenient reference, or for review, they are repeated in the paradigms § 175, § 181, § 190.

169. REMARK.—1. Remember that haben, sein, werden are themselves verbs, which are often used independently, as well as in their auxiliary function. The two uses should always be distinguished.

2. Remember, also, that the auxiliary is itself the *verb*, or *asserting* part, of every compound verb form. As in English, for example, *I shall go*: *shall* is the (auxiliary) verb, *go* the infinitive object; *I am loved*: *am* is the (auxiliary) verb, *loved* the participle complement.

NOTE.—This remark is important, to correct the false habit of considering such forms as made up of *an auxiliary and a verb*. Such is never the case.

3. Hence, whatever rules are given for *the verb* will apply, in the compound forms, to the auxiliary, or finite, part thereof.

170. As has been seen, in compound (auxiliary) verb forms, the participle or infinitive stands at the end of the clause. If a participle and an infinitive are combined, the infinitive will stand last. (§ 163.)

But special circumstances may require the auxiliary verb itself to stand at the end, as will be seen hereafter. (§ 177.)

THE AUXILIARY *haben*.

171. *Haben* is used, as auxiliary, with the perfect participle of all transitive and some intransitive verbs to form the whole system of perfect tenses. Its use is the same as that of *have* in English, except that it is not so generally extended to intransitives. Each form of the perfect is made by employing the corresponding part of the auxiliary. Thus :

1. The present perfect — or perfect tense — by the present tense of *haben* ; as, *ich habe gehabt*, *I have had*; *ich habe geliebt*, *I have loved*, etc.
2. The past perfect — or pluperfect tense — by the past tense of *haben*, as, *ich hatte gehabt*, *I had had*; *ich hatte geliebt*, *I had loved*, etc.
3. The infinitive perfect, by the infinitive of *haben* ; as, *gehabt haben*, *to have had*; *geliebt haben*, *to have loved*, etc.
4. As will be seen § 173, *a*, the perfect infinitive is used in forming the perfect of the future and conditional; as in English: *I shall—have loved*; *I should—have loved*, etc. And similarly for the subjunctive forms.

NOTE. — It thus appears that *haben* as auxiliary is used in the conjugation of *haben* as an active verb.

THE AUXILIARY *sein*.

172. *Sein* is used as auxiliary with the perfect participle to form the perfect tenses of some intransitive verbs. This use was formerly much more extended in English than at present ; for example, *I am come*, for *I have come*.

NOTE. — *Sein* is not used with the present participle as in English: *I am reading*, etc. These forms are expressed by simple tenses of the verb.

As in the case of *haben*, each perfect form is made by employing the corresponding part of the auxiliary ; thus :

1. The present perfect—or perfect tense; *ich bin gekommen, I have (am) come; ich bin geworden, I have (am) become, etc.*
3. The past perfect—or pluperfect; *ich war gekommen, I had (was) come; ich war geworden, I had (was) become, etc.*
3. The infinitive perfect—*gekommen sein, to have (be) come; geworden sein, to have (be) become, etc.* And this form is used, as above, in forming the perfect future and conditional.

NOTE.—The verb *sein* forms its perfect tenses by the use of *sein* as auxiliary; as, *ich bin gewesen, I have been: literally, I am been, etc.* So, also, does *werden*. For other verbs taking *sein*, see §§ 297, 298.

THE AUXILIARY *werden*.

173. *Werden* is used as auxiliary with the infinitive of all verbs to form the future and conditional tenses.

1. The future, by the present tense of *werden* and the infinitive present; as, *ich werde haben, I shall have; sie werden sein, they will be, etc.*

(a) The future perfect, by the same form with the infinitive perfect; as, *ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had; sie werden gewesen sein, they will have been.*

2. The conditional, by the past subjunctive of *werden*, with the infinitive present; as, *ich würde haben, I should have; sie würden sein, they would be, etc.*

(a) The conditional perfect by the same form with the infinitive perfect; as, *ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had; sie würden gewesen sein, they would have been, etc.*

The conditional is thus, by its form, a past (or imperfect) subjunctive of the future.

NOTE.—It thus appears that *werden* in its auxiliary uses with the infinitive corresponds to the English auxiliaries *shall, will; should, would*, respectively, according to persons. But this is true only when these words are used as mere future or conditional auxiliaries, in certain persons. When used outside of these persons, in their original proper meaning—

as, *you shall go, I will arise, he should not act thus*, etc. — these words are not represented by *werden*, but by *sollen*, *shall*, and *mögen*, *will* (Less. XXVI).

174. *Werden* is also combined, in all its parts, with the perfect participle of transitive verbs to form the complete passive conjugation. (Lesson XXVII.)

REMARK. — Hence, for the conjugation of any verb, it is only necessary to know the *simple parts*, and whether *haben* or *sein* is the auxiliary of the perfect tenses. All the compound parts can then be formed by general rules, as above. But in the following paradigms, for convenience of study or reference, the full conjugation is exhibited, as usual.

LESSON XIV.

THE (AUXILIARY) VERB *haben*, *to have*.

175. REMARK. — 1. The forms of translation given in the paradigm are sometimes only representative. In English, for example, there are auxiliary forms of tense which do not exist in German; as, *I do have, am having*, etc. The infinitive is translated sometimes *to have*, sometimes *have*, or *having*. In these cases the most usual forms only are given.

2. In the subjunctive especially there is no form in English that suffices to represent, or even to suggest, its various uses in German — the subjunctive itself being rarely used in English, except in the verb *to be*. The forms here given are therefore only some of the many forms of translation.

NOTE. — The infinitives and participles are given first, because they are to some extent used in the following conjugation. The perfect infinitive also shows whether *haben* or *sein* is used as the perfect auxiliary. The pres. part. always adds *-d*; the perf. part. and the past tense, which are sometimes variable, are counted, with the infinitive, as the *principal parts* of the verb.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

haben, to have.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

habend, having.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

gehabt, had.

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

gehabt haben, to have had.

*Indicative Mood.**Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT TENSE.

ich habe, *I have.*
 du hast, *thou hast.*
 er hat, *he has.*
 wir haben, *we have.*
 ihr habt, *you have.*
 sie haben, *they have.**

ich habe, *I (may) have.*
 du habest, *thou (mayst) have.*
 er habe, *he (may) have.*
 wir haben, *we (may) have.*
 ihr habet, *you (may) have.*
 sie haben, *they (may) have.*

PAST TENSE.

ich hatte, *I had.*
 du hattest, *thou hadst.*
 er hatte, *he had.*
 wir hatten, *we had.*
 ihr hattet, *you had.*
 sie hatten, *they had.*

ich hätte, *I had, or, might have.*
 du hättest, *thou, etc.*
 er hätte, *he, etc.*
 wir hätten, *we, etc.*
 ihr hättet, *you, etc.*
 sie hätten, *they, etc.*

PERFECT TENSE.

ich habe gehabt, *I have had.* ich habe gehabt, *I (may) have had.*
 du hast gehabt, *thou hast had.* du habest gehabt, *thou, etc.*
 er hat gehabt, *he has had.* er habe gehabt, *he, etc.*
 wir haben gehabt, *we have had.* wir haben gehabt, *we, etc.*
 ihr habt gehabt, *you have had.* ihr habet gehabt, *you, etc.*
 sie haben gehabt, *they have had.* sie haben gehabt, *they, etc.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich hatte gehabt, *I had had.* ich hätte gehabt, *(if) I had had.*
 du hättest gehabt, *thou hadst had.* du hättest gehabt, *thou, etc.*
 er hatte gehabt, *he had had.* er hätte gehabt, *he, etc.*
 wir hätten gehabt, *we had had.* wir hätten gehabt, *we, etc.*
 ihr hättet gehabt, *you had had.* ihr hättet gehabt, *you, etc.*
 sie hätten gehabt, *they had had.* sie hätten gehabt, *they, etc.*

* As heretofore, the form *Sie haben, you have,* is to be understood.

*Indicative Mood.**Subjunctive Mood.*

FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde haben, *I shall have.* ich werde haben, *I shall have.*
 du wirst haben, *thou wilt have.* du werdest haben, *thou wilt have.*
 er wird haben, *he will have.* er werde haben, *he will have.*
 wir werden haben, *we shall have.* wir werden haben, *we shall have.*
 ihr werdet haben, *you will have.* ihr werdet haben, *you will have.*
 sie werden haben, *they will have.* sie werden haben, *they will have.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde	} gehabt haben,	<i>I shall have had.</i>	ich werde	} gehabt haben,	<i>I shall have had.</i>
du wirst		<i>thou wilt, etc.</i>	du werdest		<i>thou wilt, etc.</i>
er wird		<i>he will, etc.</i>	er werde		<i>he will, etc.</i>
wir werden		<i>we shall, etc.</i>	wir werden		<i>we shall, etc.</i>
ihr werdet		<i>you will, etc.</i>	ihr werdet		<i>you will, etc.</i>
sie werden		<i>they will, etc.</i>	sie werden		<i>they will, etc.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde haben, *I should have.*
 du würdest haben, *thou wouldst have.*
 er würde haben, *he would have.*
 wir würden haben, *we should have.*
 ihr würdet haben, *you would have.*
 sie würden haben, *they would have.*

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde gehabt haben, *I should have had.*
 du würdest gehabt haben, *thou wouldst have had.*
 er würde gehabt haben, *he would have had.*
 wir würden gehabt haben, *we should have had.*
 ihr würdet gehabt haben, *you would have had.*
 sie würden gehabt haben, *they would have had.*

Imperative Mood.

	haben wir, <i>let us have.</i>
habe (du), <i>have (thou).</i>	habt (ihr), <i>have (ye).</i>
habe er, <i>let him have.</i>	haben sie, <i>let them have.*</i>

176. REMARK.—I. Of these forms, only those of the second person are properly imperative. The others are subjunctive, but are, for convenience, added to the paradigm. In the imperative proper the subject is usually omitted.

2. An infinitive may be directly preceded by the preposition *zu*, *to*: *zu haben*; *gehabt zu haben*. This form, sometimes called *the supine*, answers very nearly to the corresponding English form. So, after verbs, except modals and a few others.

177. **First Rules of Position.**

1. In the *normal* order of words the verb stands next after the subject, as in the paradigm.
2. In a question, in the imperative, and usually when the subjunctive is used as imperative, the verb stands before the subject; as, *habe ich, have I?* *habe (du) Geduld, have (thou) patience;* *habe er Geduld, let him have patience,* etc.
3. The same order occurs when an *inversion* takes place (see § 165); as, *morgen werde ich einen Feiertag haben, to-morrow I shall have a holiday,* etc.
4. But in a dependent clause, the verb is *transposed* to the end of the clause. Such are clauses beginning with *daß, that;* *wenn, if,* and other subordinate connectives generally: *der Lehrer sagt, daß ich morgen einen Feiertag haben werde, the teacher says that I shall have a holiday to-morrow;* *ich würde morgen einen Feiertag haben, wenn ich heute meine Aufgaben gemacht hätte, I should have a holiday to-morrow if I had done my lessons to-day.* (See § 338).

* See * p. 30. In the polite form of the imperative *Sie*, though used for the second person, is always expressed; as, *haben Sie die Güte, have the kindness,* etc.

REMARK.—The position of the verb in *inverted*, as also in *transposed order*, is of so much importance, and so unlike the English, that the student should be frequently required to recite the paradigms in these forms; as for example:

then I should have, etc.

dann würde ich haben.	dann würden wir haben.
dann würdest du haben.	dann würdet ihr haben.
dann würde er haben.	dann würden sie haben.

if I had had, etc.

wenn ich gehabt hätte.	wenn wir gehabt hätten.
wenn du gehabt hättest.	wenn ihr gehabt hättet.
wenn er gehabt hätte.	wenn sie gehabt hätten.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

178. The following prepositions always govern the accusative case:—

durch, <i>through, by.</i>	ohne, <i>without.</i>
für, <i>for.</i>	um, <i>around, about.</i>
gegen, <i>towards, against.</i>	wider, <i>against.</i>

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN SOMETIMES THE DATIVE, AND SOMETIMES THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

179. The following prepositions govern sometimes the dative, and sometimes the accusative case. They govern the dative in expressions of position, or motion *in a place*; the accusative whenever direction, extent, action upon an object, change of position or motion *to a place* is expressed or implied. — Examples: Ich sitze auf einem weichen Stuhle, *I sit upon a soft chair.* Ich setze mich auf einen weichen Stuhl, *I seat myself on a soft chair.* Das Bild hängt an der Wand, *the picture is hanging on the wall.* Ich hänge das Bild an

die Wand, *I hang the picture up on the wall.* Er geht vor das Thor, *he goes (out) in front of the gate.* Er geht vor dem Tore auf und ab, *he walks up and down before the gate.*

an, *at, on.*

neben, *beside.*

auf, *on, upon, at.*

über, *over, above, beyond, about.*

hinter, *behind.*

unter, *under, below, among.*

in, *in, into.*

vor, *before, ago.*

zwischen, *between.*

VOCABULARY.

PRESENT TENSE OF **legen**, *to lay.*

Singular. — ich lege, du legst, er legt.

Plural. — wir legen, ihr legt, sie legen.

liegen, *to lie.*

gelegt, *laid.*

setzen, *to set, seat.*

gesetzt, *set, seated.*

sitzen, *to sit.*

gekauft, *bought.*

stehen, *to stand.*

gemacht, *made, done.*

stellen, *to place.*

gestellt, *placed.*

reiten, *to ride.*

gefunden, *found.*

er reitet, *he rides.*

gegeben, *given.*

warum, *why.*

geschrieben, *written.*

sich, *himself, themselves.*

gesehen, *seen.*

viel, *much.*

gegangen, *gone.*

mehr, *more (indecl.).*

gekommen, *come.*

180. Some Uses of the Subjunctive.

1. Observe that the past or pluperfect subjunctive is used in expressing a condition, when stated as *unreal*, in *present* or *past* time respectively. Ex. 9, 10, below.

2. Observe that the subjunctive is also used in *indirect speech*—that is, in a statement made on the authority of another—the tense remaining that of the speaker. Ex. 11, 12, below.

EXERCISE XIV.

1. Das Kind sitzt auf einem kleinen Stuhle. 2. Er setzt das Kind auf einen hohen Stuhl. 3. Meine Brüder stehen vor der Türe. 4. Unsere Freunde stellen sich (*themselves*) vor die Türe. 5. Die Bücher liegen auf dem Tische. 6. Ich lege die Bücher auf den Tisch. 7. Der Knabe sitzt auf der Bank neben seiner Schwester. 8. Ich setze das Kind auf die Bank neben deine Schwester. 9. Wir würden heute mehr Vergnügen haben, wenn wir schöneres Wetter hätten (*had*). 10. Sie würden mehr Zeit gehabt haben, wenn sie nicht zu lange auf der Bibliothek geschrieben hätten. 11. Er sagt, daß sein Bruder viel Vergnügen gehabt habe. 12. Der Schüler sagte, daß er dieses Buch in der Schulstube gefunden habe (*had*). 13. Der Vater hat eine neue Uhr für seinen jüngsten Sohn gekauft. 14. Die Engländer haben viele Kriege gegen die Franzosen gehabt. 15. Die Schüler haben sich um den Lehrer gesetzt. 16. Der Knabe hat das große Buch auf die hohe Bank gelegt. 17. Wir werden morgen viel Vergnügen haben. 18. Wir würden gestern viel Vergnügen gehabt haben, wenn wir mehr Zeit gehabt hätten. 19. Heute werden wir einen Feiertag haben. 20. Warum stellt der Knabe das Gemälde hinter die Tür? 21. Habe Geduld, mein liebes Kind. 22. Wir werden Zeit haben, wenn wir Geduld haben. 23. Ohne meine Freunde würde, ich kein Vergnügen haben. 24. Die Soldaten reiten durch die ganze Stadt.

1. The boy sits upon a high chair. 2. The scholars seat themselves on the benches of the school-room. 3. He rides behind his father. 4. The soldiers ride into the town. 5. We lay the books upon the table. 6. The child is sitting under the table. 7. A little garden is before the house. 8. He sits beside his sister. 9. He has placed the chair against (*an*) the wall. 10. Potsdam lies between the towns [*of*] Berlin and Brandenburg. 11. This boy says that he has (*subj.*) a gold watch. 12. He would have had more pleasure if he had had more patience. 13. We should have much pleasure if we had

no school. 14. The boy climbs upon the high bench behind his father. 15. The little child sits upon the bench beside its mother. 16. I should be glad if I had a gold watch. 17. You would have a better opinion of (v^{on}) this general if you had seen him (i^{hn}) with his soldiers in the last war. 18. The last war of the Prussians was against the French. 19. Shall we have a holiday to-m^orrow if we have good weather? 20. The teacher says that we shall have a holiday if we have done our lessons. 21. Have patience, my dear little brother; you (d^u) have time. 22. Yesterday we should have had more pleasure if we had had more time. 23. The soldiers ride with the general through the longest streets of the town. 24. The best scholar has written this exercise without a mistake.

REMARK. — The teacher will use discretion as to dividing the exercises or lessons, according to the grade of pupils or the necessity for review, etc.

The special vocabularies, which have thus far given, for practice, a part of the words used in the exercises, will hereafter be omitted. It is desirable that the student should learn, as soon as possible, to use a general vocabulary.

LESSON XV.

181. THE (AUXILIARY) VERB *sein*, *to be*.

PRES. PART. — *seiend*, *being*. PERF. PART. — *gewesen*, *been*.

PERFECT INFINITIVE—*gewesen sein*, *to have been*.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

ich bin, *I am*.

ich sei, *I be*. (§175.)

du bist, *thou art*.

du seiest, *thou be*.

er ist, *he is*.

er sei, *he be*.

wir sind, *we are*.

wir seien, *we be*.

ihr seid, *you are*.

ihr seiet, *you be*.

sie sind, *they are*.

sie seien, *they be*.

* *Sein* is contracted for *seien* (§ 75).

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PAST.

ich war, *I was.*
 du warst, *thou wast.*
 er war, *he was.*

ich wäre, (*if*) *I were.*
 du wärest, *thou wert.*
 er wäre, *he were.*

wir waren, *we were.*
 ihr war(e)t, *you were.*
 sie waren, *they were.*

wir wären, *we were.*
 ihr wäret, *you were.*
 sie wären, *they were.*

PERFECT.

ich bin gewesen, *I have been.*
 du bist gewesen, *thou hast been.*
 er ist gewesen, *he has been.*

ich sei gewesen, *I (may) have been.*
 du seiest gewesen, *thou have been.*
 er sei gewesen, *he have been.*

wir sind gewesen, *we have been.*
 ihr seid gewesen, *you have been.*
 sie sind gewesen, *they have been.*

wir seien gewesen, *we have been.*
 ihr seiet gewesen, *you have been.*
 sie seien gewesen, *they have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

ich war gewesen, *I had been.*
 du warst gewesen, *thou hadst been.*
 er war gewesen, *he had been.*

ich wäre gewesen, *I had been.*
 du wärest gewesen, *thou hadst been.*
 er wäre gewesen, *he had been.*

wir waren gewesen, *we had been.*
 ihr war(e)t gewesen, *you had been.*
 sie waren gewesen, *they had been.*

wir wären gewesen, *we had been.*
 ihr wäret gewesen, *you had been.*
 sie wären gewesen, *they had been.*

FUTURE.

ich werde sein, *I shall be.*
 du wirst sein, *thou wilt be.*
 er wird sein, *he will be.*

ich werde sein, *I shall be.*
 du werdest sein, *thou wilt be.*
 er werde sein, *he will be.*

wir werden sein, *we shall be.*
 ihr werdet sein, *you will be.*
 sie werden sein, *they will be.*

wir werden sein, *we shall be.*
 ihr werdet sein, *you will be.*
 sie werden sein, *they will be.*

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde	} <i>gewesen sein,</i>	<i>I shall have been.</i>	ich werde	} <i>gewesen sein,</i>	<i>I shall have been.</i>
du wirst		<i>thou wilt, etc.</i>	du werdest		<i>thou wilt, etc.</i>
er wird		<i>he will, etc.</i>	er werde		<i>he will, etc.</i>
mir werden		<i>we shall, etc.</i>	mir werden		<i>he shall, etc.</i>
ihr werdet		<i>you will, etc.</i>	ihr werdet		<i>you will, etc.</i>
sie werden		<i>they will, etc.</i>	sie werden		<i>they will, etc.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde sein, <i>I should be.</i>	mir würden sein, <i>we should be.</i>
du würdest sein, <i>thou wouldst be.</i>	ihr würdet sein, <i>you would be.</i>
er würde sein, <i>he would be.</i>	sie würden sein, <i>they would be.</i>

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde gewesen sein, <i>I should have been.</i>
du würdest gewesen sein, <i>thou wouldst have been.</i>
er würde gewesen sein, <i>he would have been.</i>
mir würden gewesen sein, <i>we should have been.</i>
ihr würdet gewesen sein, <i>you would have been.</i>
sie würden gewesen sein, <i>they would have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

sei (du), <i>be (thou).</i>	seien wir, <i>let us be.</i>
sei er, <i>let him be.</i>	seid (ihr), <i>be (ye).</i>
	seien sie, <i>let them be.</i> (See § 176.)
	seien Sie, <i>be.</i>

Inflect as in the *inverted* and *transposed* order :

da werde ich sein, <i>there I shall be.</i>	da bin ich gewesen, <i>there I have been.</i>
da wirst du sein, <i>there thou wilt be.</i>	da bist du gewesen, <i>there thou hast been.</i>
da wird er sein, <i>there he will be.</i>	da ist er gewesen, <i>there he has been.</i>
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

daß ich (da) sein werde, *that I* wenn ich (da) gewesen wäre, *if I*
shall be (there.) *had been (there).*

daß du (da) sein wirst, *that thou* wenn du (da) gewesen wärest, *if*
wilt be (there), etc. *thou hadst been (there), etc.*

182. Declension of the Personal Pronouns.

Singular.

FIRST PERSON. SECOND PERSON.

N. ich, <i>I.</i>	du, <i>thou.</i>
G. meiner, <i>of me.</i>	deiner, <i>of thee.</i>
D. mir, <i>(to) me.</i>	dir, <i>(to) thee.</i>
A. mich, <i>me.</i>	dich, <i>thee.</i>

THIRD PERSON.

<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
N. er, <i>he.</i>	ſie, <i>she.</i>	eſ, <i>it.</i>
G. ſeiner, <i>of him.</i>	ihrer, <i>of her.</i>	[ſeiner, <i>of it.</i>]
D. ihm, <i>(to) him.</i>	ihr, <i>(to) her.</i>	[ihm, <i>(to) it.</i>]
A. ihn, <i>him.</i>	ſie, <i>her.</i>	eſ, <i>it.</i>

Plural.

FIRST PERSON. SECOND PERSON. THIRD PERSON.

N. wir, <i>we.</i>	ihr, <i>you, ye.</i>	ſie, <i>they.</i>
G. unſer, <i>of us.</i>	euer, <i>of you.</i>	ihrer, <i>of them.</i>
D. unſ, <i>(to) us.</i>	euch, <i>(to) you.</i>	ihnen, <i>(to) them.</i>
A. unſ, <i>us.</i>	euch, <i>you.</i>	ſie, <i>them.</i>

Also, for singular or plural persons:

N. Sie, <i>you.</i>	D. Ihnen, <i>(to) you.</i>
G. Ihrer, <i>of you.</i>	A. Sie, <i>you.</i>

(a) In the singular genitive the shorter forms — *mein, dein, ſein* — are sometimes used in poetry and in familiar phrase; and in the plural genitive sometimes the longer forms — *unſrer* and *eurer* (contracted for *unſerer* and *eurer*). But the pronoun genitives are, in general, only rarely used.

NOTE.—1. Bear in mind that a noun will be referred to by *er*, *ſie*, *eſ*, according to its gender. For exception, see § 452, *a*.

2. For special uses of *eſ*, as impersonal, introductory, or *expletive* subject, corresponding to *it*, *they*, *there*, etc., see § 453.

183. The genitive and dative forms of the third person are rarely used of *things*, their meaning being usually supplied by a demonstrative pronoun (§ 208, note).

184. Instead of a dative or accusative of the third person, referring to *things*, with a preposition, the adverb *da*, *there* (before a vowel, and sometimes before *n*, *dar*), is usually compounded with the preposition; as: *damit'*, *therewith*, *with it or them*; *daſür'*, *therefor*, *for it or them*; *dage'gen*; *davon'*; *darin'*; *darauf'*; *danach'* or *darnach'*, etc. Also, before *r*, colloquially: *dran*, *drauß*, *drüber*, etc.

For *deſ* (genitive) in like compounds, see § 456, 2.

185.

The Reflexive Pronoun.

THIRD PERSON.

Singular and Plural — all genders.

D. *ſich*, (*to*) *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*.

A. *ſich*, “ “ “ “

Elsewhere the regular forms of the personal pronouns are used reflexively; as, *ich ſetze mich*, *I seat myself*; *ich ſchmeichle mir*, *I flatter myself*, etc.

Use of the Pronouns in Address.

186. The German usage herein differs widely from our own. In English the usual form is *you*, etc., for singular or plural persons; *thou*, etc., is restricted to the language of poetry or of devotion (except among the Friends), though it was formerly more widely used. In German, besides these uses, *du*, etc., is used also in familiar address; as, to members of the family,

to most intimate friends, to children, to animals, etc.; sometimes also to express contempt (as formerly in English). In such cases *du* is not properly translated by *thou*.

187. In all cases where *du* is properly used in the singular, the second person plural *ihr*, etc., is to be used in addressing more than one person; but only in such cases.

188. But the usual mode of addressing one or more persons (except in the cases above noted) is by the third person plural, which is then written, except in the reflexive form, with a capital initial letter (§ 182). Thus: *Wo sind sie gewesen, where have they been?* *Wo sind Sie gewesen, where have you been?* Observe that the verb is always plural.

In the same way are used also the corresponding forms of the possessive and reflexive; as, *Ihr, your*, etc. *Wie befinden Sie sich, how are you?* (See § 63).

189. Other forms sometimes occur. The third person singular — *Er* and *Sie* — and the second person plural — *Ihr* — were likewise at one time in use for addressing a single individual. The last occurs especially in the formal drama; and often as sign of respect, in addressing superiors. See § 63 note.

NOTE.—1. Remember, that the limits of *du* and *ihr*, etc., are very closely drawn in German society. No worse mistake could occur than to use them out of place. Hence, hereafter, the form *Sie*, etc., should be carefully used in all exercises, unless other forms are clearly required.

2. It would, however, be an error to teach these third plural forms as alternative forms of the second person. The usage is purely idiomatic — or conventional — as in English *you* for *thou*.

3. Care must be taken to avoid ambiguity in the pronoun forms. The use of a capital letter is distinctive only to the eye, and not even this, when the pronoun begins the sentence. — Note, too, that the third person plural forms belong, in part, also to the feminine singular.

4. Be careful always, in the same context, to use the same or corresponding forms of the pronoun for the same persons.

EXERCISE XV.

1. Seid stiller, meine Kleinen. 2. Habt Geduld, ihr Kinder.
 3. Lieber Vetter, sei so gut und setze dich auf diese Bank.
 4. Seien Sie so gut, Herr Graf, und setzen Sie sich auf diesen Stuhl. 5. Der Feldherr reitet in die Stadt; ein Soldat reitet mit ihm. 6. Unsere Freunde stehen um uns. 7. Ich habe nichts dagegen. 8. Seid fleißig, und ihr werdet die Freude eurer Eltern sein. 9. Mein Onkel ist ein wohlhabender Mann. 10. Mein Vater hat mir einen neuen Hut gekauft. 11. Ich werde Ihnen ein schärferes Messer geben. 12. Morgen werde ich mit Ihnen nach der Stadt reiten, [meine] Herren. 13. Die Knaben würden nicht in der Schule sein, wenn das Wetter schön wäre. 14. Diese Äpfel würden schon reif sein, wenn das Wetter nicht so kalt gewesen wäre. 15. Der Lehrer sagt, daß er mit seinem Schüler zufrieden sei. 16. Er würde mit diesem Schüler noch zufriedener sein, wenn er fleißiger wäre. 17. Wir würden gestern hier gewesen sein, wenn unsere Mutter nicht krank gewesen wäre. 18. Die Frau sagt, daß ihr alter Onkel sehr reich sei. 19. Meine Tante hat eine goldene Uhr für meine Schwester gekauft. 20. Die Soldaten sind durch die Stadt gekommen. 21. Die Kinder sind um die ganze Stadt gegangen. 22. Würden die Kinder um die ganze Stadt gegangen sein, wenn sie krank gewesen wären? 23. Was hat er gegen seinen Onkel? 24. Er hat nichts gegen ihn.

1. Be patient, my children. 2. Be quiet, my little [ones].
 3. My father has given me* a new knife. 4. Have you anything against it? 5. What have you against it? 6. Have patience with him, dear brother. 7. Have patience with us, most gracious count. 8. Honour be to the king. 9. The soldiers ride with me into the town. 10. The general says that he will be here to-morrow. 11. Here is my old knife;

* Note again the indirect object, with or without the preposition in English — in German the simple dative — preceding the adjective in (13).

dear brother, be so good *and give* (gib) me a new [one] for it. 12. My aunt would have been present if her children had not been so impatient. 13. Be merciful to (*dat.*) us, O Lord. 14. My brother would have been in (the) school if the weather had been fine. 15. The old lady says, that her uncle is (*subj.*) much richer than the young count. 16. The air would be warmer, if the sky were not covered with clouds. 17. What have you against the count? 18. I have nothing against the man. 19. This gentleman says, that he has bought a gold watch for his little son. 20. The pupils have (*are*) gone with their teacher around the town. 21. The professors have gone with the students through the wood. 22. The fields would be already green if (the) spring were not so late. 23. I should have been at home earlier if I had not been so tired. 24. The apples would be ripe if the weather had been warmer.

LESSON XVI.

190. THE (AUXILIARY) VERB *werden*, *to become*.

In the singular of the past indicative *werden* has two forms: — *ward* being the older form — *wurde*, now in more general use.

Observe also that *werden*, in the future and conditional, is its own auxiliary, and has *sein* in its perfect tenses.

NOTE.— For *werden* as the equivalent of *shall*, *will*, etc., see § 173, note.

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PERF. PART.
<i>werden, to become.</i>	<i>werdend, becoming.</i>	<i>geworden, become.</i>

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

geworden sein, to have become.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

I become, etc.

ich werde. wir werden.

du wirst. ihr werdet.

er wird. sie werden.

I (may) become, etc.*

ich werde. wir werden.

du werdest. ihr werdet.

er werde. sie werden.

PAST.

I became, etc.

ich wurde, or ich ward.

du wurdest, or du wardst.

er wurde, or er ward.

wir wurden.

ihr wurdet.

sie wurden.

I (might) become, etc.

ich würde.

du würdest.

er würde.

wir würden.

ihr würdet.

sie würden.

PERFECT.

I have become, etc.

ich bin geworden.

du bist geworden.

er ist geworden.

wir sind geworden.

ihr seid geworden.

sie sind geworden.

I (may) have become, etc.

ich sei geworden.

du seiest geworden.

er sei geworden.

wir seien geworden.

ihr seiet geworden.

sie seien geworden.

PLUPERFECT.

I had become, etc.

ich war geworden.

du wärest geworden.

er war geworden.

wir waren geworden.

ihr wäret geworden.

sie waren geworden.

I (might) have become, etc.

ich wäre geworden.

du wärest geworden.

er wäre geworden.

wir wären geworden.

ihr wäret geworden.

sie wären geworden.

* See remark, § 175, 2, on translation of the subjunctive forms.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

FUTURE.

I shall become, etc.
 ich werde werden.
 du wirst werden.
 er wird werden.
 wir werden werden.
 ihr werdet werden.
 sie werden werden.

I shall become, etc.
 ich werde werden.
 du werdest werden.
 er werde werden.
 wir werden werden.
 ihr werdet werden.
 sie werden werden.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have become, etc.
 ich werde geworden sein.
 du wirst geworden sein.
 er wird geworden sein.
 etc.

I shall have become, etc.
 ich werde geworden sein.
 du werdest geworden sein.
 er werde geworden sein.
 etc.

CONDITIONAL.

I should become, etc.
 ich würde werden.
 du würdest werden.
 er würde werden.
 etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

I should have become, etc.
 ich würde geworden sein.
 du würdest geworden sein.
 er würde geworden sein.
 etc.

IMPERATIVE.

become (thou), etc.
 werde.
 werde er.

werden wir.
 werdet.
 werden sie (§ 176).

Inflect, as before, for question:

bin ich geworden?
have I become?

werde ich werden?
shall I become?

For inversion:

gestern war ich geworden,
yesterday I had become.

morgen werde ich werden,
to-morrow I shall become.

For transposition:

daß ich krank geworden war, <i>that I had become sick.</i>	wenn ich krank geworden wäre, <i>if I had become sick.</i>
etc.	etc.

Contraction of Prepositions with the Article.

191. The definite article is often contracted with prepositions. The most usual forms are:—

DATIVE SINGULAR.

<i>Masc. or Neut.</i>	am	for an dem,	<i>at the.</i>
	beim	“ bei dem,	<i>by the, near the.</i>
	im	“ in dem,	<i>in the.</i>
	vom	“ von dem,	<i>from the.</i>
	zum	“ zu dem,	<i>to the.</i>
<i>Fem.</i>	zur	“ zu der,	<i>to the.</i>

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

<i>Neut.</i>	anß	for an daß,	<i>to the.</i>
	aufß	“ auf daß,	<i>upon the.</i>
	durchß	“ durch daß,	<i>through the.</i>
	fürß	“ für daß,	<i>for the.</i>
	inß	“ in daß,	<i>into the.</i>
	umß	“ um daß,	<i>around the, about the.</i>

NOTE.—The accusative forms are no longer written with apostrophe. The dative forms sometimes seem to imply the indefinite article—in cases where no article is used in the plural. See § 443, *d*.

Possessive Adjectives.

192. The Possessive Adjectives are:—

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SINGULAR.	mein,	meine,	mein, <i>my</i> (§ 88).
	dein,	deine,	dein, <i>thy.</i>
	sein,	seine,	sein, <i>his (its).</i>
	ihr,	ihre,	ihr, <i>her (its).</i>

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
PLURAL.	unſer,	unſ(e)re,	unſer, <i>our.</i>
	euer,	eu(e)re,	euer, <i>your.</i>
	ihr,	ihre,	ihr, <i>their.</i>
	(Ihr)	(Ihre)	(Ihr) <i>your</i> (§ 188).

These are declined in the singular like the indefinite article, and in the plural like *dieſer*. As: *mein Vater, meine Mutter, mein Kind, meine Freunde*; but see § 127.

Possessive Pronouns.

193. When the possessives are used as pronouns (as in English, *mine, ours*, etc.), they take the full endings of *dieſer*, like the strong declension of adjectives, if used alone; or of the weak declension of adjectives, if preceded by the definite article. The forms will then be such as:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
	N. meiner,	meine,	meineſ, <i>mine,</i>
	G. meineſ,	meiner,	meineſ, <i>of mine, etc.</i>
or,	N. der meine,	die meine,	daſ meine,
	G. deſ meinen,	der meinen,	deſ meinen, etc.
Similarly,	deiner,	deine,	deineſ, <i>thine.</i>
	unſ(e)rer,	unſ(e)re,	unſ(e)reſ, <i>ours.</i>
	eu(e)rer,	eu(e)re,	eu(e)reſ, <i>yours, etc.</i>
or,	der ihre,	die ihre,	daſ ihre, <i>theirs.</i>
	der Ihre,	die Ihre,	daſ Ihre, <i>yours, etc.</i>

Examples: *Dieſeſ iſt mein (adj.) Buch; Ihreſ, or daſ Ihre (pron.) iſt dort. This is my book; yours is there. Wem gehöret dieſeſ Buch? To whom does this book belong? Eſ iſt mein, or daſ meine, it is mine.*

NOTE.—*Daſ Buch iſt mein, or daſ meine (rarely meineſ)*—the former is simply predicative; the latter, distinctive (from *yours*, etc.) or emphatic.

2. The possessive pronouns have the same form as the genitive of the personal pronouns; the possessive adjectives, as the shorter forms of the same. (§ 182.)

194. A possessive pronoun, of recent origin, is formed from the possessive adjective by adding the suffix *ig*. These forms can be used only with the definite article, and are generally employed when the definite article is used. The inflection is that of the weak adjective.

der, die, daß meinige, *mine*.

der, die, daß unsrige, *ours*.

der, die, daß deinige, *thine*.

der, die, daß eurige, *yours*.

der, die, daß seinige, *his (its)*.

der, die, daß ihrige, *theirs*.

der, die, daß ihrige, *hers (its)*.

(der, die, daß Ihrige, *yours*.)

EXERCISE XVI.

1. Der Baum wird grün. 2. Ich bin jung gewesen und bin alt geworden. 3. Werdet nicht ungeduldig. 4. Was ist aus ihm geworden? 5. Was wird aus mir werden? 6. Die Frau sagt, daß sie arm geworden sei. 7. Diese Äpfel würden reif werden, wenn das Wetter nicht so kalt wäre. 8. Ich würde sein Freund geworden sein, wenn ich mit ihm bekannt geworden wäre. 9. Der Knabe war sehr groß geworden. 10. Das Wetter wurde schön. 11. Die Kinder werden schläfrig. 12. Es wird Nacht. 13. Der Knabe wird ein Mann werden. 14. Der beste Gasthof in unserer Stadt ist am Tore. 15. Die größten Häuser der Stadt sind am Markte. 16. Der Kranke liegt im Bette. 17. Kind, es ist Zeit zur Schule zu gehen. 18. Der Graf steht am Fenster. 19. Ist dieser Hund dein? Er ist der meinige. 20. Wo ist das Haus Ihres Onkels? 21. Es ist neben dem meinigen. 22. Unsere Stühle sind weicher als die Ihrigen. 23. Ist dein deutscher Lehrer in der Schulstube? 24. Er ist in unserem Garten.

1. The trees become green. 2. The man became rich. 3. The air *has* become cold. 4. We *shall* grow sleepy. 5. What

would have become of (aus) me if you *had* not been my friend? 6. Your sons have grown very tall. 7. In (the) spring the days grow longer, but in autumn they grow (*invert*) shorter. 8. What has become of my boots? 9. The oldest and best hotel is on the market-place. 10. Do not grow impatient, my dear boy. 11. The leaves of the trees become yellow in (the) autumn. 12. The industrious poor [man] will become rich. 13. He says, that his brother has fallen (*become*) ill. 14. The youngest child will some day become an old man. 15. The sick (§ 140) lie in (the) bed. 16. Frederick was great in peace and in war (§ 72, b, 3). 17. The richest man would become poor in our most expensive hotels. 18. Children become quiet in (the) sleep. 19. This little dog is ours. 20. My brother is taller than yours. 21. Your father is older than mine. 22. Our orchard is larger than yours. 23. Your brothers are more industrious than ours. 24. It is-getting (*becoming*) colder (§ 172, note).

NOTE.—The materials of the exercises will now suffice for conversational exercises of considerable extent and interest. Each teacher will, of course, judge of the importance of such exercises for his own pupils. An easy German Reader might also, with some help from the teacher, be now begun.

LESSON XVII.

The Conjugation of Verbs.

195. There are two distinct conjugations of verbs, the *strong* and the *weak*. The former is sometimes called the *old* and the latter the *new* conjugation.

196. Verbs of the strong conjugation form their past tense, and usually their perfect participle, by changing the vowel of the root; they undergo an *internal* change. For example: *singen*, to sing; *ich sang*, I sang; *ich habe gesungen*, I have sung.

197. Verbs of the weak conjugation are conjugated by adding suffixes to the stem; they undergo an *external* change only. For example: loben, *to praise*; ich lob-te, *I praised*; ich habe gelob-t, *I have praised*.

198. Weak verbs form their perfect participle in et or t; strong verbs, in en. In both, the perfect participle usually takes the prefix ge-.

199. Strong verbs are, almost all, original German roots. Weak verbs include also derivative and foreign verbs, and represent the modern process in conjugation. Weak verbs are greatly the more numerous. Hence, though not properly, weak verbs are often called *regular*, and strong verbs *irregular*.

NOTE. — 1. The term *strong* here suggests the power of internal change, or of inflection without the aid of suffix; *weak*, the absence of that power. The strong is a primitive method, and belongs only to the oldest root-verbs—except the two Latin derivatives, schreiben, *to write*, preisen, *to praise*.

2. It is plain that these conjugations correspond closely to those in English; as, strong: *give, gave, given*; *sing, sang, sung*, etc.: weak: *praise, praised, praised*; *plant, planted, planted*, etc. In English, the perfect participle is always without the prefix *ge-*; and often, also, without the suffix *-en* or *-ed* (or *-d*).

200. A small group of verbs (properly weak, § 253) which undergo vowel change, are sometimes called *mixed* verbs. And a few others may be properly treated as *irregular verbs*.

201. The weak conjugation, because the simplest and of most frequent occurrence, will be given first.

The following are the regular endings of the weak verb:

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PERF. PART.
—en.	—end.	ge—(e)t.

	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
	PRESENT.		PAST.	
Sing. — e.	—e.	—e.	—(e)te.	—(e)te.
—(e)ft.	—eft.	—eft.	—(e)teft.	—(e)teft.
—(e)t.	—e.	—e.	—(e)te.	—(e)te.
Pl. — en.	—en.	—en.	—(e)ten.	—(e)ten.
—(e)t.	—et.	—et.	—(e)tet.	—(e)tet.
— en.	—en.	—en.	—(e)ten.	—(e)ten.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. —e, pl. —(e)t.

(a) The use of (e) where so marked, depends mainly on euphony. (See next Lesson.) Generally, the e is more usually retained in the subjunctive — and was also elsewhere more frequent formerly than now.*

(b) Observe that the third person singular is like the first person, except in the present indicative; and that in the plural, the first and third persons are always alike.

EXAMPLE OF THE WEAK CONJUGATION.

INFIN : **Loben**, *to praise*. †

PRES. PART. lobend.

PERF. PART. gelobt.

PERF. INFIN. — gelobt haben.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

ich lobe, *I praise*, etc.

ich lobe. (See § 175, 2.)

du lobst. (See § 175, 1.)

du lobest.

er lobt.

er lobe.

wir loben.

wir loben.

ihr lobt.

ihr lobet.

sie loben.

sie loben.

* Only the more usual forms are given in the paradigm. The older forms with e still sometimes occur, especially in poetry or in solemn style.

† As heretofore, the complete paradigm is given for convenient reference, though many of the forms have occurred already.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PAST.

ich lobte, *I praised*, etc.
 du lobtest.
 er lobte.
 wir lobten.
 ihr lobtet.
 sie lobten.

ich lob(e)te.
 du lob(e)test.
 er lob(e)te.
 wir lob(e)ten.
 ihr lob(e)tet.
 sie lob(e)ten.

PERFECT.

ich habe gelobt, *I have praised*.
 du hast gelobt.
 er hat gelobt.
 wir haben gelobt.
 ihr habt gelobt.
 sie haben gelobt.

ich habe gelobt.
 du habest gelobt.
 er habe gelobt.
 wir haben gelobt.
 ihr habet gelobt.
 sie haben gelobt.

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte gelobt, *I had praised*.
 du hättest gelobt.
 er hatte gelobt.
 wir hätten gelobt.
 ihr hättet gelobt.
 sie hätten gelobt.

ich hätte gelobt.
 du hättest gelobt.
 er hätte gelobt.
 wir hätten gelobt.
 ihr hättet gelobt.
 sie hätten gelobt.

FUTURE.

ich werde loben, *I shall praise*.
 du wirst loben, *thou wilt praise*.
 er wird loben.
 wir werden loben.
 ihr werdet loben.
 sie werden loben.

ich werde loben, *I shall praise*.
 du werdest loben, *thou wilt praise*.
 er werde loben.
 wir werden loben.
 ihr werdet loben.
 sie werden loben.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gelobt haben, <i>I shall have praised, etc.</i>	ich werde gelobt haben, <i>I shall have praised, etc.</i>
du wirst gelobt haben.	du werdest gelobt haben.
er wird gelobt haben, etc.	er werde gelobt haben, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde loben, <i>I should praise.</i>	wir würden loben.
du würdest loben, <i>thou wouldst, etc.</i>	ihr würdet loben.
er würde loben.	sie würden loben.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde gelobt haben, <i>I should have praised, etc.</i>
du würdest gelobt haben.
er würde gelobt haben, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

loben wir, <i>let us praise.</i>	
lobe, <i>praise (thou).</i> (§176)	lob(e)t, <i>praise (you).</i>
lobe er, <i>let him praise.</i>	loben sie, <i>let them praise.</i>

loben Sie, *praise.*

Inflect for inversion and transposition:

<i>yesterday I praised.</i>	<i>to-morrow I shall praise.</i>
gestern lobte ich, etc.	morgen werde ich loben, etc.
<i>that I praised yesterday.</i>	<i>if I should praise to-morrow.</i>
daß ich gestern lobte, etc.	wenn ich morgen loben würde, etc.

Conjugate like loben:

lieben, <i>to love.</i>	spielen, <i>to play.</i>	fragen, <i>to ask, question.</i>
leben, <i>to live.</i>	schicken, <i>to send.</i>	wohnen, <i>to dwell, live.</i>
lehren, <i>to teach.</i>	kaufen, <i>to buy.</i>	reisen, <i>to travel.</i>
lernen, <i>to learn.</i>	sagen, <i>to say.</i>	machen, <i>to make, to do.</i>
lachen, <i>to laugh.</i>	wünschen, <i>to wish.</i>	brauchen, <i>to need, want.</i>
weinen, <i>to weep, cry.</i>	hören, <i>to hear.</i>	zeigen, <i>to show.</i>

202. Rules of Position.

1. A pronoun object precedes a noun object.
2. An indirect object usually precedes a direct object.
3. But *eß* precedes any other object, except (often) *sich*.
4. An object without a preposition precedes an object with a preposition.
5. An adverb of time precedes an object, except pronouns; other adverbs usually stand near the verb.
6. An infinitive or participle stands after its modifiers.

203. Remember that the indirect object — in English with or without preposition, according to its position — is expressed in German by the simple dative; as, *er gab mir ein Buch*, *he gave me a book (a book to me)*.

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns.

204. These are: —

der, die, daß, that.

dieser, diese, dieseß, this (here), the latter.

jener, jene, jeneß, that (there), the former.

solcher, solche, solcheß, such.

derjenige, diejenige, daßjenige, that.

derselbe, dieselbe, daßselbe, the same.

205. *Der, dieser* and *jener* are originally demonstrative adjectives; but they are used both as pronominal adjectives with a noun, and as pronouns standing instead of a noun: *that* or *this one, he*, etc.

206. *Der, die, daß*, as adjective, is declined like the article, but is pronounced with a greater stress of voice. As a pronoun, it has the following enlarged forms:

Sing. Gen. dessen, deren, dessen, of him, of her, of it.

Plur. Gen. deren or derer, of those, of them.

Dat. denen, to those, to them. (§456, 2.)

207. Solcher may be preceded by the indefinite article : ein solcher Mann, eine solche Frau, ein solches Kind, *such a man*, etc. It is indeclinable when it precedes the article, as in English : solch ein Mensch, solch eine Frau, solch ein Kind ; or an adjective : solch schöner Himmel, *such a beautiful sky*.

208. Derjenige and derselbe decline each component :

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. N.</i>
N. derselbe.	dieselbe.	dasjelbe.	dieselben.	
G. desselben.	derselben.	desjelben.	derselben.	
D. demselben.	derselben.	demselben.	denselben.	
A. denselben.	dieselbe.	dasjelbe.	dieselben.	
N. derjenige.	diejenige.	dasjenige.	diejenigen.	
G. desjenigen.	derjenigen.	desjenigen.	derjenigen.	
D. demjenigen.	derjenigen.	demjenigen.	denjenigen.	
A. denjenigen.	diejenige.	dasjenige.	diejenigen.	

NOTE.—I. Der, derselbe, are frequently used as substitutes for personal pronouns. (See § 457).

2. Derjenige is most regularly used as antecedent to a relative ; as derjenige, welcher, *he who*, etc.

209. A compound of da (dar) with prepositions is usual instead of a dative or accusative of the pronoun der, die, daß, referring to *things*. (See § 184).

NOTE.—Yet the pronoun may so stand when emphatic—especially when antecedent to was (§ 236, b).

210. *This, that, these, those*, immediately preceded or followed by the verb *to be*, are rendered in German by the neuter singular pronoun dieses (usually dies) and daß, the verb agreeing with the following predicate noun. As: Dies ist eine Rose und das ist eine Lilie. Sind dies Kirschen, *are these cherries?* Das sind Kartoffeln, *those are potatoes*.

REMARK. — Observe following uses of the subjunctive (as § 180). Also, that the subjunctive is used in *contingent* statements (as in sentence 7).

EXERCISE XVII.

1. Der Lehrer lobt den fleiszigcn Schüler. 2. Wir lernen Deutsch. 3. Mein Vater hat ein Haus gekauft. 4. Kinder lieben ihre Eltern. 5. Was sagen Sie dazu? 6. Er sagt, dasz er Französisch und Deutsch gelernt habe. 7. Ich wünsche, dasz mein Sohn Deutsch lerne. 8. Ich bin durch ganz Deutschland gereist. 9. Er lachte. 10. Ihr weinet. 11. Ich werde Ihnen etwas Neues sagen. 12. Ich würde es gesagt haben, wenn Sie es gewünscht hätten. 13. Fragen Sie mich nicht. 14. Wo ist meine deutsche Grammatik? Ich brauche sie. 15. Ich werde es meinem Vater sagen. 16. Spiele nicht mit des Nachbars Kindern. 17. Der König hörte, dasz der berühmte Feldherr krank sei. 18. Diogenes lebte zur Zeit Alexanders. 19. Mein Freund hat mir gesagt, dasz er ein Landgut kaufen werde. 20. Ich würde auch eins (eines, *one*) kaufen, wenn ich Geld dazu hätte. 21. Ist dies Ihr Buch? 22. Es ist das meines Bruders. 23. Sind dies dieselben Schüler, welche (*who*) mit uns in der Schule waren? 24. Es (*they*) sind nicht dieselben.

1. I have asked him. 2. Where does he live (*dwel*)? 3. He lives in the new house near the city-wall. 4. What have you bought? 5. I shall buy a watch. 6. The children cried; we heard them. 7. He does not hear you. 8. Would you buy an estate if you had money? 9. What do you want (*wish*)? 10. I want (*need*) a new hat. 11. We have bought two beautiful pictures. 12. What did he say to that? 13. Do

*For practice a few of the Exercises will be provided in Roman type, which is now frequently used in Germany. See § 41, note.

not laugh. 14. If I were a wealthy man, I should (*invert*) send my children to Berlin. 15. There they would learn German. 16. He will send us a fat goose. 17. Show me the house of the doctor. 18. Diligent scholars love their teacher. 19. My mother has said it. 20. What would she have said if she had heard it? 21. Do not ask me. 22. This dictionary is mine. 23. We played with the same children. 24. We use the same grammar as (*wie*) your teacher.

LESSON XVIII.

Weak Verbs (Continued).

211. Generally speaking, the retention or rejection of the short vowel *e* in the terminations (*e*)*t*, (*e*)*t*, (*e*)*te*, (*e*)*tet*, (*e*)*ten*, depends on euphony — the *e* being usually omitted where euphony will permit. (§ 201, *a*.) But there are some instances in which the *e* must be retained.

NOTE.—Like cases occur in English for like reasons of euphony; as *mended*, *planted*, *mixes*, etc.

212. Verbs whose stem ends in *ð* or *t*, or in *m* or *n* preceded by a mute consonant, always retain the *e*. Thus:

Reden, to speak, talk.

PRESENT.

PAST.

I speak.

I spoke, talked.

ich rede.	wir reden.	ich redete.	wir redeten.
du redest.	ihr redet.	du redetest.	ihr redetet.
er redet.	sie reden.	er redete.	sie redeten.

PAST PARTICIPLE — *geredet, talked, spoken.*

NOTE.—Contracted forms like *red't*, *red't*, etc. are frequent.

213. Verbs whose stem ends in a sibilant (ſ, ſs, z, ſch) retain the e always in the second person singular of the present :

ich tanze, *I dance.*

ich reiſe, *I travel.*

du tanzeſt, *thou danceſt.*

du reiſeſt, *thou travelleſt.*

er tanzt, *he dances.*

er reiſt, *he travels.*

214. Verbs whose stem ends in el, er, drop e of the stem before the ending e; elsewhere they drop the e of the inflection, as also in the infinitive (§ 85, note).

Handeln, *to act.*

Rudern, *to row.*

ich handle.

ich rudre.

du handelſt.

du ruderſt.

er handelst.

er rudert.

wir handeln.

wir rudern.

ihr handelt.

ihr rudert.

ſie handeln.

ſie rudern.

handle (du).

rudre (du).

ich habe gehandelt.

ich habe gerudert.

Conjugate like reden :

baden, *to bathe.*

atmen, *to breathe.*

achten, *to esteem, respect.*

tröſten, *to comfort.*

warten, *to wait.*

rechnen, *to reckon.*

retten, *to save.*

zeichnen, *to draw.*

leiten, *to lead.*

öffnen, *to open.*

Like tanzen :

wünſchen, *to wish.*

ſetzen, *to put, place.*

fiſchen, *to fish.*

haſſen, *to hate.*

Like handeln and rudern :

tadeln, *to blame.*

ändern, *to alter.*

ſchütteln, *to shake.*

plaudern, *to chat, talk.*

lächeln, *to smile.*

klettern, *to climb.*

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

215. The perfect participle regularly takes the prefix *ge-* in verbs of all conjugations. This prefix is called the *augment*.

(a) But verbs of foreign origin ending in *ier'en* (old spelling also *ir'en*), do not take the augment *ge-*. Thus: *studie'ren*, *to study*; *studie'rt*, *studied*; *marſchie'ren*, *to march*; *marſchie'rt*, *marched*.

Conjugate like *ſtudieren* :

regieren, *to rule, govern.* *bombardieren*, *to bombard.*

probieren, *to try.* *ſallieren*, *to fail.*

(b) *Buchſtabie'ren*, *to spell*, is formed from a German word by a foreign suffix, and forms its past participle *buchſtabiert'*. But in *zieren*, *to adorn*, *ier* is not a part of the termination, but of the root of the verb; therefore *geziert*, *adorned*.

216. Verbs formed with the unaccented inseparable prefixes do not take the augment *ge-*. These prefixes are *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, and some others. (Lesson XXVIII.) Examples: *erfauf'sen*, p. p. *erfauft'*; *verlo'ben*, p. p. *verlobt'*, *bezeich'nen*, p. p. *bezeich'net*. For accent see § 54.

NOTE.— In general, the augment is not prefixed except immediately before the syllable having the principal accent.

Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives.

217. These are :—

wer, *who?*

waß, *what?*

welcher, *welche*, *welcheß*, *which? what (adj.)?*

waß für ein, *what kind of a?*

218. The declension of *wer* and *was* is as follows:—

N. <i>wer, who?</i>	<i>was, what?</i>
G. <i>wessen, whose?</i>	<i>wessen, to what?</i>
D. <i>wem, to whom?</i>	(dative is wanting.)
A. <i>wen, whom?</i>	<i>was, what?</i>

219. *Wer* is used in speaking of persons, for both genders and numbers; and *was* in speaking of inanimate objects. Examples: *Wer ist größer, Karl oder Heinrich? Wer sind diese Frauen? Was haben Sie da? Wer and was are used only as pronouns.*

220. *Welcher* is used both as an adjective and as a pronoun. As an adjective: *Welches Haus haben Sie gekauft?* As a pronoun: *Welches von diesen Häusern etc.?*

NOTE.—*Welch*, uninflected, is often used in exclamations before the indefinite article or an adjective, like *solch* (§ 207); as, *welch ein Mann! welch reicher Himmel, what a rich sky!*

221. The phrase *was für ein*, *what for a, what (kind of)*, is used as an interrogative adjective, in which *ein* is inflected; as, *was für ein Baum ist das? what kind of a tree is that? was für einen Stocf haben Sie? what kind of a cane have you?* Or without *ein*: *was für Wein—Unsinn—Blumen? what (kind of) wine—nonsense—flowers?*

NOTE.—*Was* and *für (ein)* are often separated, as, *Was ist das für ein Stocf? Was ist das für Unsinn?*

Was für einer, what kind of one, occurs as pronoun.

222. (a) Instead of a dative or accusative of *was* with a preposition, *wo*, *where*, before a vowel *wer*, is used in composition: as, *wovon, of what? wodurch, through what? womit, with what? worin, in what? worauf, upon what?* (§ 184).

NOTE.—With *um*, *warum, for what, why?* is used for *worum*.

Yet a preposition may stand before *was für (ein)*.

(b) Likewise the genitive *wessen* is rarely used, except

of persons. A shorter form, *wesß*, is sometimes met with; in compounds, *wesß*; as, *wesßhalb*, *on what account?* (See also Lesson LV.)

IDIOMS.

auf einen warten, *to wait for some one.*

auf etwas rechnen, *to count upon something.*

gern, *with pleasure, willingly.*

ich plaudre gern, *I like to chat.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Ich habe sie* getröstet. 2. Er hat den ganzen Tag gewartet. 3. Dieser Mann redet zu viel. 4. Die Schüler achten ihren Lehrer. 5. Mein Bruder wartet auf seinen Freund. 6. Er rechnet darauf. 7. Er rettete das Kind. 8. Ich schüttle den Baum. 9. Du plauderst zu viel, mein Kind. 10. Der Knabe kletterte auf den Baum. 11. Er tadelte diesen Fehler. 12. Sie zeichnet schlecht. 13. Mein Bruder hat zu (*at*) Heidelberg studiert. 14. Mein armer Nachbar hat falliert. 15. Er lächelte über den Narren. 16. Sie tadelten uns. 17. In wessen Garten sind Sie gewesen? 18. Wir waren in dem (or demjenigen) unseres Nachbars. 19. Was haben Sie getadelt? 20. Wen tadelte der Lehrer? 21. Wessen Haus ist das? 22. Wem hat unser Lehrer dieses Buch geschickt? 23. Wem sagen Sie das? 24. Was für eine Blume haben Sie da?

1. The boys have bathed in the deep river. 2 She has denied it. 3. My daughter comforted the poor woman. 4. Dost thou wait for thy brother? 5. The boys shook the trees. 6. The brave soldier saved the old general. 7. We have waited the whole day. 8. I chat with my children. 9. I smile at (*über, acc.*) the fool. 10. The general has bombarded the town. 11. We have tasted (*tried*) this wine. 12. We opened the door.

* *Her, or them.* See note 3, § 189. In connected discourse, however, such ambiguities will generally be avoided.

13. The mother led her child by (an, *dat.*) the hand. 14. The teacher blamed the pupil. 15. The prince chatted with the old soldier. 16. The boys were rowing against the stream. 17. The maid-servant has adorned the nursery with beautiful flowers. 18. Spell these words. 19. I have spelled them. 20. We like to chat with our friends. 21. Whom have you sent into (the) town? 22. Whose house have you bought? 23. To whom did you show the castle of the count? 24. What have you there? — What kind of a stick is that?

LESSON XIX.

The Strong Conjugation.

223. Strong verbs, as already stated, are distinguished by a change of the root-vowel — that is, by internal change — in conjugation. This change of vowel is called *Umlaut*.

NOTE. — *Umlaut* must not be confounded with *Umlaut* (§ 10.) From the force of *um*, *around* and *Laut*, *sound*, *Umlaut* means a *shifting* of sound on the same base, as of *a, o, u*, to *ä, ö, ü*. From *ab*, *off*, *away*, *Umlaut* means a *departure* of sound, that is, the substitution of a different sound. The former is called *vowel modification*; the latter, *vowel change*. They are, historically, of different origin. The term *vowel alteration* is used when necessary to include both of these processes.

General Rules of Conjugation for Strong Verbs.

224. The past tense is formed by a change of root-vowel (*Umlaut*) and without any ending, as, *sprechen, sprach*; *singen, sang*; *lügen, log*; *fallen, fiel*, etc. The past subjunctive modifies, when possible, the root-vowel of the past indicative, and adds *-e*, as, *spräche, fänge, löge, fiere*, etc.

NOTE. — An earlier *e* is still sometimes found in the past indicative of some verbs; as *sah* for *sah*, etc.

225. The perfect participle ends in *en*. The root-vowel of the participle is sometimes the same as that of the infinitive; sometimes the same as that of the past; sometimes different from both. As in the sequences:

- I. 1. 2. 1. as, *sehen, sah, gesehen*, etc.
 II. 1. 2. 2. as, *früen, fror, gefröen*, etc.
 III. 1. 2. 3. as, *süen, sang, gesungen*, etc.

NOTE.—I. This *sequence of vowels* will be found to be a convenient aid to the memory. The groups as thus defined are sometimes called Conjugations I., II., III. See § 259.

2. The infinitive, past tense, and perfect participle, which exhibit the vowel sequences, are known as the *principal parts* of the verb — as also in English; and, likewise, in the weak verbs.

Special Rules of Conjugation.

226. Certain strong verbs undergo modification or change of the root-vowel in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative and in the imperative singular.

(a) Most verbs which have *e* for their root-vowel change *e* to *i* or *ie* in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative and second person singular of the imperative: short *e* always becoming *i*; long *e*. usually, becoming *ie* — and omit the final *e* of the imperative. As: *ich bräche, I break; du brichst, er bricht; imperative brich, ich lese, I read, du liegest, er liebt: imperative, lies.* But some verbs with long *e* are excepted.

(b) Most verbs which have *a* for their root-vowel modify *a* into *ä* in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, but not in the imperative: *ich falle, I fall, du fällst, er fällt; imperative: falle.*

(c) The following modify the vowel only in the present indicative: *laufen, to run, du läufst, er läuft; saufen, to drink, du säufst, er säuft; stoßen, to push, du stößest, er stößt. Erlöschen, to become extinguished, go out, becomes erlischest, erlischt, and*

changes its vowel also in the second singular of the imperative: erlich. Also verlöschten (§ 242, a).

(d') Verbs whose stem ends in t contract -tet to -t in the third singular present if they alter the vowel, but not otherwise; as, gelten, gilt; raten, rät; but bieten, bietet. (§ 212).

227. With the above exceptions (§§ 224, 226) the rules for the personal endings are the same as in the weak conjugation. (§ 201.)

Further details and exceptions will be given under the several classes, and in the Alphabetical List, p. 307, etc.

EXAMPLE OF A STRONG VERB.

Sprechen, to speak.

Principal Parts.

sprechen.	sprach.	gesprochen.
PRES. PART.—sprechend.	PERF. INFIN.—	gesprochen haben.
<i>Indicative.</i>	PRESENT.	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
ich spreche.		ich spreche.
du sprichst.		du sprichst.
er spricht.		er spreche.
wir sprechen.		wir sprechen.
ihr sprecht.		ihr sprecht.
sie sprechen.		sie sprechen.
	PAST.	
ich sprach.		ich spräche.
du sprachst.		du sprächest.
er sprach.		er spräche.
wir sprachen.		wir sprächen.
ihr sprachet.		ihr sprächet.
sie sprachen.		sie sprächen.
	PERFECT.	
ich habe gesprochen.		ich habe gesprochen.
du hast gesprochen, etc.		du habest gesprochen, etc.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte gesprochen.

ich hätte gesprochen.

du hattest gesprochen, etc.

du hättest gesprochen, etc.

FUTURE.

ich werde sprechen.

ich werde sprechen.

du wirst sprechen, etc.

du werdest sprechen, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gesprochen haben, etc. ich werde gesprochen haben, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde sprechen, *I should speak.*

du würdest sprechen, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde gesprochen haben, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

sprechen wir.

sprich.

spricht.

spreche er.

sprechen sie.

Classes of Strong Verbs.

228. Strong verbs may be divided, for the convenience of the learner, into three classes, according to the root-vowels (see Remark § 259):

i. The first class contains all strong verbs which have for their root-vowel *i* (*ie*) or *e*, with a few others.

This class contains by far the largest number of strong verbs, and is subdivided into four groups according to the vowels (*Ablaut*) of the past tense and perfect participle.

Examples : —

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| a) <i>singen, to sing.</i> | <i>sang, sang.</i> | <i>gesungen, sung.</i> |
| b) <i>sprechen, to speak.</i> | <i>sprach, spake.</i> | <i>gesprochen, spoken.</i> |
| c) <i>frieren, to freeze.</i> | <i>fror, froze.</i> | <i>gefroren, frozen.</i> |
| d) <i>sehen, to see.</i> | <i>sah, saw.</i> | <i>gesehen, seen.</i> |

229. 2. The second class contains all strong verbs which have for their root-vowel *ei*, with one exception. (§ 247, n.)

This class is subdivided into two groups, the first having in the past tense and perfect participle a short *i*, and the second group having *ie*.

Examples : —

- | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| a) <i>beißen, to bite.</i> | <i>biß, bit.</i> | <i>gebissen, bitten.</i> |
| b) <i>treiben, to drive.</i> | <i>trieb, drove.</i> | <i>getrieben, driven.</i> |

230. 3. The third class contains all strong verbs which have for their root-vowel *a*, with a few others.

It is subdivided into two groups according to the vowel of the past tense.

Examples : —

- | | | |
|--|----------------------|---------------------------|
| a) <i>fallen, to fall.</i> | <i>fiel, fell.</i> | <i>gefallen, fallen.</i> |
| b) <i>schlagen, to strike, (slay).</i> | <i>schlug, slew.</i> | <i>geschlagen, slain.</i> |

NOTE.— Only the usual forms will be here given. Other special forms will be found in the Alphabetical List, p. 307, etc.

231. FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

First Subdivision.

VOWELS— *i; a, u.* SEQUENCE— 1. 2. 3 (§ 225).

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
<i>binden, to bind.</i>	<i>band.</i>	<i>gebunden.</i>
<i>dringen, to press.</i>	<i>drang.</i>	<i>gedrungen.</i>
<i>finden, to find.</i>	<i>fand.</i>	<i>gefunden.</i>
<i>gelingen, to succeed (impersonal).</i>	<i>gelaug.</i>	<i>gelungen.</i>

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
klingen, <i>to sound.</i>	klang.	geklungen.
ringen, <i>to wring, wrestle.</i>	rang.	gerungen.
schlingen, <i>to sling, twine.</i>	schlang.	geschlungen.
schwänden, <i>to vanish.</i>	schwänd.	geschwunden.
schwingen, <i>to swing.</i>	schwäng.	geschwungen.
singen, <i>to sing.</i>	sang.	gesungen.
sinken, <i>to sink.</i>	sank.	gesunken.
springen, <i>to spring, leap.</i>	sprang.	gesprungen.
stinken, <i>to stink.</i>	stank.	gestunken.
trinken, <i>to drink.</i>	trank.	getrunken.
winden, <i>to wind.</i>	wand.	gewunden.
zwingen, <i>to force.</i>	zwang.	gezwungen.

(a) To these may be added:

dingen, <i>to bargain.</i>	ding or dang.	gedungen.
schinden, <i>to flay.</i>	schünd.	geschunden.

which have usually u instead of a in the past tense.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Dieser Mann hat das Geld gefunden. 2. Meine Schwester wird ein deutsches Lied singen. 3. Trinken Sie gern Milch? 4. Er bindet das Buch. 5. Der Vogel hat gesungen. 6. Es klang sehr schön. 7. Der Efeu schlingt sich um den Baum. 8. Er sagt, dasz er das Buch gebunden habe. 9. Es ist mir nicht gelungen (*I have not succeeded in*, etc.), das Wort in dem Wörterbuche zu finden. 10. Zwingen Sie mich nicht. 11. Die Kinder würden weinen, wenn der Lehrer sie zwänge, dieses Lied zu lernen. 12. Es wird Ihnen nicht gelingen, Deutsch zu lernen, wenn Sie nicht fleisziger studieren. 13. Ich habe ein Messer gefunden. 14. Die Kinder dieser Frau haben sehr schön gesungen. 15. Die Frauen wanden einen Kranz. 16. Worauf sitzen die Schüler? 17. Wovon sprechen die Lehrer? 18. Woraus hat das Kind getrunken? 19. Wir fanden die

Bücher auf der Bank in der Schulstube. 20. Das Mädchen schlang den Kranz um den Arm des Knaben. 21. Der Matrose sprang auf den Felsen. 22. Der Buchbinder hat unsere alten Bücher sehr schön gebunden. 23. So sank das Schiff. 24. In der Nacht schwanden die Wolken.

1. I have found these books on the table. 2. This good young lady wound a wreath around the boy's hat. 3. What would these children say if the teacher forced them to leave (the) school? 4. The gentleman sang a German song. 5. Do you *like to* drink milk? 6. She liked to drink wine. 7. I have drunk a cup [of] tea. 8. The boy leaped over the garden-wall. 9. The boy has found this knife in the school-room. 10. I should drink a glass [of] water if I were thirsty. 11. Would you be glad if we sang (*subj.*) a song? 12. He hoped that you had found me here. 13. I have succeeded (*it is to me succeeded*). 14. She will succeed. 15. You will find me at home to-morrow. 16. The soldiers forced the general to speak. 17. You would succeed if you studied more. 18. Do not drink this bad beer. 19. The boy swung himself over the wall. 20. The birds were—singing in the woods. 21. The farmer has flayed the ox. 22. What song had you been singing (*sung*)? 23. What kind of a song has the young lady sung? 24. What kind of tea do you like to drink?

LESSON XX.

232. FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

Second Subdivision.

VOWELS—*e* (*i*); *a*, *o*. SEQUENCE—1. 2. 3.

INFINITIVE.

PAST.

PERF. PART.

befehlen, *to command*; befiehlt, befiehlt. befahl. befohlen.

beginnen, *to begin*.

begann. begonnen.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
bergen, <i>to hide</i> ; birgst, birgt.	barg.	geborgen.
bersten, <i>to burst</i> ; birstest, birst. ¹	barst.	geborsten.
brechen, <i>to break</i> ; brichst, bricht.	brach.	gebrochen.
empfehlen, <i>to recommend</i> ; empfehlst, empfiehlt.	empfaht.	empfohlen.
erschrecken, <i>to be frightened</i> ; erschrickst, erschrickt.	erschraf.	erschrocken.
gebären, <i>to bring forth</i> ; gebierst, gebiert.	gebar.	geboren.
gelten, <i>to be worth</i> ; giltst, gilt. ¹	galt.	gegolten.
gewinnen, <i>to win</i> .	gewann.	gewonnen.
helfen, <i>to help</i> ; hilfst, hilft.	half.	geholfen.
kommen, <i>to come</i> . (See below.)	kam.	gekommen.
nehmen, <i>to take</i> ; nimmst, nimmt.	nahm.	genommen.
rinnen, <i>to flow</i> .	rann.	geronnen.
schelten, <i>to scold</i> ; schiltst, schilt. ¹	schalt.	gescholten.
schwimmen, <i>to swim</i> .	schwamm.	geschwommen.
sinnen, <i>to meditate</i> .	sann.	gesonnen.
spinnen, <i>to spin</i> .	spann.	gesponnen.
sprechen, <i>to speak</i> ; sprichst, spricht.	sprach.	gesprochen.
stechen, <i>to stick</i> ; stichst, sticht.	stach.	gestochen.
stehlen, <i>to steal</i> ; stiehst, stiehlt.	stahl.	gestohlen.
sterben, <i>to die</i> ; stirbst, stirbt.	starb.	gestorben.
treffen, <i>to hit, to meet</i> ; triffst, trifft.	traf.	getroffen.
verderben, <i>to spoil</i> ; verdirbst, verdirbt.	verdarb.	verdorben.
werben, <i>to sue</i> ; wirbst, wirbt.	warb.	geworben.
werfen, <i>to throw</i> ; wirfst, wirft.	warf.	geworfen.

(a) All these verbs modify the vowel e to i, or ie, in the second and third person singular of the present and in the second person singular of the imperative (sprich, triff, &c.).

In learning these and similar verbs it is best perhaps for beginners to confine the attention first to the principal parts only — bearing in mind the rules § 226, and noting exceptions as they occur.

1. See § 226, d.

(b) *Gebären*, *fommen* are irregular in this group, having *ä*, *o* instead of (earlier) *e* in the infinitive. The modified forms *fömmst*, *fömmt*, are rare.

(c) The verb *werden* belongs to this class with its old past *ward*. With its modern past, *wurde*, it is irregular (§ 256).

(d) Note change of *quantity* in *fommen*, *nehmen*, *treffen*.

REMARK. — Observe that the verbs beginning with the inseparable prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *er-*, etc. (§ 216), do not take the augment *ge-*. Such verbs are given in the lists only where the primitive verb is no longer in use; as, *gebären*, etc.

Relative Pronouns.

233. The German language, like the English, has no special words to express the relative connection, but supplies the deficiency by using the demonstrative *der*, *die*, *das*, and the interrogatives *welcher*, *e*, *es*, and *wer*, *was*; their use as relatives being shown by the construction (§ 238).

234. *Der*, when used as a relative, is declined like the demonstrative *der* (§ 206), except that in the genitive plural it has only *deren* (never *derer*). *Welcher*, as a relative is declined like *dieser*, except that it lacks the genitive case, both singular and plural.

235. In the genitive singular only the forms *dessen*, *deren*, *dessen*, and in the genitive plural the form *deren* are used. Examples: *Der Mann, dessen Haus ich gekauft habe, ist gestorben*; *the man whose house I have bought has died*. *Die Frau, deren Kinder Sie neulich bei uns trafen, wird uns morgen besuchen*; *the lady whose children you met lately at our house will pay us a visit to-morrow*.

236. (a) *Wer*, *was*, are used as indefinite relatives, including the antecedent, like the English (*he*), *who*, *who-*

ever, what (that which). As: Wer andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt selbst hinein; *he who digs for others a pit falls into it himself.* Was er hat, ist nicht viel; *what he has is not much.*

(b) Was is also of regular occurrence after a neuter pronoun, personal, demonstrative or indefinite (es, das, alles, etwas, nichts) etc., and after neuter adjectives used as nouns. As: Alles, was ich habe; *all (that) I have.* Das erste, was sie hörten, *the first (thing) they heard.* Nach dem, was ich gehört habe, *after [that] what I have heard.* Also, when the antecedent is an entire sentence or clause; English *which*; as: er kam nicht, was mich ärgerte, *he did not come, which angered me.*

237. Instead of the relative was— or, usually, the dative or accusative of relatives referring to *things*—with prepositions, the compounds of wo, wor (§ 222) are employed.

238. Since every relative clause is dependent, or subordinate, the relative pronoun throws the verb to the end of the clause—in compound tenses, the auxiliary (§ 169,2).

NOTE.—A relative clause in German is *always* punctuated with a comma.

239. The relative pronoun is frequently omitted in English, but must always be expressed in German. Thus: *The news we heard yesterday, die Neuigkeit, welche wir gestern hörten.*

240. In English, in the interrogative, and in some forms of the relative construction, the preposition is often thrown to the end of the clause. This cannot be imitated in German. As, *what are you speaking of? Wovon sprechen Sie (of what)? The man we spoke of; der Mann, von welchem (dem) wir sprachen (of whom) etc.* (See also Less. LVI.)

EXERCISE XX.

1. Mein Bruder empfiehlt Ihnen diesen Wein. 2. Es ist derselbe Wein, den ich Ihnen empfohlen habe. 3. Hilf mir, Heinrich! 4. Ich habe ihn gestern auf der Strasse getroffen. 5. Wir trafen uns (*each other*) oft. 6. Er hat das Geld genommen. 7. Er birgt auch alles, was er stiehlt. 8. Er spricht Deutsch und Französisch. 9. Er nimmt kein Geld. 10. Schiller starb zu (*at*) Weimar. 11. Worüber sannen Sie? 12. Die Fische schwimmen in dem Wasser. 13. Kommen Sie nicht zu spät. 14. Ich habe den ersten Preis gewonnen. 15. Sie hat sich mit einer Nadel gestochen. 16. Sie haben es getroffen. 17. Das Eis bricht. 18. Dieser Knabe hat Steine in den Garten unseres Nachbars geworfen. 19. Sein Vater schilt ihn. 20. Es ist derselbe Knabe, der die schönsten Blumen in unserem Garten gebrochen hat. 21. Was für ein unartiger Knabe! 22. Mein Vater empfiehlt sich Ihnen.

1. Who commands here? 2. The teacher commands here. 3. He told me that he would help us. 4. I met him yesterday in (the) town. 5. We came too soon. 6. She helps the poor (*dat.*). 7. Does your brother speak German? 8. The soldiers would be frightened if the enemy (*pl.*) came (*past subj.*). 9. These soldiers say, that they would not be frightened. 10. He has won this money, he has not stolen it. 11. The women are spinning. 12. I have spoken with him. 13. At what time does the concert begin? 14. The music has begun. 15. Take my pen, dear brother, it is better than *yours*. 16. Do not be frightened, it is only a pin with which I have pricked myself. 17. My father sends his compliments to your mother. 18. Here is the book which the teacher has recommended [to] you. 19. You have hit it. 20. With what can I help you? 21. What are you meditating about (*über*)? 22. This is the woman I was speaking of (*von*) to you. 23. Here is the man whose sons swam over the river. 24. All the poor man [had] is spoiled or taken from him. (*Use comma before all relatives.*)

LESSON XXI.

FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

*Third Subdivision. — A.*VOWELS—*ie*; *o*, *o*. SEQUENCE—1. 2. 2.

241. The third subdivision of the first class contains a larger number of verbs than any other class. The first list contains only those which have for the radical vowel of the infinitive *ie*.

In all the verbs of this group the root of which ends in *ß* or *ch*, the long *ie* of the infinitive is changed into a short *o* in the past tense and perfect participle (§ 41). *Sieden* changes its *d* to *tt*; and in *ziehen* *h* is changed to *g*. *Triefen* doubles its *f*. See also p. 307, Rem. 2, 3.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
<i>biegen, to bend.</i>	<i>bog.</i>	<i>gebogen.</i>
<i>bieten, to bid, offer.</i>	<i>bot.</i>	<i>geboten.</i>
<i>fliegen, to fly.</i>	<i>flog.</i>	<i>geflogen.</i>
<i>fliehen to flee.</i>	<i>floh.</i>	<i>geflohen.</i>
<i>fließen, to flow.</i>	<i>floß.</i>	<i>geflossen.</i>
<i>frieren, to freeze.</i>	<i>fror.</i>	<i>gefroren.</i>
<i>genießen, to enjoy.</i>	<i>genoß.</i>	<i>genossen.</i>
<i>gießen, to pour.</i>	<i>goß.</i>	<i>gegossen.</i>
<i>kriechen, to creep.</i>	<i>kroch.</i>	<i>gekrochen.</i>
<i>riechen, to smell.</i>	<i>roch.</i>	<i>gerochen.</i>
<i>schieben, to shove, push.</i>	<i>schob.</i>	<i>geschoben.</i>
<i>schießen, to shoot.</i>	<i>schoß.</i>	<i>geschossen.</i>
<i>schließen, to shut, lock.</i>	<i>schloß.</i>	<i>geschlossen.</i>
<i>sieden, to boil.</i>	<i>sott.</i>	<i>gesotten.</i>
<i>sprießen, to sprout.</i>	<i>sproß.</i>	<i>gesprossen.</i>
<i>stieben, to be scattered.</i>	<i>stob.</i>	<i>gestoben.</i>
<i>triefen, to drip.</i>	<i>troff.</i>	<i>getroffen.</i>
<i>verdrießen, to vex.</i>	<i>verdroß.</i>	<i>verdroffen.</i>

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
verlieren, <i>to lose.</i>	verlor.	verloren.
wiegen, <i>to weigh</i> (intransitive).	wog.	gewogen.
ziehen, <i>to draw</i> (intr.) <i>to move.</i>	zog.	gezogen.

B.

VOWELS—e, i; o, u. SEQUENCE—1. 2. 2.

242. This list, besides verbs with root-vowel e or i, contains also, by analogy of conjugation, a few with root-vowel ä, au, ö, ü, and one with a (schallen). All have o in the past tense and perfect participle.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
bewegen, <i>to induce.</i>	bewog.	bewogen.
dreschen, <i>to thrash</i> ; drischeſt, ¹ driſcht.	droſch.	gedroſchen.
ſechten, <i>to fight</i> ; ſicht(e)ſt, ſicht.	ſocht.	geſochten.
ſlechten, <i>to braid</i> ; ſlicht(e)ſt, ſlicht.	ſlocht.	geſlochten.
gären, <i>to ferment.</i>	gor.	gegoren.
glimmen, <i>to glimmer.</i>	glomm.	geglommen.
heben, <i>to lift.</i>	hob.	gehoben.
klimmen, <i>to climb.</i>	klomm.	geklommen.
küren, <i>to choose.</i>	kor.	gekoren.
löſchen, <i>to go out</i> (of a light); liſcheſt, ¹ liſcht.	loſch.	gelöſchen.
lügen, <i>to tell a lie.</i>	log.	gelogen.
melken, <i>to milk</i> ; milchſt, milcht.	molk.	gemolken.
pflegen, ² <i>to practise, foster.</i>	pflog.	gepflogen.
quellen, <i>to gush</i> ; quillſt, quillt.	quoll.	gequollen.
ſaufen (of animals), <i>to drink</i> ; ſäuſt, ſäuft.	ſoff.	geſoffen.
ſaugen, <i>to suck.</i>	ſog.	geſogen.
ſchallen, ² <i>to sound.</i>	ſcholl.	geſchollen.
ſcheren, <i>to shear</i> ; ſchierſt, ſchiert.	ſchor.	geſchoren.
ſchmelzen, <i>to melt</i> ; ſchmilzeſt, ¹ ſchmilzt.	ſchmolz.	geſchmolzen.
ſchnauben, <i>to snort.</i>	ſchnob.	geſchnoben.

1. For contracted 2nd person singular, see p. 307, Rem. 2.

2. Also weak. See Alphabetical list.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
schrauben, <i>to screw.</i>	schrob.	geschroben.
schwären, <i>to suppurate.</i>	schwor.	geschworen.
schwellen, <i>to swell</i> ; schwillst, schwillt.	schwoll.	geschwollen.
schwören, <i>to swear.</i>	schwor.	geschworen.
trügen, <i>to deceive.</i>	trog.	getrogen.
wägen, <i>to weigh</i> (transitive). ¹	wog.	gewogen.
weben, <i>to weave.</i>	wob.	gewoben.

242. (a) The verbs *führen*, *löschen*, *schallen*, *trügen* occur chiefly with the inseparable prefixes: *erführen*, *erlöschen*, *verschallen*, *erschallen*, *verschallen*, *betrügen*.

(b) Note absence of vowel change (§ 226) in the present of *bewegen*, *heben*, *pflegen*, *weben*, *schallen* — and in other e verbs hereafter.

EXERCISE XXI.—A.

1. Die Tore der Stadt sind geschlossen. 2. Der Vogel flog auf einen Baum. 3. Wir sind (*have*) aus der Stadt auf das Land gezogen. 4. Die Feinde flohen. 5. Der Bruder meines Veters hat sein Geld verloren. 6. Es hat gefroren. 7. Friert es? 8. Der Kaufmann bot mir hundert Taler für mein Pferd. 9. Die wilden Gänse ziehen im Herbst nach Süden. 10. Wie viel hat das Brot gewogen? 11. Seine Kleider troffen vom Regen. 12. Die Feinde stoben nach allen Seiten. 13. Der Jäger hat drei Hasen geschossen. 14. Wer jung ist, genieße sein Leben. 15. Karl, gieße Wasser auf die Blumen! 16. Es verdrießt mich, mein Geld verloren zu haben.

1. He has poured water into the glass. 2. Have you lost your money? 3. The cat crept under the table. 4. He pushed the table against (an) the wall. 5. The enemy (*pl.*) has (*are*) fled. 6. I have shot a hare. 7. How much has the merchant offered you for your horse? 8. He has offered me

1. Also weak; see Alphabetical list.

[a] hundred dollars. 9. My uncle has (*is*) moved into the village. 10. The leaves of the trees sprout in (the) spring. 11. The boy says that he has (*subj.*) lost his knife. 12. The sportsman sent me three birds which he had shot. 13. The gate is locked. 14. The trees are dripping with (vom) rain. 15. The rain was dripping from her dress. 16. (The) birds fly in the air, fishes swim in the water, and worms creep upon the earth.

B.

1. Diese drei Regimenter haben tapfer gefochten. 2. Ein Tier säuft, ein Mensch trinkt; ein Mensch säuft (swills), wenn er wie ein Tier trinkt. 3. Er hob das Kind auf den Stuhl. 4. Der Regen troff aus den Wolken. 5. Was hat Sie bewogen, auf das Land zu ziehen? 6. Das Feuer ist erloschen. 7. Die Schäfer haben die Schafe geschoren. 8. Der Schnee ist auf den Bergen geschmolzen. 9. Die Mägde melken die Kühe. 10. Der Knabe hat gelogen. 11. Wer gelogen hat, lüge nicht mehr; und wer gestohlen hat, stehle nicht mehr. 12. Das Eis schmilzt. 13. Dieser Kaufmann hat mich betrogen. 14. Das Wasser quillt aus der Erde. 15. Er hob den Stein auf. 16. Er galoppierte so schnell, dasz das Pferd schnob und die Funken stoben.

1. The rivers are swollen by the rain. 2. The peasant is threshing. 3. Our soldiers have fought bravely. 4. The snow is melting. 5. How many sheep have the shepherds shorn to-day? 6. The fire had (*was*) gone out; not—a (fein) spark was glimmering. 7. The merchant would have deceived me. 8. He who (*wer*) steals will lie. 9. He lifted the stone out of the water. 10. A good soldier fights for his king. 11. All is lost. 12. Tell shot the apple from the head of his little son. 13. The rain was pouring from the clouds. 14. The stranger offered me (*dat.*) his hand. 15. The girl who had milked the cows weighed a pound [of] butter. 16. This old thief has stolen a young sheep.

LESSON XXII.

243. FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

Fourth Subdivision.

VOWELS — e, i, ie; a, e. SEQUENCE — I. 2. 2 (3).

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
bitten, <i>to beg, ask.</i>	bat.	gebeten.
essen, <i>to eat; iſſeſt, ißt.¹</i>	aß.	gegeſſen.
freſſen, <i>to eat; friſſeſt, frißt¹ (of animals).</i>	fraß.	gefreſſen.
geben, <i>to give; gißeſt, gißt.²</i>	gab.	gegeben.
geneſen, <i>to recover (from illneſs).³</i>	genaß.	geneſen.
geſchehen, <i>to happen; eß geſchieht.</i>	geſchah.	geſchehen.
leſen, <i>to read; ließeſt, ließt.¹</i>	laß.	geleſen.
liegen, <i>to lie, be ſituated.</i>	lag.	gelegen.
meſſen, <i>to meaſure; mißeſt, mißt.¹</i>	maß.	gemeſſen.
ſehen, <i>to ſee; ſieheſt, ſieht.</i>	ſah.	geſehen.
ſißen, <i>to ſit.</i>	ſaß.	geſeſſen.
treten, <i>to ſtep; trittſt, tritt.</i>	trat.	getreten.
vergeſſen, <i>to forget; vergißeſt, vergißt.¹</i>	vergaß.	vergeſſen.

(a) In eſſen there is a double augment — geſſen, contracted to geſſen — then ge-geſſen. In ſißen, *ß* is changed to *ß*. Treten changes long e to ſhort i, followed by *tt*.

(b) In this group the a of the paſt is long. Hence in the ſubjunctive, *äße, früße*, etc. (§ 41).

Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives.

244. The indefinite pronouns are :

jemand, <i>ſomebody, anybody.</i>	einer, <i>one.</i>
niemand, <i>nobody.</i>	keiner, <i>no one; pl. none.</i>
jedermann, <i>everybody.</i>	etwaß (<i>waß</i>), <i>ſomething, anything.</i>
man, <i>one, they, etc.</i>	nichts, <i>nothing.</i>

1. For contracted 2nd ſingular, ſee p. 307, Rem. 2.

2. Formerly gießeſt, gießt, as ſtill ſometimes written.

3. Note abſence of vowel change in preſent.

(a) Jemand, niemand have genitive $-(e)s$; dative $-em$, or $-en$; accusative $-en$; but are often without ending in dative and accusative. Jedermann takes only $-(e)s$ in the genitive.

NOTE.— These words are all compounds of Mann, *man*.

(b) Einer, feiner are the pronoun forms of ein, fein. They are declined like dieser. Compare the possessives (§ 193).

(c) The indefinite man (from Mann, *man*) is the general personal subject, variously translated: *one, people, they, we*, etc.; also often by the passive; as, man sagt, *it is said*. It is used only as nominative singular. (See § 460, 1).

(d) Etwas, nichts are indeclinable. They often occur with a neuter adjective as noun: etwas Gutes; nichts Gutes.

NOTE.— The English *not any*—*one* or *thing* will be usually expressed simply by kein(er), niemand, nichts.

245. The indefinite adjectives are:—

kein, keine, kein, <i>no, not any.</i>	mancher, e, es, <i>many (a).</i>
jeder, jede, jedes, } <i>each every,</i>	einige, } <i>some (pl.), a few.</i>
jeglicher, e, es, } <i>no plural.</i>	etliche, }
jedweder, e, es, }	viel, <i>much</i> ; pl. viele, <i>many.</i>
aller, e, es, <i>all.</i>	wenig, <i>little</i> ; pl. wenige, <i>few.</i>

NOTE.— To these may be added the indeclinable ein wenig, *a little*: and phrases like ein paar, *a few*, ein bißchen, *a bit (of)* used indeclinably; also the forms in $-lei$, allerlei, *of all kinds*, etc. (§ 306); and welcher (§ 458, 2). The indefinite article also properly belongs here.

(a) Jeder is used also with the indefinite article, usually without a noun: ein jeder, *every one*; sometimes also, ein jeglicher.

(b) Manch is also used, in the singular, without declension, followed by the indefinite article; as, *mancher Mann*, or *manch ein Mann*, *many a man*. Also— chiefly in poetry—before an adjective; as, *manch bunte Blumen* (for *manche bunten Blumen*).

(c) Viel and wenig are generally not declined in the singular, but should be declined in the plural. For instance: Viel Geld, viel Wein; *much money, much wine*. But: Er hat viele Freunde, *he has many friends*. Vieles, weniges, occur as neuter pronouns.

NOTE.— For other special uses of indefinites, see § 460.

IDIOMS.

bitte, *pray*; for ich bitte.

wie viel, *how much*; pl. *how many*.

um etwas bitten, *to beg for anything*.

ich will damit sagen, *I mean by that*.

EXERCISE XXII.

1. Bitte, lieber Vater, gib mir eine neue Uhr. 2. Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung. 3. Der Arme bittet um Brot. 4. Sieh, hier sind deine Bücher. 5. Der Blinde sieht nichts. 6. Es geschieht oft, daß man etwas in der Eile vergißt. 7. Als der Kranke genesen war, aß er einen Apfel mit dem größten Appetit'. 8. Ich vergaß Ihnen zu sagen, daß ich Ihren Freund gesehen habe. 9. Der Knabe ißt Kirschchen. 10. Der Vogel saß auf einem hohen Baume. 11. Jedermanns Sache ist niemandes Sache. 12. Ich habe die Sache ganz vergessen. 13. Tiere fressen, Menschen essen; Tiere saufen, Menschen trinken. 14. Wenn man von einem Menschen sagt, daß er fresse, so will man damit sagen, daß er wie ein Tier esse. 15. Der König saß auf dem Throne, und seine Minister traten vor ihn. 16. Tritt näher, mein Sohn, sprich lauter, und lies deutlich. 17. Siehst du niemand(en) auf der Bank? 18. Ich sehe niemand(en). 19. Alles ist verloren. 20. Viele waren erwartet, aber wenige sind gekommen. 21. Welche Gegenden der Schweiz haben Sie bereist? 22. Ich habe nur einige Städte der Schweiz gesehen. 23. Lag viel Schnee auf den Bergen? 24. Die Berge waren ganz frei von Schnee.

1. My friend gave me a dollar for the poor. 2. This scholar reads more distinctly than that [one]. 3. My sister reads Schiller's Wilhelm Tell. 4. I should read more, if I had more time. 5. The books lay upon the table. 6. I have seen your good old aunt. 7. It happened yesterday. 8. Have you seen that famous general? 9. I have not seen him. 10. I beg (for) pardon. 11. I should have asked you, if I had seen you. 12. The boys have eaten ripe cherries. 13. The blind [man] sees no one. 14. You have forgotten the matter. 15. I was

in[a] hurry and have quite forgotten it. 16. We shall eat with a good appetite. 17. The minister stepped before the throne. 18. Do many [people] travel in winter? 19. Few travel in winter, but many travel in summer. 20. I have little money. 21. He has many books, but I have none. 22. He lives at (in) peace with all men. 23. We read the whole night (*acc.*). 24. One often forgets what one has read.

Rule of Position.

In the normal order, an adverb will follow the verb. — Hence translate, *one forgets often.*

LESSON XXIII.

SECOND CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

First Subdivision.

246. The second class of strong verbs contains verbs which have for their root-vowel in the infinitive *ei*. The first subdivision contains those verbs which have in their past tense and perfect participle a short *i*.

In order to show the shortening of the vowel the following consonant is doubled, except where it is double already. In *leiden* and *schneiden*, *ð* becomes **tt**. See also p. 307, Rem. 2.

VOWELS — *ei*; *i*, *i*. SEQUENCE — I. 2. 2.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
(<i>sich</i>) <i>befleissen</i> , <i>to apply one's self.</i>	<i>besliß.</i>	<i>besliffen.</i>
<i>beißen</i> , <i>to bite.</i>	<i>biß.</i>	<i>gebiffen.</i>
<i>erbleichen</i> , <i>to turn pale.</i>	<i>erblisch.</i>	<i>erblichen.</i>
<i>gleichen</i> , <i>to resemble, to be like.</i>	<i>glich.</i>	<i>geglichen.</i>
<i>gleiten</i> , <i>to glide.</i>	<i>glitt.</i>	<i>geglitten.</i>
<i>greifen</i> , <i>to seize.</i>	<i>griff.</i>	<i>gegriffen.</i>

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
keißen, <i>to chide.</i>	kiß.	gekißen.
kneißen, <i>to pinch.</i>	knieß.	gekniesen.
leiden, <i>to suffer.</i>	litt.	gelitten.
pfeifen, <i>to whistle.</i>	pfiff.	gepfiffen.
reißen, <i>to tear.</i>	riß.	gerissen.
reiten, <i>to ride.</i>	ritt.	geritten.
schleichen, <i>to sneak.</i>	schlich.	geschlichen.
schleifen, <i>to whet.</i>	schliff.	geschliffen.
schleißen, <i>to slit.</i>	schliß.	geschliffen.
schmeißen, <i>to sling.</i>	schmiß.	geschmissen.
schneiden, <i>to cut.</i>	schnitt.	geschnitten.
schreiten, <i>to stride.</i>	schritt.	geschritten.
spleißen, <i>to split.</i>	spieß.	gespliffen.
streichen, <i>to stroke.</i>	strich.	gestrichen.
streiten, <i>to contend.</i>	stritt.	gestritten.
weichen, <i>to yield.</i>	wich.	gewichen.

Second Subdivision.

247. The second subdivision contains those verbs which have in their past tense and perfect participle long i (ie).

VOWELS — ei; ie, ie. SEQUENCE — I. 2. 2.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
bleiben, <i>to remain.</i>	blieb.	geblieben.
gedeihen, <i>to prosper.</i>	gedieh.	gediehen.
leihen, <i>to lend.</i>	lieh.	geliehen.
meiden, <i>to avoid.</i>	mied.	gemieden.
preisen, <i>to praise.</i>	pries.	gepriesen.
reiben, <i>to rub.</i>	rieb.	gerieben.
scheiden, <i>to part.</i>	schied.	geschieden.
scheinen, <i>to shine.</i>	schien.	geschienen.
schreiben, <i>to write.</i>	schrieb.	geschrieben.
schreien, <i>to scream.</i>	schrie.	geschrien.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
ſchweigen, <i>to be silent.</i>	ſchwieg.	geſchwiegen.
ſpeien, <i>to spit.</i>	ſpie.	geſpien.
ſteigen, <i>to mount, rise.</i>	ſtieg.	geſtiegen.
treiben, <i>to drive.</i>	trieb.	getrieben.
weiſen, <i>to show.</i>	wieſ.	gewieſen.
zeihen, <i>to accuse.</i>	zieh.	geziehen.

NOTE.—The verb heißen, *to call, be called*, belongs to the third class (next lesson).

IDIOMS.

gleichen, *to resemble* (governs dative).

auf ſchnellen Pferden, *on swift horses*, i. e. at full speed.

an (dat.) etwas leiden, *to suffer from anything*.

EXERCISE XXIII.—A.

1. Der Knabe ſchliff ſein Meſſer und ſchnitt Brot damit.
 2. Ein Hund hat mich gebiſſen. 3. Kinder gleichen ihren Eltern.
 4. Unſere Soldaten ritten auf ſchnellen Pferden gegen den Feind; ſie ſtritten wie tapfre Helden. 5. Der Feind wich.
 6. Ich habe mich in den Finger geſchnitten. 7. Ich habe mein Exercitium mit deinem verglichen und finde, daſz ich zwei Fehler mehr gemacht habe als du. 8. Der Sturm hatte das Dach vom Hauſe geriſſen. 9. Der Wind pfiſt in den Bäumen.
 10. Die Diebe ſchlichen in das Hauſe und ſtahlten alles, was ſie fanden. 11. Der Jäger ſchritt über das Feld. 12. Ich würde mit Ihnen nach der Stadt reiten, wenn ich nicht an Zahnweh litte.

1. My mother ſuffers from (an) toothache. 2. My ſiſter ſuffered from headache. 3. She turned pale. 4. This dog had bitten that little boy. 5. Charles compared his exerciſe with mine and found that he had two miſtakes more than I. 6. The tailor cuts the cloth. 7. Who has been whiſtling? 8. The thief ſneaked into our houſe and ſtole all (that) he found.

9. My uncle has (*is*) ridden into the town. 10. The wind tore the leaves from the trees. 11. The son resembles the father. 12. The sledge glided over the snow and (the) ice. 13. These knives are sharp; I have ground them. 14. Nobody yielded. 15. The huntsman whistled to his dogs. 16. He tore a leaf out of the book.

B.

1. Bitte, leihen Sie mir zwei Taler. 2. Verzeihen Sie, dasz ich Sie darum bitte. 3. Der alte König war gestorben, und sein Sohn, der junge Prinz Heinrich, stieg auf den Thron. 4. Die Engländer sind oft auf die höchsten Berge der Schweiz gestiegen. 5. Die Sonne scheint bei Tage und der Mond bei Nacht. 6. Der Hirt trieb die Ochsen und die Kühe seines Herrn auf das Feld. 7. Würden Sie antworten, wenn ich Ihnen schriebe? 8. Mein Vater wünscht, dasz ich ihm öfter schreibe [*subj.*]. 9. Ich würde schreiben, wenn ich Papier und Tinte hätte. 10. Er hat mir seine deutsche Grammatik geliehen. 11. Er schickte mir das Buch zurück, welches ich ihm geliehen hatte. 12. Das Kind schrie; es hatte sich in den Finger geschnitten.

1. Do you remain at home? 2. My sister remained at home. 3. The moon and the stars shone brightly. 4. The boy was silent; his teacher scolded him; he had not written his exercise. 5. A lady got out of (*stieg auß*) the carriage. 6. We shall get into this carriage. 7. Who has lent you this book? 8. Pray, lend me your German dictionary. 9. The king has pardoned the prince (*dat.*) 10. Write to me more frequently. 11. I should have written to you more frequently, if I had had time for it (*dazu*). 12. I should answer you, if you should write to me. 13. The count has shown us his pictures. 14. The old general mounted (on) his horse. 15. Not everything that is written is true. 16. They parted as friends.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

248. The third class of strong verbs contains verbs which have for their root-vowel *a*, and in a few instances *au*, *o*, *u* or *ei*. It is subdivided into two groups.

The first subdivision contains verbs which change the root-vowel in the past into *ie*, or *i*, but retain the vowel or diphthong of the infinitive in the perfect participle.

NOTE.—Gehen (earlier also *gangan*) belongs irregularly to this class. Hauen has irregularly *b* in the past tense (from earlier *w*).

First Subdivision. VOWELS—*a*; *ie* (*i*), *a*. SEQUENCE—1. 2. 1.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
blasen, <i>to blow</i> ; bläsest, bläst. ¹	bließ.	geblasen.
braten, <i>to roast</i> ; brätst, brät. ²	briet.	gebraten.
fallen, <i>to fall</i> ; fälltst, fällt.	fiel.	gefallen.
fangen, <i>to catch</i> ; fängst, fängt.	fieng.	gefangen.
gehen, <i>to go</i> .	ging.	gegangen.
halten, <i>to hold</i> ; hältst, hält. ²	hielt.	gehalten.
hängen, <i>to hang</i> ; hängst, hängt.	hing.	gehängen.
hauen, <i>to hew</i> .	hieb.	gehauen.
heißen, <i>to bid, be called, be</i> . ¹	hieß.	geheißen.
lassen, <i>to let</i> ; lässest, läßt. ¹	ließ.	gelassen.
laufen, <i>to run</i> ; läufst, läuft.	lief.	gelaufen.
raten, <i>to advise</i> ; rätst, rät. ²	riet.	geraten.
rufen, <i>to call</i> .	rief.	gerufen.
schlafen, <i>to sleep</i> ; schläfst, schläft.	schließ.	geschlafen.
stoßen, <i>to push</i> ; stößest, stößt. ¹	stieß.	gestoßen.

Second Subdivision.

249. The verbs of this subdivision have in the infinitive and perfect participle *a*, and in the past *u*.

1. For contracted 2nd singular, see p. 307, Rem. 2.

2. See § 226, *d*.

NOTE.—*Stehen* (formerly also *stantan*) belongs irregularly to this class. Its old past was *stund*. See alphabetical list.

VOWELS—*a*; *u*, *a*. SEQUENCE—1. 2. 1.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.
<i>backen</i> , to <i>bake</i> ; <i>bäckst</i> , <i>bäckt</i> .	<i>back</i> .	<i>gebacken</i> .
<i>fahren</i> , to <i>drive</i> ; <i>fährst</i> , <i>fährt</i> .	<i>fuhr</i> .	<i>gefahren</i> .
<i>graben</i> , to <i>dig</i> ; <i>gräbst</i> , <i>gräbt</i> .	<i>grab</i> .	<i>gegraben</i> .
<i>laden</i> , to <i>load</i> . (See p. 313).	<i>lud</i> .	<i>geladen</i> .
<i>schaffen</i> , to <i>create</i> .	<i>schuf</i> .	<i>geschaffen</i> .
<i>schlagen</i> , to <i>strike</i> ; <i>schlägst</i> , <i>schlägt</i> .	<i>schlug</i> .	<i>geschlagen</i> .
<i>stehen</i> , to <i>stand</i> .	<i>stand</i> .	<i>gestanden</i> .
<i>tragen</i> , to <i>carry</i> ; <i>trägst</i> , <i>trägt</i> .	<i>trug</i> .	<i>getragen</i> .
<i>wachsen</i> , to <i>grow</i> ; <i>wächstest</i> , <i>wächst</i> . ¹	<i>wuchs</i> .	<i>gewachsen</i> .
<i>waschen</i> , to <i>wash</i> ; <i>wäschtest</i> , <i>wäscht</i> . ¹	<i>wusch</i> .	<i>gewaschen</i> .

Note absence of vowel change in the present of *gehen*, *stehen*, *schaffen*. See also p. 307, Rem. 2.

Reflexive Verbs.

250. A reflexive verb is one whose object is the pronoun corresponding to its subject—the action is *reflected*. In the third person there is a special reflexive object, *sich*, dative and accusative. Elsewhere the regular pronoun objects are used reflexively. (See § 185.)

Hence, generally, *sich* before the infinitive is used to mark a reflexive verb.

251. The conjugation offers no peculiarities. The reflexive object has the usual place, before an infinitive or participle, but elsewhere immediately after the verb-form, (169. 2)—subject, however, to inversion or transposition.

The perfect auxiliary of a reflexive verb is always *haben*.

NOTE.—The reflexive object may be accusative or dative—sometimes genitive—but is usually accusative, as in the paradigm. Those with other than accusative objects are sometimes called *false* or *indirect reflexives*.

CONJUGATION OF **sich waschen**, *to wash (one's self)*.

INFIN.	PRES. PART.	PERF. PART.
sich waschen.	sich waschend.	sich gewaschen.*

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

sich gewaschen haben.

PRESENT.

ich wasche mich, <i>I wash myself.</i>	wir waschen uns.
du wäschest dich.	ihr wascht euch.
er wäscht sich.	sie waschen sich.

PAST.

ich wusch mich, *I washed myself.* du wuschtest dich, etc.

PERFECT.

ich habe mich gewaschen, *I have washed myself.*

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte mich gewaschen, *I had washed myself.*

FUTURE.

ich werde mich waschen, *I shall wash myself.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde mich gewaschen haben, *I shall have washed myself.*

IMPERATIVE.

wasche dich, *wash thyself.*wasche er sich, *let him wash himself.*waschen wir uns, *let us wash ourselves.*wascht euch, *wash yourselves.*waschen sie sich, *let them wash themselves.*waschen Sie sich, *wash yourself or yourselves.*

*The perfect participle can here occur only in auxiliary forms. The *sich* which stands before the infinitive and participles will, of course, be replaced by the proper pronoun, corresponding to the subject.

In like manner, with dative object :

ich schmeichle mir, <i>I flatter myself.</i>	wir schmeicheln uns.
du schmeichelst dir.	ihr schmeichelt euch.
er schmeichelt sich.	sie schmeicheln sich.

Or with genitive object :

ich spare meiner, <i>I spare myself.</i>	wir schonen uns(r)er.
du schonst deiner.	ihr schonst eu(r)er.
er schonst seiner.	sie schonen ihrer.

252. A reflexive plural is often used in a reciprocal sense ; as, wir sehen uns selten, *we seldom see each other*. In case of possible ambiguity, the indeclinable compound einander, *one-another*, is used instead of the reflexive ; as, sie lieben einander, *they love one another (each other)*.

REMARK.—The reflexive form is used much more largely in German than in English, and is variously translated. Some verbs are used exclusively, or with special meaning, as reflexives. The reflexive meaning must always be looked for in the dictionary.

2. Especially where in English the same form is transitive or intransitive, the latter is in German usually expressed by the reflexive ; as, *I move, he turns* ; ich bewege mich ; er wendet sich, etc.

3. The emphatic selbst, selber, self (§ 454) must not be confounded with the reflexive — the forms being the same in English.

IDIOMS.

spazieren, <i>to walk, exercise.</i>	sich freuen, <i>to rejoice.</i>
spazieren gehen, <i>to take a walk.</i>	sich irren, <i>to be mistaken.</i>
spazieren reiten, <i>to take a ride.</i>	sich befinden, <i>to be (do).</i>
spazieren fahren, <i>to take a drive.</i>	vor einem Jahre, <i>a year ago.</i>

EXERCISE XXIV.—A.

1 Der Koch hat das Fleisch nicht gut gebraten. 2 Die Köchin würde es besser gebraten haben. 3 Der Tote lag da, als ob er schlief. 4 Schläfst du, mein Kind? 5 Ich habe die ganze Nacht geschlafen. 6 Man liesz den Narren gehen.

7. Wofür halten Sie mich? 8. Ich habe Sie immer für einen reichen Mann gehalten. 9. Der Lehrer hielt ein Buch in der Hand. 10. Ich stand auf einem Berge und sah in das tiefe Tal. 11. Lassen Sie mich gehen. 12. Wir gingen nach Hause. 13. Die Freundin meiner Schwester ist ins Konzert gegangen. 14. Wo ist die Herrin des Hauses? 15. Sie schläft noch. 16. Der Blinde fiel über einen Stein. 17. Die Königinnen Elisabeth und Marie waren einander feindlich. 18. Wie heißen Sie? 19. Ich heiße Heinrich.

1. The [man] cook is roasting the meat. 2. The [woman] cook has roasted a goose. 3. We ate a roast goose. 4. The queen and her [women] servants went to (the) church. 5. The wind blew from the North. 6. I wished that a milder wind would blow. 7. A sleeping dog does not bite. 8. What is the name of this street (say: *how is this street called*)? 9. This street is called (the) New Street. 10. In the kitchen the [man] cooks are the greatest heroes. 11. A coat hangs on (an) the wall. 12. I shall call my man-servant. 13. We ran through the garden. 14. A prince keeps his word. 15. She has left her books at home. 16. I advised her to go home. 17. Henry pushed Charles against (an) the wall. 18. I have knocked my foot against a stone.

B.

1. Sie trägt noch dasselbe Kleid, welches sie vor zwei Jahren getragen hat. 2. Der Bäcker bäckt Brot. 3. Die Magd würde ihre Kleider gewaschen haben, wenn sie Seife gehabt hätte. 4. Man gräbt mit einem Spaten. 5. Gott schuf die Welt aus nichts. 6. Wenn dieser Baum Früchte trüge, so würden wir Ihnen gern einige davon schicken. 7. Ich stand am Fenster und sah, wie der Knabe den Hund schlug. 8. Dieser Baum trägt keine Frucht. 9. Wir fahren gestern spazieren. 10. Meine Schwestern werden spazieren reiten. 11. Die Schüler sind mit ihrem Lehrer spazieren gegangen. 12. Ich freue

mich, Sie zu sehen, Herr Doktor; wie befinden Sie sich? 13. Danke, ich befinde mich sehr wohl, seit ich auf dem Lande wohne und die frische Luft geniesze. 14. Wie befindet sich Ihr [Herr] Vater? 15. Ich danke Ihnen, [mein] Herr, er befindet sich recht wohl. 16. Wir freuen uns, Sie so wohl zu sehen. 17. Ich habe mich geirrt. 18. Er sagte mir, dasz er sich geirrt habe.

1. The baker has baked bread. 2. The coachman drives too fast. 3. Who stands there? 4. We stood and waited. 5. This plant has (iſt) grown very quickly. 6. He carried the letters to (auf) the post-office. 7. The children are delighted (rejoice); they will take-a-drive. 8. The heart beats. 9. How are you, dear uncle? 10. I am very well, my dear child. 11. My aunt has taken a drive with her sister. 12. I should wash (myself), if I had soap and water. 13. The rifle is loaded; the soldier loaded it. 14. We should take a ride, if the weather were fine. 15. What do you take (*hold*) me for, sir? 16. You are mistaken. 17. I beg [for] pardon, sir; I have been mistaken. 18. Our friends will rejoice that their children love one another so warmly.

LESSON XXV.

Mixed and Irregular Verbs.

253. A small number of verbs change their root-vowel in the past indicative and perfect participle, and also add the endings of the weak conjugation. These are sometimes called *mixed verbs*.

NOTE. — This change of vowel is not historically the same as the *Ablaut* of the strong verbs. These are really weak verbs, which have undergone a root-vowel change. The term *mixed* is used only for convenience.

254. In the past subjunctive most of these verbs follow the weak conjugation, without vowel-change; but bringen, denken, wissen follow the strong. Bringen and denken change ng, nk to ch in the past and perfect participle. Wissen is also irregular in the present singular.

INFINITIVE.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PAST SUBJ.
brennen, <i>to burn.</i>	brannte.	gebrannt.	brennte.
kennen, <i>to know.</i>	kante.	gekant.	kante.
nennen, <i>to name, call.</i>	nannte.	genannt.	nennte.
rennen, <i>to run.</i>	rannte.	gerannt.	rennte.
senden, <i>to send.</i>	sandte.	gesandt.	sendete.
wenden, <i>to turn.</i>	wandte.	gewandt.	wendete.
bringen, <i>to bring.</i>	brachte.	gebracht.	brächte.
denken, <i>to think.</i>	dachte.	gedacht.	dächte.
wissen, <i>to know.</i>	wußte.	gewußt.	wüßte.

PRESENT. — ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen, etc.

NOTE. — I. Senden and wenden are also conjugated regularly as weak verbs. (See § 212.) Sometimes also rennen.

2. With wissen compare the modal auxiliaries (next Lesson).

255. *Tun, to do*, is quite irregular.

It forms its past tense by reduplication and vowel change (like *di-d*); its perfect participle and past subjunctive as in strong verbs; but it drops e before consonants in the infinitive, perfect participle, and present indicative and imperative. Thus: —

INFIN.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PAST SUBJ.
tun.	tat.	getan.	täte.

PRESENT. *Sing.*: tue, tußt, tut; *plur.*: tun, tut, tun.

IMPERATIVE. *Sing.*: tue; *plur.*: tut.

256. The auxiliaries haben, sein, werden, are also irregular:

(a) Haben (weak) has in the present indicative hast, hat, for habst, habt; in the past, hatte for habte; but forms its past subjunctive strong: hätte.

(b) *Sein* is wholly irregular, being made up like English *am, was, been*, of different roots; and has also, in part, exceptional personal inflections. The infin. *sein* is for *seien* (§ 75, b).

(c) *Werden* has in the present *wirſt* for *wirdſt*; and *wird* as § 226, d; but imperative *werde*. The past *ward* (§ 232, c) was formerly more common than now, in the sense of an *aorist*.

257. The following may be conveniently grouped together for special notice :

eſſen (§ 243), *gehen*, *hauen*, *heißen* (§ 248), *leiden*, *ſchneiden* (§ 246), *nehmen* (§ 232), *ſieden* (§ 241), *ſißen* (§ 243), *ſtehen* (§ 249), *tun* (§ 255), *ziehen* (§ 241). Also, those which double the root-consonant after a shortened vowel (as § 246); and those which drop one consonant after a lengthened vowel (as § 248-9); and the vowel changes (§ 226), with exceptions (§ 242-3-8-9).

258. Some verbs have special forms, outside of their usual conjugation.

Such forms are sometimes archaic or poetic — sometimes alternative forms, strong or weak. See Alphabetical List (p. 308, etc.).

259. The following table will present to the eye the several forms of the strong verbs as classed above; also the *conjugation* (§ 225) to which they may be referred according to the sequence of the vowels, and the § where they may be found.

REMARK. — The importance of these verbs — strong, mixed, and irregular — is far beyond their numerical proportion. They are the most fruitful roots of the language, and give rise to a great number of derivatives and compounds of various classes. Hence they should be carefully learned.

The classification here given is for convenience only. A more scientific arrangement — based on historical development — might be given, but without advantage to the learner. This belongs properly to later study. The conjugation by vowel sequences (§ 225) will be found useful in impressing the forms on the memory. *But, after all, the verbs must be learned mainly by observation and by memory. Hence constant reference must be made to the Alphabetical List, in case of doubt.*

Synopsis of Strong Verbs.

CLASS.	INFIN.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	CONJ.	§
I. 1.	i.	a.	u.	III.	231.
2.	e, i.	a.	o.	III.*	232.
3.	ie.	o.	o.	II.	241.
	e, etc.	o.	o.	II.	242.
4.	e, etc.	a.	e.	I.†	243.
II. 1.	ei.	i.	i.	II.	246.
2.	ei.	ie.	ie.	II.	247.
III. 1.	a, etc.	ie.	a, etc.	I.	248.
2.	a.	u.	a.	I.	249.

IDIOMS.

Unrecht tun, *to do wrong.* die erste Klasse, *the first class.*
 sein Bestes tun, *to do one's best.* die zweite Klasse, *the second class.*
 an jemanden denken, *to think of one.* ein Gesandter, *an ambassador* } (§ 141).
 von (dat.) denken, *to have an opinion of.* der Gesandte, *the ambassador* }
 jemanden kennen lernen, *to become acquainted with some one.*

NOTE.—Kennen, *to know*, is used of objects—persons or things—known or recognized by the senses; wissen, *to know*, expresses knowledge by the understanding—hence, of facts, statements, etc. Wissen also means *to know how (to)*.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. Ich tue mein Bestes, die deutsche Sprache zu lernen. 2. Ich weiß, Sie tun es. 3. Das Holz brennt nicht. 4. Die ganze Straße brannte. 5. Der Schwefel brennt mit einer bläulichen Flamme. 6. Geben Sie mir ein Schwefelholz. 7. Jemand hat mich gerufen, aber ich weiß nicht, wer es ist. 8. Mit welcher Klasse werden Sie fahren? 9. Wir wissen noch nicht, mit welcher

* Except kommen (§ 222, b).

† Except bitten, liegen, sitzen.

Klasse wir fahren werden. 10. Wissen Sie auch, daß mein Bruder Sie kennt? 11. Er hat Sie auf (*at*) der Akademie kennen gelernt. 12. Was hat uns der Bauer gebracht? 13. Er hat uns eine fette Gans gebracht. 14. Jedermann weiß, was ich von der Sache dachte. 15. Wissen Sie, wo Herr Schmidt wohnt? 16. Ich weiß [*es*] nicht; ich würde es sagen, wenn ich es wüßte. 17. Er nannte mich seinen Freund. 18. Er hat Unrecht getan. 19. Woran denken Sie? 20. Ich dachte an meine Eltern. 21. Wir werden tun, was Sie wünschen. 22. Was hat man dir, du armes Kind, getan? 23. Ich wußte nicht, was unsere Freunde taten.

1. He has done his best. 2. Who has brought these books? 3. The coachman of the count has brought them. 4. The whole town was—burning. 5. Do you know Mr. Miller? 6. I do not know him, but I know where he lives. 7. They called him by his name. 8. You have done wrong. 9. She thinks more than she speaks. 10. You are mistaken, if you think that I know him. 11. What would she say, if she knew it? 12. Of whom (*an, acc.*) did you think? 13. We thought of you. 14. The boy ran and fell over a stone. 15. Do you not know me? 16. I know you very well. 17. The king sent an ambassador to (*nach*) Paris. 18. I thought you would keep your word, but I have been mistaken. 19. The whole village stood in flames. 20. The coaches of the first class are better than the coaches of the second class. 21. I thought of you, but I did not know where you were then. 22. You would do wrong if you thought so of me. 23. What were you doing when (*aß*) the servant brought you the ambassador's letter? 24. I did not know what you would think of (*von*) it. (§ 184).

The use of a Reader—outside of the Grammar—should hardly be deferred beyond this point. Indeed, in most cases, it might be begun much earlier.

LESSON XXVI.

The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

260. Besides the auxiliary verbs of tense (*haben*, *sein* and *werden*) there are in German six auxiliary verbs of mood. These are used with the infinitive, as in English :

dürfen, to be allowed (*dare*). *müssen*, to be compelled (*must*).
können, to be able (*can*). *sollen*, to have to, ought (*shall*).
mögen, to like (*may*). *wollen*, to be willing (*will*).

While the corresponding English verbs are defective, these verbs have in German a complete conjugation, except in the imperative, which occurs in *wollen* only.

261. Those which have the umlaut in the infinitive, drop it in the past indicative and perfect participle, but resume it in the past subjunctive. *Mögen* also changes *g* to *ch* in the past and perfect participle. In the present indicative singular, they are inflected like the past tense of the strong verbs. Other inflections are regular. Thus : —

INFIN.	PAST.	PERF. PART.	PAST SUBJ.
dürfen.	durfte.	gedurft.	dürfte.
können.	konnte.	gekonnt.	könnte.
mögen.	mochte.	gemocht.	möchte.
müssen.	mußte.	gemußt.	müßte.
sollen.	sollte.	gesollt.	sollte.
wollen.	wollte.	gewollt.	wollte.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich darf.	ich kann.	ich mag.	ich muß.	ich soll.	ich will.
du darfst.	du kannst.	du magst.	du mußt.	du sollst.	du willst.
er darf.	er kann.	er mag.	er muß.	er soll.	er will.
wir dürfen.	wir können.	wir mögen.	wir müssen.	wir sollen.	wir wollen.
ihr dürft.	ihr könnt.	ihr mögt.	ihr müßt.	ihr sollt.	ihr wollt.
sie dürfen.	sie können.	sie mögen.	sie müssen.	sie sollen.	sie wollen.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich dürfe. ich könne. ich möge. ich müsse. ich solle. ich wolle.

IMPERATIVE.

— — — — — wolle.

The compound parts are formed regularly ; as :

PERFECT.	ich habe	gedurft, gefonnt, gemocht, etc.
PLUPERFECT.	ich hatte	" " " etc.
FUTURE.	ich werde	dürfen, können, mögen, etc.
CONDITIONAL.	ich würde	" " " etc.
FUTURE PERFECT.	ich werde	gedurft haben, gefonnt haben, etc.
CONDITIONAL PERFECT.	ich würde	" " " " etc.

Use of the Auxiliaries of Mood.

262. While these verbs correspond, generally, to the English modal auxiliaries, *can, may, etc.*, they present many differences of use which will require special attention. These are due in part to their fuller conjugation.

263. As these verbs are defective in English, the German verb will frequently have to be expressed by a phrase, for instance: *ich hatte nicht gefonnt, I had not been able. Wir werden müssen, we shall be obliged. Er hat gedurft, he has been permitted. Er mußte lachen, he had to laugh.*

NOTE.— Special care must be taken to guard against ambiguity from the defect of the English forms. For example: *I could not go* may mean either: *I was not able (fonnte)*— or, *I should not be able (könnte) to go; he could not have done it, either he has not been able, or, he would not have been able — to do it.* Such forms will be clearly distinguished in German.

264. When a modal auxiliary, in the perfect or pluperfect, is construed with an infinitive, it changes its own perfect participle to the form of an infinitive. — As: *ich habe es gefonnt, but ich habe es tun können (not gefonnt), I have been able to do it. Er hat gewollt, he has been willing, he has wished; but er hat schreiben wollen (not gewollt), he has been willing to write.*

265. A few other verbs have the same construction. These are: heißen, helfen, hören, lassen, sehen, sometimes fühlen, lehren, lernen, machen. — As: ich habe sie tanzen sehen, *I have seen her dance.* Ich habe ihn sagen hören, *I have heard him say.* Er hat mich nicht gehen lassen, *he did not let me go.*

266. As the modals have no perfect tenses in English and no distinct forms of mood, our perfect infinitive (with *have*) often expresses the German past indicative of the auxiliary. As: er konnte das nicht sagen, *he could not have said that*; but: er könnte das nicht sagen, *he could not (possibly) say that*; er möchte zehn Jahre alt sein, *he may have been (was probably) ten years old.*

NOTE. — On the other hand *have* often expresses a genuine perfect infinitive; as: ich möchte dort gewesen sein, *I should like to have been there*; sie muß sehr jung gewesen sein, *she must have been very young.* Care should be taken to avoid ambiguity.

267. When such English phrases as *could have, should have, etc.*, express a past contingency, or unreal condition, the modal verb will be in the pluperfect subjunctive and the infinitive in the present. As: er hätte gehen können, *he could have gone (if he had wished)*; er hätte es tun sollen, *he should have done it* (§ 263).

268. The modal verbs are used, much more freely than in English, as independent verbs, or with omission of the infinitive; as: Er kann kein Englisch, *he knows no English*; man muß nicht müssen, *one must not be compelled.* Especially where a verb of motion is implied; as: er konnte nicht hinein, *he could not (go) in.*

NOTE. — As before remarked (§ 173), *shall, will, should, would* in their proper sense as *verbs* — or *modal auxiliaries* — are represented by *sollen* and *wollen* respectively — by *werden* only in mere future or conditional sense. In German, therefore, *sollen, wollen, werden* are always *distinctive*; and it is only in English that, for want of a specific auxiliary of tense, any doubt can arise as to the use or meaning of *shall, will; should, would.*

269. Lassen (§ 248) is used with an infinitive, nearly like the modal verbs, as a *causative* auxiliary, in the sense of *to make do*, or *to have (cause to be) done* — and in many idiomatic phrases. As, er ließ das Pferd springen, *he made the horse jump*; er ließ einen Brief schreiben, *he had a letter written* (the agent being here omitted).

NOTE. — These verbs have many idiomatic uses, which cannot here be enumerated. Some of their leading meanings are (see § 472): —

dürfen — *dare, may* (permission, liberty, probability).

können — *can, may* (possibility, ability).

mögen — *like to, may* (preference, concession, contingency).

müssen — *must, have to* (compulsion, necessity).

sollen — *shall, is to, is said to* (duty, command, hearsay).

wollen — *will, is about to, claims to* (intention, wish, assertion).

IDIOMS.

ich mag gern, *I like to.*

ich möchte gern, *I should like to.*

er soll kommen, *he is to come.*

jemanden kommen lassen, *to send for
some one.*

er will es getan haben, *he claims to
have done it.*

ich mag lieber, *I prefer to.*

ich möchte lieber, *I had rather.*

er soll reich sein, *he is said to be rich.*

jemandem sagen lassen, *to send word
to some one.*

ich habe sagen hören, *I have heard say
(or said).*

EXERCISE XXVI.—A.

(dürfen, können, mögen.)

1. Er darf den Brief lesen. 2. Darf ich den Brief lesen?
3. Der Knabe darf in der Schule nicht spielen. 4. Mein Vater hätte gestern sein Pferd verkaufen können, aber er hat es nicht gewollt. 5. Warum haben die Knaben nicht spielen dürfen?
6. Ich darf keinen Wein trinken. 7. Ich möchte es gern tun, aber ich darf nicht. 8. Er kann es vergessen haben. 9. Ich mochte ihn nicht darum bitten. 10. Wir haben nicht spazieren gehen dürfen. 11. Der junge Graf mag nicht spazieren reiten. 12. Möchten Sie gern spazieren fahren? 13. Ich möchte [es] gern, aber

ich kann es nicht; ich habe nicht Geld genug. 14. Es möchte ihm schwerlich gelingen. 15. Sie können [es] mir glauben. 16. Der Träge mag nicht arbeiten. 17. Ich hätte mit ihm sprechen mögen. 18. Ich möchte gern mit Ihnen sprechen.

1. May I water the flowers? 2. You may (it), my son. 3. Can your daughter read? 4. All my children can read. 5. The sick man would like to (möchte gern) speak with the physician. 6. The good old physician cannot know everything. 7. I did not like to ask him. 8. We shall not be able to remain. 9. He may be mistaken. 10. May he read these German newspapers? 11. He may read them, if he can read German. 12. You might be right. 13. The fish can swim. 14. The poor servant-girl would have written to you, if she could write. 15. The children have not been allowed to go into the garden. 16. The baker has not been able to bake to-day. 17. You can believe me, I should (würde) come if I were able. 18. I have not been able to come.

B.

(müssen, sollen, wollen, lassen.)

1. Ich habe den Schneider kommen lassen, er soll mir einen neuen Rock machen. 2. Mein Bruder wird morgen zu Hause bleiben müssen. 3. Können Sie heute mit uns gehen? 4. Ich kann heute gehen, aber morgen werde ich weder können noch wollen. 5. Er soll hier sein; man will ihn gesehen haben. 6. Wolle nur, was du kannst, und du wirst alles können, was du willst. 7. Wir müssen unsern Feinden (*dat.*) verzeihen. 8. Die Kinder müssen in die Schule gehen. 9. Der Bote sollte einen Brief auf die Post tragen. 10. Er wollte [es] uns nicht glauben. 11. Habt ihr diesen Abend nicht singen sollen? 12. Wir haben gesollt, aber wir haben nicht gemocht. 13. Man muß mit Lust arbeiten, wenn das Werk gelingen soll. 14. Wollen Sie so gut sein und mir einen Taler leihen? 15. Ich möchte es sehr gern tun, aber ich habe kein Geld bei mir. 16. Sie haben Recht, ich

hätte es tun sollen. 17. Wir haben ihn sagen hören, daß der berühmte Arzt morgen kommen werde. 18. Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen.

1. He has not been willing to do it. 2. He was wrong, he ought to have done it. 3. I have been compelled to read the book. 4. All men must die. 5. The boys are to learn German. 6. We have seen the children dance. 7. They have been obliged to work the whole day. 8. I am to stay at home. 9. She did not like to work. 10. Do you know why Henry was not allowed to visit us? 11. I shall send for the tailor; he is to make me a new coat. 12. I have been willing, but I have not been able. 13. Thou shalt not steal. 14. I have heard him speak. 15. We have been obliged to pay two dollars. 16. You should carry the letter to (auf) the post-office. 17. Why could you not come? 18. I was unwell and was obliged to stay at home.

LESSON XXVII.

The Passive Voice.

270. The passive voice is formed by the auxiliary verb *werden* in combination with the perfect participle of a transitive verb. In the compound tenses, the participle *geworden* loses the augment *ge-*, as: *ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised.*

(a) Each part of the passive is formed by the corresponding part of *werden* combined with the perfect participle, under the usual rules of position; viz.: that the participle will follow the simple forms, but precede the infinitive or participle of the auxiliary, as may be seen in the paradigm.

(b) But for the convenience of the learner, the passive may

be regarded as a *compound intransitive verb* (*to be – loved*). Its compound parts may then be formed with the usual auxiliaries from the following *principal parts*, as in any other intransitive verb:

INFINITIVE — gelobt werden ;

— whence future and conditional with auxiliary werden.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE — gelobt worden ;

— whence perfect and pluperfect with auxiliary sein.

PERFECT INFINITIVE — gelobt worden sein ;

— whence perfect future and conditional with auxiliary werden.

271. Conjugation of the Passive Verb.

gelobt werden, *to be praised.*

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

I am praised, etc.

I (may) be praised, etc.

ich werde gelobt.

ich werde gelobt.

du wirst gelobt.

du werdest gelobt.

er wird gelobt.

er werde gelobt.

wir werden gelobt.

wir werden gelobt.

ihr werdet gelobt.

ihr werdet gelobt.

sie werden gelobt.

sie werden gelobt.

PAST.

ich wurde (ward) gelobt.

ich würde gelobt.

du wurdest (wardst) gelobt.

du würdest gelobt.

er wurde (ward) gelobt.

er würde gelobt.

wir wurden gelobt, etc. (§ 190).

etc.

PERFECT.

ich bin gelobt worden.

ich sei gelobt worden.

du bist gelobt worden.

du seiest gelobt worden.

er ist gelobt worden.

er sei gelobt worden.

etc.

etc.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PLUPERFECT.

ich war gelobt worden.
 du warst gelobt worden.
 er war gelobt worden.
 etc.

ich wäre gelobt worden.
 du wärest gelobt worden.
 er wäre gelobt worden.
 etc.

FUTURE.

ich werde gelobt werden.
 du wirst gelobt werden.
 er wird gelobt werden.
 etc.

ich werde gelobt werden.
 du werdest gelobt werden.
 er werde gelobt werden.
 etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gelobt worden sein.
 du wirst gelobt worden sein.
 etc.

ich werde gelobt worden sein.
 du werdest gelobt worden sein.
 etc.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gelobt werden.
 du würdest gelobt werden.
 er würde gelobt werden.
 etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde gelobt worden sein.
 du würdest gelobt worden sein.
 er würde gelobt worden sein.
 etc.

IMPERATIVE.

werde gelobt.

werdet gelobt.

werden Sie gelobt.

Inflect, as heretofore, for *inversion* and *transposition* :

heute bin ich gelobt worden.
 etc.

morgen werde ich gelobt werden.
 etc.

daß ich gelobt werden würde.
 etc.

wenn ich gelobt worden wäre.
 etc.

And note the infinitive forms : gelobt zu werden ; gelobt worden zu sein. (§ 176, 2.)

Use of the Passive.

272. German has no special forms for the English *the house is building*—*is being built*, etc. These are translated by the simple, *das Haus wird gebaut* (or as § 274, 1).

273. It must be remembered that *werden* is combined with the perfect participle only to express the true passive—that is the passive *action*. In English the perfect participle with *be* often expresses only a state or result of the action. In this case the German uses *sein* not *werden*. Thus: *die Türe wurde um acht Uhr geschlossen*, *the door was closed at 8 o'clock* (the closing took place at that hour); *die Türe war um acht Uhr geschlossen*—*it was (found) closed*—(had been closed earlier). This distinction requires careful attention.

NOTE 1.—Practically the test may be made by turning the verb into the active form: *if the tense remains the same, use werden*.

NOTE 2.—It will be seen that here again, for want of a specific passive auxiliary, there is a possible ambiguity in English which cannot occur in German. (See § 268, note.) Sometimes, however, apparent ambiguity may occur by the idiomatic omission of *worden*, as: *als er zu Grabe getragen (worden) war*, *had been carried*, etc.

274. The passive is less used in German than in English. Unless the agent (*von* with the dative) is definitely expressed, other idioms are frequently employed:

1. Most frequently *man* (§ 244) with the active verb, as: *man stellte den Stuhl ans Ufer*, *the chair was placed*, etc.; *er bat, man möchte ihn gehen lassen*, *he begged that he might be allowed to go*.

2. The reflexive verb, as: *Der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden*, *has been found*. Especially, the reflexive use of *lassen* with active infinitive (§ 269). As: *Das läßt sich erklären*, *that can be explained*.

3. An impersonal idiom, as: *es bedarf keiner Hülfe*, *no help is needed*.

275. In German only a direct (accusative) object can become the subject of a passive verb. Other verbs are, however, sometimes made passive with an impersonal subject (*es* or *was*), retaining their indirect object (if any); as, *es* ist mir geraten worden, *I have been advised* (= man hat mir geraten); *es* wurde darüber beratschlagt, *consultation was held about it*. Or, without *es*, unless introductory: darüber wurde beratschlagt; as § 453, note.

276. Sometimes, to preserve the emphasis of position, the German active will be rendered by the English passive; as, den König ergöhte dieses Schauspiel, *the king was delighted with this spectacle*.

REMARK.—It thus appears that the passive in English is widely extended, beyond its use in German. Careful attention should be given to the various equivalents in translating.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Der Schüler ist von dem Lehrer gelobt worden. 2. Das Kind wird von seinen Eltern geliebt. 3. Die Knaben, welche fleißig sind, werden gelobt werden. 4. Ein guter Arbeiter wird immer gut bezahlt. 5. Würde jener alte Feldherr nicht von dem König gelobt worden sein? 6. Was würden Sie sagen, wenn Sie gefragt würden? 7. Man sagt, daß die Stadt von dem Feinde geplündert worden sei. 8. Wird das Werk diesen Sommer gedruckt werden? 9. Es würde schon gedruckt worden sein, wenn der Verfasser nicht krank gewesen wäre. 10. Die verlorene Börse ist von einem Schulknaben gefunden worden. 11. Das Mädchen wurde von seiner Mutter getadelt. 12. Das arme Häuschen wurde von dem Jäger geschossen. 13. Ein junges Bäumlein läßt sich leicht biegen, ein alter Baum wird nicht so leicht gebogen. 14. Diese Frage beantwortet sich leicht. 15. Es wird auf Sie gewartet. 16. Man wartet auf Sie. 17. Was ist Ihnen versprochen worden? 18. Was hat man Ihnen versprochen? 19. Das Haus ist mit frischen Blumen geziert. 20. Die Stadt-

mauer war schon zerstört. 21. Ein Brief wurde geschrieben. 22. Das Buch wird gedruckt. 23. Es ist mir ein schönes Federmesser gegeben worden. 24. Den Kaiser rührte dieses Schauspiel so, daß er vor (*for*) Freude weinte.

1. The author of this book will be rewarded by (von) the king. 2. I should not be able to answer if I were asked. 3. The town was ransacked by the enemy. 4. The knives have been ground. 5. A messenger has been sent to the queen. 6. The house will be bought by my uncle. 7. I have not been asked. 8. The rooms of the prince are not shown to strangers. 9. The sheep are being shorn by the shepherds. 10. The girl has been bitten by a dog. 11. He was feared and respected by all. 12. The gates of the town will be opened. 13. The apples fall when the tree is shaken. 14. This book has been printed for the author. 15. A hare is roasting (being roasted). 16. He would not have been named. 17. It cannot (*läßt*) be believed. 18. The books which were lost have been found. 19. The whole town was adorned with green boughs. 20. A physician must be sent for (*man*). 21. That is easily understood (*reflex.*). 22. I have been advised (say: to me [it] has been advised — and: one has, etc.) to go to Carlsbad. 23. The door was opened. 24. We allowed (*lassen*) ourselves *to be* persuaded.

LESSON XXVIII.

Compound Verbs. — Inseparable.

277. In verbs compounded with the unaccented inseparable prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, (§ 216), the prefix is always written in one word with the verb. The preposition *zu* stands as a separate word before the infinitive. — Examples: *betrügen*, *betrog*, *betrogen*; *erschrecken*, *erschraf*, *erschrocken*; *empfehlen*, *empfohl*, *empfohlen*; *entspringen*,

entsprang, entsprungen; gefallen, gefiel, gefallen; infin. with zu: zu betrügen, zu erschrecken, etc.

278. Except for the omission of *ge-* in the perfect participle, these compounds are conjugated like their primitive verbs. Sometimes the compound is used when the primitive is obsolete — as in English *be-gin*, etc. (§ 232.)

NOTE.—Observe that unless there is vowel change, the perfect participle of these verbs, if strong, will be just like the infinitive; as, *gefallen*, *erhalten*, *vergeben*, etc. Also, that verbs in *ge-*, as *gebieten*, *gefallen*, etc., will have the same p. p. as their primitives, *bieten*, *fallen*, viz.: *geboten*, *gefallen*. Hence such forms may have two, or even three, senses, which must be carefully distinguished.

279. The inseparable prefixes form a large number of compound verbs — as well as other derivatives — as will be more fully shown in Part II. *They never take the accent.*

Spurious Prepositions.

280. Lists of the most important prepositions and of the cases they govern have been given §§ 164, 178, 179. A number of other words, originally adverbs, nouns, adjectives or participles — sometimes compounds or phrases — are used as prepositions.

These are sometimes called *spurious* prepositions. A list of the most important of these is here given:—

(a) SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

anstatt or statt, <i>instead of</i> .	längs, <i>along</i> (sometimes governs a dative).
außerhalb, <i>without, outside of</i> .	laut, <i>conformably to</i> (also dat.).
innerhalb, <i>within, inside of</i> .	ob (rarely), <i>on account of</i> (see b).
oberhalb, <i>above</i> ,	troß, <i>in spite of</i> (sometimes governs a dative).
unterhalb, <i>below</i> ; compounds of:	um — willen, <i>for the sake of</i> (the case being inserted between).
halben or halber, <i>on account of</i> (always follows case).	ungeachtet, <i>notwithstanding</i> (or with a preceding dative).
diesseit or diesseits, <i>on this side of</i> .	
jenseit or jenseits, <i>on the other side of</i> .	
kräft, <i>by virtue of</i> .	

unweit, unfern, *not far from*.
 vermittelt (mittelst, mittelst), *by means of*.

bermöße, *by dint of*.

während, *during* (very rarely governs a dative).

wegen, *on account of* (precedes or follows the case).

zufolge, *according to* (sometimes follows the noun and takes a dative).

NOTE. — For the special forms meinethalben, meinethwegen, um meinethwillen, etc., see § 452, *b*.

(b) SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

auffer, *outside of, besides*.

binnen, *within* (used only with regard to time) — rarely genitive.

entgegen, *against, towards* (usually follows the case).

gegenüber, *opposite to* (stands usually after the case).

gemäß, *according to* (usually follows the case).

gleich, *like*.

nächst, *next to*.

nebst, *along with*.

ob, *over* (local) — see *a*.

samt, *together with*.

seit, *since*.

zufolge, *according to* (after the case).

zuwider, *contrary to* (after the case).

(c) SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

bis, *till, as far as*.

entlang, *along* (usually follows the case).

sonder, *without*.

NOTE. — Bis is frequently used in combination with another preposition. Examples: Bis an das Thor, *as far as the gate*. Bis zum Ende, *down to, as far as the end*. Bis auf diesen Tag, *up to this day*.

um — zu WITH INFINITIVE.

281. The use of zu with the infinitive has been already mentioned (§ 176).

To express purpose, *in order to*, the combination um zu — um at the head of the clause, zu in its usual position with the infinitive — is generally used; as, ich tue mein Bestes, um die deutsche Sprache zu lernen, *I do my best to learn the German language*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Es ist verboten, in diesem Flusse zu baden. 2. Ich hoffe, die Rechnung binnen sechs Monaten bezahlen zu können. 3. Ein Haus, der neuen Kirche gegenüber gelegen, ist zu verkaufen.

4. Es ist nebst dem Garten schon verkauft worden. 5. Ich habe einige Freunde in Bonn besucht. 6. Der Regen hat die Blumen erfrischt. 7. Haben Sie meinen Brief erhalten? 8. Er hat uns seit langer Zeit nicht benachrichtigt. 9. Die Stadt war belagert. 10. Man muß nicht dem Verbote zuwider handeln. 11. Wer hat das Pulver erfunden? 12. Gehen Sie den Fluß entlang, und binnen einer Stunde werde ich nebst meinem Bruder Sie auf dem Plage, der Kirche gegenüber, treffen und bis an das Tor begleiten. 13. Würden Sie uns benachrichtigt haben? 14. Wir wollen es um des Friedens willen tun. 15. Er wohnt in einem neuen Hause jenseits des Flusses, oberhalb der Brücke. 16. Die Schule steht unweit der Kirche. 17. Wir werden des Regens ungeachtet spazieren gehen. 18. Längs der Straße hat man Bäume gepflanzt. 19. Man ehrt ihn seines Alters wegen. 20. Er ist des kranken Kindes halber zu Hause geblieben. 21. Wir erreichten das Ufer mittelst eines Bootes. 22. Es ist nicht leicht zu sagen, was das Beste ist. 23. Ich habe jenes Haus verkauft, um ein besseres zu kaufen. 24. Ich tat es, nur um Ihnen zu gefallen.

1. The boy has watered the flowers. 2. He has promised to visit us in Berlin. 3. We have received his letter. 4. A German monk (has) invented (the) gun-powder. 5. The snow has covered the mountains and the valleys. 6. The gardener has forgotten to water the flowers. 7. He has sold his house along with the garden. 8. You will receive it within an hour. 9. Will you accompany me as far as the old bridge? 10. He is despised by (von) everybody. 11. I have forgotten my watch; what am I to (soll) do? 12. The shepherd seated himself beside (*acc.*) the shepherdess. 13. Between him and my brother [there] is no friendship. 14. The child has (*is*) come without its mother. 15. He has not understood what you say. 16. After we had reached the shore by means of a boat, we went to an inn in order to dry our clothes. 17. He has forgotten to inform you. 18. We shall do nothing contrary to this prohibition. 19. I shall come instead of my brother.

20. The ladies have gone for a walk on the other side of the river; you will find them below the bridge. 21. One part of the town lies on this side, the other on the other side of the river. 22. The garden lies outside the gate. 23. In spite of my prohibition you (du) have gone upon the ice. 24. For your mother's sake you should not have done that (§ 267).

LESSON XXIX.

Compound Verbs. — Separable.

282. Prepositions and adverbs, when forming the first part of a compound verb, are separable.

283. The words most usually occurring in this connection are: *ab, off; an, on; auf, up; aus, out; bei, by; da or dar, there; ein (instead of in) in; empor, up; fort, away; entgegen, against; her, hither; hin, thither; mit, with; nach, after; nieder, down; ob, over; vor, before; weg, away; wieder, again, back; zu, to; zurück, back; zusammen, together.*

284. (a) In principal clauses, in the simple tenses of the verb, the prefix is separated from the verb and stands at the end of the clause. (See Rem. p. 195.)

(b) But the prefix is written in one word before the infinitive and participles — hence, also, in all the compound tenses.

(c) The augment *ge-* of the perfect participle, and *zu* when used with the infinitive, are written in one word between the prefix and the verb.

Thus: *aufstehen, to rise; ich stehe auf, I rise; ich stand auf, I rose; ich bin aufgestanden, I have risen; ich wünsche aufzustehen, I wish to rise.* Or, with intervening words: *ich stand heute morgen sehr früh auf, I rose very early this morning. Stehen Sie nicht zu spät auf, do not rise too late.*

285. But whenever the verb is removed to the end of the sentence, that is, in dependent clauses (§ 177, 4), the prefix is written in one word before the verb. For instance: *Als ich heute morgen aufstand, when I rose this morning.* *Wenn er zu spät aufstünde, if he were to rise too late.*

NOTE. — A separable prefix always has the principal accent. (§ 54.) This stress is retained also when the prefix stands apart from the verb.

286. CONJUGATION OF A SEPARABLE VERB.

Aufangen, to begin.

Principal Parts.

anfangen.	fang an.	angefangen.
PRES. PART.		PERF. INFIN.
anfangend.		angefangen haben.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.

PAST.

ich fange an, <i>I begin.</i>	ich fing an, <i>I began.</i>
du fängst an, <i>thou beginnest.</i>	du fingst an, <i>thou begannest.</i>
er fängt an, <i>he begins.</i>	er fing an, <i>he began.</i>
wir fangen an, <i>we begin, etc.</i>	wir fingen an, <i>we began, etc.</i>

PERFECT.

ich habe angefangen.

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte angefangen.

FUTURE.

ich werde anfangen.

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde angefangen haben.

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde anfangen.

CONDITIONAL PERF.

ich würde angefangen haben.

IMPERATIVE.

fange an.

INFIN. with zu.

anzufangen, angefangen zu haben.

NOTE. — Observe that the simple infinitive and the present participle (with the transposed verb, § 285) are the only parts in which the prefix is not *actually separated* — either by position or by insertion of *ge* or *zu*.

Inflect for *inversion* :

heute fange ich an.	morgen werde ich anfangen.
etc.	etc.

For *transposition* :

daß ich heute anfangc.
etc.

wenn ich schon angefangen habe.
etc.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Die Sonne geht im Osten auf und geht im Westen unter. 2. Als die Sonne aufging, reisten wir ab. 3. Wir haben eine große Geldsumme ausgegeben. 4. Er sieht aus, als ob er krank wäre. 5. Die Kinder sahen nach diesem langen Spaziergange müde aus. 6. Um welche Zeit fängt die Schule an? 7. Sie wird um zwei Uhr anfangen. 8. Ziehe deinen Rock aus, Karlchen. 9. Heinrich hat seinen neuen Rock angezogen. 10. Ziehen Sie sich schnell an. 11. Ist Ihr Freund angekommen? 12. Er wird morgen früh ankommen. 13. Um welche Zeit kommt der Zug von Boston an? 14. Er kommt um sechs Uhr an. 15. Mit welchem Zuge ist Ihr Bruder abgereist? 16. Um welche Zeit fährt der Schnellzug ab? 17. Er wird um zwei Uhr abfahren. 18. Der arme Reisende verirrte sich und kam im Schnee um. 19. Ich stand heute morgen sehr früh auf, um mit dem Schnellzuge abzufahren. 20. Kommen Sie nicht zu spät an; wir haben viele Briefe abzuschreiben.

1. At what time does the sun rise? 2. The sun rises at six o'clock. 3. The sun was setting. 4. It grows dark when the sun sets. 5. I should have put on my new coat, if the weather had been fine. 6. The express leaves at three o'clock. 7. The scholars have copied their exercises. 8. This flower looks (aussehen) very beautiful. 9. The king has accepted the work which the celebrated writer had offered him. 10. We dressed ourselves very quickly; we wished to start by (mit) the express. 11. I copy all my letters. 12. Put on your shoes. 13. Take off your coat. 14. The boys lost their way in the wood; they began to cry. 15. When (wann) will you begin to copy your letters? 16. I began yesterday and copied several. 17. The

sun will soon rise; let us rise and dress. 18. She *has* gone out in order to begin her work. 19. You have forgotten what you had promised me (*dat*). 20. The prince spent (*ausgeben*) a large sum [of] money.

LESSON XXX.

Variable Prefixes — Separable or Inseparable.

287. The prepositions *durch*, *hinter*, *über*, *unter*, *um* are separable or inseparable, but with a difference of meaning. When separable the compound has a primitive or literal sense; when inseparable, a derived or figurative sense. The usual rules of accent and of conjugation are observed in either case. As:—

SEPARABLE.

durch'ziehen, to pull through.
hin'tergehen, to go behind.
ü'berstehen, to project.
ü'bersetzen, to put over, ferry over.
um'schreiben, to write over again.
um'gehen, to go round.
um'terhalten, to hold under.

INSEPARABLE.

*durch*zie'hen, to roam through.
*hinter*ge'hen, to deceive.
*über*ste'hen, to overcome.
*über*setz'en, to translate.
*um*schrei'ben, to express by circumlocution.
*um*ge'hen, to evade.
*unter*hal'ten, to entertain.

NOTE.—Frequently the separable sense will be expressed by a simple preposition with its object. As: *der Mann setzte mich über den Fluß*, the man set me over the river; *wir gingen hinter das Haus*, we went behind the house.

288. (a) The prefix *wieder* or *wider* is sometimes added to this list. But properly, by the present orthography, *wieder* is separable, in sense of *again*, *back*; *wider*, inseparable, in sense of *against*. As: *wie*'derfahren, to return, *wider*ste'hen, to withstand.

NOTE. — Except *wiederho'len*, *to repeat*, and sometimes *wiederhal'len*, *to resound*.

(b) The prefix *miß* is properly inseparable, but sometimes takes the augment *ge-* in the past participle. The practice as to the position of the augment varies. In some verbs it is placed before the prefix, in others between the prefix and the verb; as, *gemiß'braucht*, *abused*; *gemiß'billigt*, *disapproved*; *gemiß'handelt*, *ill-used*; *miß'geachtet*, *despised*; *miß'geartet*, *degenerated*; *mißlung'en*, *miscarried*. Details must be found in the dictionary.

(c) *Voll* (*full*) forms a few inseparable verbs; as, *voll=bring'en*, *to accomplish*, p. p. *vollbracht'*; and some occasional separables; as, *voll'istopfen*, *to stuff full*, p. p. *voll'gestopft*.

Verbs with Compound Prefixes.

289. Many verbs have a compound prefix. Such are:—

1. Those whose prefix is a compound adverb, especially such as are formed with *da* (*dar*), *there*; *her*, *hither*; *hin*, *hence*. All these are separable; as:—

<i>bevor'stehen</i> , <i>to impend</i> .	p. p. <i>bevorgestanden</i> .
<i>voran'gehen</i> , <i>to precede</i> .	“ <i>vorangegangen</i> .
<i>voraus'setzen</i> , <i>to suppose</i> .	“ <i>vorausgesetzt</i> .
<i>davon'laufen</i> , <i>to run off</i> .	“ <i>davongelaufen</i> .
<i>herbei'rufen</i> , <i>to summon</i> .	“ <i>herbeigerufen</i> .
<i>hinaus'tragen</i> , <i>to carry out</i> .	“ <i>hinausgetragen</i> .
<i>umher'gehen</i> , <i>to go about</i> .	“ <i>umhergegangen</i> .

NOTE. — For accents of prefixes see § 53. Note also distinction between forms like *hinzu'=setzen*, *to add*, and *hin'=zu=setzen* (*hinsetzen*, *infin.* with *zu*).

Such prefixes are often written separately; as, *davon laufen*, etc.

2. In a few verbs the prefix consists of two parts, the first separable, the second inseparable. These are not uniform. Some separate the first element, admitting *zu* but yet excluding *ge-*. Others never use the separated forms. As, *anerkennen*, *to acknowledge*; *ich erkenne an*; *anzuerkennen*; p. p. *anerkannt*;

vorbehalten, *to reserve*; ich behalte vor; vorzubehalten; but p. p. vorbehalten. But auferstehen, *to arise*; p. p. auferstanden; auswählen, *to select*, p. p. auswählt — the separated forms never being used. (See also Less. XXXIX).

REMARK. — Practically it is important to remember only the inseparable and variable prefixes (§§ 277, 287). Then only those cases will need special attention in which the latter are not determined by form or position; viz., in the present participle, the infinitive without zu, or the *transposed verb*. § 286, note.

EXERCISE XXX.

1. Wer hat dieses Buch aus dem Deutschen ins Englische übersetzt? 2. Er übersetzte Schillers Wilhelm Tell. 3. Setzen Sie uns schnell über, guter Mann. 4. Übersetzen Sie diese Seite. 5. Er hielt das Glas unter. 6. Sie unterhielt die Gesellschaft. 7. Sie gingen zum Feinde über. 8. Wir übergingen die Sache. 9. Er umging das Gesetz. 10. Man hat mich hintergangen. 11. Die Feinde durchzogen das ganze Land. 12. Der Verfasser hat das Buch vom Anfang bis zum Ende umgeschrieben. 13. Was sich mit einem (*one*) Worte nicht sagen läßt, muß man umschreiben. 14. Wir traten während des Regens unter ein überstehendes Dach. 15. Gott (*dat.*) sei Dank, wir haben diese Versuchung überstanden. 16. Der Plan ist mißlungen. 17. Der Herr ist auferstanden. 18. Ich erkenne meine Schuld an.

1. A man set us across in a little boat. 2. I have translated a whole page. 3. The roof projects. 4. He has overcome this temptation. 5. If you will have [some] water, hold your glass under. 6. He was wrong to evade the law. 7. This young man is the degenerate son of a good father. 8. We shall not abuse your kindness. 9. Consider the matter. 10. The physician entertained the patient with old stories. 11. We went a mile around. 12. The prince has abused his power. 13. The plan has been disapproved. 14. He has deceived you. 15. The servant has (*is*) run off. 16. The maid-servant carried the dishes out. 17. The ambassador has accomplished his work. 18. It is the duty of everyone to acknowledge the laws.

LESSON XXXI.

Impersonal Verbs.

290. (a) Verbs which express phenomena of nature have always the impersonal subject *es, it*. As :

<i>es regnet, it rains.</i>	<i>es friert, it freezes.</i>
<i>es schneit, it snows.</i>	<i>es blizt, it lightens.</i>
<i>es hagelt, it hails.</i>	<i>es donnert, it thunders, etc.</i>

(b) Some other verbs are construed impersonally, to express action without definite agent. As :

<i>es klopf, there is a knock.</i>	<i>es gibt (it gives), there is.</i>
<i>es läutet, there is a ring.</i>	<i>wie geht es, how goes it?</i>

And in the passive, § 275 ; or reflexive, § 274, 3.

291. (a) Some verbs expressing states of body or mind are used as impersonal, with the person as object. As :

<i>es hungert mich, I am hungry.</i>	<i>es friert mich, I am cold.</i>
<i>es durstet, or</i>	<i>es schwindest mir, I am giddy.</i>
<i>es dürstet mich, } I am thirsty.</i>	<i>es bangt mir, I feel afraid, etc.</i>

NOTE. — When the personal object precedes the verb, the impersonal subject — which would then follow the verb (§ 177, 3) — is usually omitted ; as, *mich hungert ; mir träumt, I dream, etc.*

(b) Often the impersonal form is used when the logical subject follows. As : *es freut mich, Sie zu sehen, or daß Sie kommen, I am glad, etc ; es scheint — es dünkt mich (or mir) —, daß er nicht kommen wird, it seems — methinks — that etc. (or mich, mir dünkt, etc.).*

292. The impersonal form is much more usual in German than in English. Some impersonal idioms are : —

<i>es tut mir leid, I am sorry.</i>	<i>es ist mir wohl, I feel well.</i>
<i>es ist mir leid, I am sorry.</i>	<i>es geht mir gut, I am doing well.</i>
<i>es versteht sich, that is of course.</i>	<i>es fehlt mir etwas, something ails me.</i>
<i>es fragt sich, it is a question.</i>	<i>es gelingt mir, I succeed, etc.</i>

293. Weather and time are expressed with the impersonal *sein* : *es ist kalt, it is cold ; es ist zehn Uhr, it is ten o'clock.*

294. The English phrases *there is, there are*, are expressed by the impersonal *eß* with *sein* or with *geben, to give*. With *sein* the verb agrees, as in English, with the following predicate noun. With *geben*, this noun is object, and the verb remains always singular. As: *eß war ein Mann; eß waren Männer*. But, *eß gab einen Mann; eß gab Männer* — *there was a man; there were men* — more usually with plural nouns only.

In sense *sein* is more definite; *geben* more vague and indefinite; as, *eß war einmal ein König, there was once a king*. In der Mythologie der Griechen gibt *eß viele Götter, there are many gods in the mythology of the Greeks*.

NOTE. — With *sein*, inverted, *eß* is omitted, as § 291; but never with *geben*. See § 453.

295. Almost all impersonal verbs form their perfect tenses with the auxiliary *haben*. But see § 297.4.

USE OF THE AUXILIARIES *haben* AND *sein*.

296. *Haben* is used with all transitive verbs — with all reflexive verbs — with the modal verbs — with most impersonals — and with most intransitives which express simple action, with or without indirect object.

NOTE. — By transitive verbs are meant strictly those which take an accusative object — not always the same in German as, apparently, in English.

297. *Sein* is used with the following intransitives: —

1. Verbs which express a change of condition; as, *sterben, to die; wachsen, to grow; erkranken, to fall ill; genesen, to recover; schmelzen, to melt*, etc.

2. Verbs which denote motion to or from a place, of which the most usual are (see also § 298): —

fahren, to go in a carriage.

fließen, to flow.

fallen, to fall.

gehen, to go.

fliegen, to fly.

kommen, to come.

fliehen, to flee.

landen, to land.

laufen, *to run.*
 reisen, *to travel.*
 reiten, *to ride.*
 segeln, *to sail.*

sinken, *to sink.*
 springen, *to spring.*
 steigen, *to mount.*
 ziehen, *to move.*

3. A few other verbs, some of which may have a dative object:—

bleiben, *to remain.*
 begegnen, *to meet (dat.).*
 folgen, *to follow (dat.).*

weichen, *to yield (dat.).*
 sein, *to be.*
 werden, *to become.*

4. The following impersonal verbs:—

geschehen, *to happen.*
 gelingen, glücken, geraten, *to succeed.*
 mißlingen, mißglücken, mißraten, *to succeed ill.*

NOTE.—Compound verbs do not always take the same auxiliary as their primitives. As, stehen, *to stand (haben)*, entstehen, *to arise (sein)*; kommen, *to come (sein)*, bekommen, *to obtain (haben)*. The sense must be considered in every case.

298. Some intransitive verbs of motion are conjugated with sein when the starting-point, direction, or extent of motion is mentioned. But when only the action or motion is stated, without reference to place, these same verbs are conjugated with haben. — Examples: Mein Bruder ist nach Leipzig gereist, *my brother is gone to Leipzig.* Er hat viel gereist, *he has been a great traveller.* Sie sind nach dem nächsten Dorfe geritten, *they are gone on horseback to the nearest village.* Sie haben den ganzen Tag geritten, *they have been riding the whole day.*

NOTE.—Some of these verbs are, besides the most of those in § 297, 2: eilen, klettern, kriechen, quellen, rinnen, schiffen, schwimmen, wandern, etc.

299. A few verbs are used with either auxiliary, but in a different sense; and a few are doubtful. The use of sein as auxiliary is generally indicated in the dictionary.

NOTE.—It has already been remarked that the use of *be* in English was formerly more common than at present—approaching more nearly to the German use of sein. In modern English the auxiliary sein is usually translated *have*.

For the frequent omission of haben or sein at the end of a transposed clause, see § 350, 4.

EXERCISE XXXI.—A.

1. Es freut mich, Sie wieder zu sehen. 2. Wie geht es Ihnen, alter Freund? 3. Regnet es? Nein, es schneit. 4. Hat es gestern gedonnert? 5. Nein, aber es hat gehagelt und geregnet. 6. Es versteht sich, dasz wir nicht ausgehen, sondern zu Hause bleiben, wenn es regnet. 7. Was fehlt Ihnen? 8. Es fehlt mir nichts, ich befinde mich ganz wohl. 9. Was ärgert Sie? 10. Es ärgert mich, von diesem Menschen betrogen worden zu sein. 11. Es gab bessere Zeiten. 12. Es gibt kein Brot im Hause. 13. Es gibt Brot für alle. 14. Es ist ein Mann an der Türe, der mit Ihnen zu sprechen wünscht. 15. Es jammerte den Feldherrn, in die geplünderte Stadt einzuziehen. 16. Es träumte mir, dasz ich auf einem hohen Berge stände; es schwindelte mir, und mir bangte herunterzufallen.

1. Is it cold? No, it is hot. 2. Has it been freezing this morning? 3. Yes, it has been freezing. 4. It was snowing; the children rejoiced to see the snow. 5. Will he succeed? Yes, he will succeed. 6. We were thirsty and hungry when we arrived at the end of our journey. 7. What is the matter with you? I feel giddy. 8. We were delighted to find you at home. 9. It has been raining the whole day. 10. Is (gibt) there anything new to-day? 11. No, there is no news (nothing new). 12. There were giants in ancient times. 13. We are sorry that you have not succeeded. 14. Has it been warm to-day? 15. No, it has been hot. 16. He denied that he had felt afraid.

B.

1. Der Soldat ist an seinen Wunden gestorben. 2. Die Mädchen sind in den Garten gegangen. 3. Der Schiffer ist in den Fluss gefallen. 4. Wir waren alle erschrocken. 5. Der Feind ist geflohen. 6. Diese Äpfel sind von dem Baume gefallen. 7. Das Schiff ist gesunken. 8. Was geschehen ist, ist geschehen. 9. Der alte Feldherr ist gestern angekommen. 10. Mein Vetter ist

während des Sommers auf das Land gezogen. 11. Die Fremden sind auf den Berg gestiegen. 12. Der Diener ist seinem Herrn gefolgt. 13. Wir sind zu Hause geblieben. 14. Meine Schwestern sind spazieren gefahren. 15. Die Schiffer sind mit den Reisenden nach Danzig gesegelt. 16. Der Knabe ist von der Bank gefallen.

1. The master has ridden with his servant to (the) town. 2. They are gone to (the) church. 3. The boatmen have landed in the harbour. 4. The ladies have taken a drive. 5. They have fled to Dresden. 6. My friend has moved to (in) the next street. 7. The bird has flown upon a tree. 8. I *have* met your friend yesterday. 9. The old physician would *have* remained at home, if the patient had not sent for (nach) him. 10. We should have come, if we had been invited. 11. The leaves have fallen from the trees. 12. The teacher has taken a walk with his pupil. 13. I was frightened. 14. This gentleman has been a great traveller (*has travelled much*). 15. The boy is tired, he has been running and jumping the whole day. 16. He has recovered from a severe illness.

LESSON XXXII.

Numerals.

300.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1	einſ (ein, eine, ein), <i>one</i> .	10	zehn, <i>ten</i> .
2	zwei, <i>two</i> .	11	elf, <i>eleven</i> .
3	drei, <i>three</i> .	12	zwölf, <i>twelve</i> .
4	bier, <i>four</i> .	13	dreizehn, <i>thirteen</i> .
5	fünf, <i>five</i> .	14	vierzehn, <i>fourteen</i> .
6	ſechs, <i>six</i> .	15	fünfzehn, <i>fifteen</i> .
7	ſieben, <i>seven</i> .	16	ſechzehn, <i>sixteen</i> .
8	acht, <i>eight</i> .	17	ſiebzehn, <i>seventeen</i> .
9	neun, <i>nine</i> .	18	achtzehn, <i>eighteen</i> .

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

19	neunzehn, <i>nineteen.</i>	90	neunzig, <i>ninety.</i>
20	zwanzig, <i>twenty.</i>	100	hundert, <i>a hundred.</i>
21	ein und zwanzig, <i>twenty-one.</i>	101	hundert (und) eins.
22	zwei und zwanzig, <i>twenty-two.</i>	102	hundert (und) zwei.
23	drei und zwanzig, <i>twenty-three, etc.</i>	120	hundert (und) zwanzig.
30	dreißig, <i>thirty.</i>	125	hundert fünf und zwanzig.
31	ein und dreißig, <i>thirty-one.</i>	200	zwei hundert.
32	zwei und dreißig, <i>thirty-two.</i>	300	drei hundert.
40	vierzig, <i>forty.</i>	1000	tausend.
50	fünfzig, <i>fifty.</i>	2000	zwei tausend.
60	sechzig, <i>sixty.</i>	100,000	hundert tausend.
70	siebzig, <i>seventy.</i>	1,000,000	eine Million'.
80	achtzig, <i>eighty.</i>	2,000,000	zwei Millionen.

NOTE. — The old form *eilf* for *elf* is still occasionally met with. Often, the forms *funfzehn*, *funfzig*; *sechszehn*, *sechszig*; *siebenzehn*, *siebenzig*. Rarely — poetic — the old forms *zween*, *zwo*, *two*.

301. *Ein* is regularly inflected — *ein*, *eine*, *ein* — when before a noun; when without a noun, *einer*, *eine*, *eines*; or with the article, *der Eine*, *die Eine*, *das Eine*, etc. The neuter form *eins* (for *eines*) is used abstractly in counting. In compound numbers, like *ein und zwanzig*, *ein* is not inflected; nor, frequently, in the phrase *ein und derselbe*. (In other phrases (§ 245, note) *ein* is the indef. art.).

NOTE. — *Ein*, *one*, is pronounced with more stress than *ein*, *an*, *a*; and, for distinction, is often printed with spaced letters; as, *ein Wort*, *a word*; *ein Wort*, *one word*; or sometimes with capital initial.

302. *Zwei*, *drei* have a genitive *zweier*, *dreier*, and a dative *zweien*, *dreien*, which may be used when the case is not otherwise indicated; as, *das Urteil zweier Freunde*, *the judgment of two friends*; *ich habe es nur zweien gesagt*, *I have told it only to two*.

NOTE. — By ellipsis, the names of the numerals are construed as feminines, and of the weak declension; as, *diese (Zahl) Acht*, *diese Einsen*; *this (figure) 8*, *these 1's*.

303. Other simple numerals sometimes take *-en* in the dative plural, when used without a noun — more rarely a plural form *-e*; as, *der König fährt mit sechsen, the king drives with six (horses); alle Viere, all fours.* But they usually remain unaltered.

304. *Hundert, tausend*, take a plural *-e* when used alone as plurals; as, *hunderte, ja tausende waren zugegen, hundreds, yes thousands, were present.* *Ein* is used before *hundert* and *tausend* only in the numeral sense; as, *hundert, a hundred*; but *ein tausend acht hundert, one thousand eight hundred*, etc.

Expressions of Time.

305. (a) For the hours of the day the cardinal numeral is used with *Uhr* (*die Uhr, the clock*) as indeclinable; and the fractions are usually counted (with *auf*) on the next hour. As: *Wie viel Uhr ist es; what o'clock is it? Es ist vier Uhr, it is four o'clock; es ist halb fünf, it is half past four (half-five); es ist ein Viertel — drei Viertel — auf fünf, it is a quarter past four — a quarter to five*, etc. But also: *ein Viertel nach vier; ein Viertel vor fünf*; as in English. *At* is expressed by *um*; as: *Um wie viel Uhr, at what o'clock? Um fünf (Uhr)*, etc.

(b) The minutes before the hour are expressed by *vor* (or *in*); after the hour, by *nach* (or *über*). As: *Es ist zehn Minuten vor elf — or in zehn Minuten elf, it is ten minutes before (to) eleven; es ist neun Minuten nach (or über) vier, it is nine minutes after (past) four.*

NOTE. — The "time-table" style: "4²⁰, 4³⁰" vier (Uhr) zwanzig, vier (Uhr) dreißig, etc. is also used, though hardly in writing.

306. Various compounds are formed with cardinals:

1. With the suffix *lei*, appended to the ending *er*, indeclinable numeral adjectives are formed, sometimes called *variatives*; as, *einerlei, zweierlei, dreierlei*, etc., *of one kind, two kinds, three kinds*; *es ist mir einerlei, it is all one (the same) to me*; *vielerlei, of many kinds, or many kinds of*; *wie vielerlei, of how many kinds, or how many kinds of?*

2. With *mal*, *time*, *times*, adverbs sometimes called *iteratives*; as, *einmal*, *once*; *zweimal*, *twice*; *hundertmal*, *a hundred times*; *vielmahl*, *many times*, etc.

NOTE.—*Einmal* is distinguished in meaning by accent: *ein'mal*, *once* (definite) *one time*; *einmal'*, *once* (indefinite), *once on a time*.

3. *Multiplicative* adjectives are formed with *fach*, or *fältig*; as, *einfach*, *einfältig*, *simple*; *zweifach*, *zweifältig*, *double twofold*, etc.

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Das Jahr hat zwölf Monate. 2. Wie viele Tage sind in einem Jahre? 3. Ein Jahr hat 365 Tage. 4. Ein Tag hat 24 Stunden. 5. Zweimal neun ist achtzehn. 6. 17 und 19 macht 36. 7. Wie spät ist es? 8. Es hat sieben eins geschlagen. 9. Multiplizieren Sie 24 mit 5; wieviel ist (macht) das? 10. Es macht 120. 11. Dividire 363 mit 11; was kommt heraus? 12. Addiere (zähle zusammen) 5, 8, 7 und 10; wieviel macht das? 30. 13. Das Resultat ist 30. 14. Es ist zehn Uhr. 15. Es wird bald halb elf sein. 16. Der nächste Zug nach Boston geht um drei Viertel auf zwölf ab. 17. Um welche Zeit wird der Zug von Baltimore ankommen? 18. Um ein Viertel auf sieben. 19. Wie viele Minuten sind in einer Stunde? 20. 60 Minuten. 21. Die Schlacht bei Leipzig wurde im Jahre 1813 geschlagen. 22. Wie weit ist es von hier nach Richmond? 23. Es ist noch 67 Meilen. 24. Es ist uns einerlei.

1. The book has 253 pages. 2. How many miles is it from here to Springfield? 3. It is 56 miles. 4. At what time will the express leave for Hartford? 5. The express will leave at a quarter past five. 6. At what time will the train from New York arrive? 7. It will arrive at a quarter to eleven. 8. 14 multiplied by 3 is 42. 9. How many kinds of wine have you in your cellar? 10. We have three kinds of wine in our cellar. 11. How many kinds of apples grow in your orchard? 12. Five kinds of apples. 13. That is tenfold profit. 14. We

have been twice in London. 15. Three times three is nine. 16. Seven times seven is forty-nine. 17. Schiller was born in the year 1759, and died in the year 1805. 18. How old was he, at the (zur) time of his death? 19. He was 46 years old. 20. How old is your youngest sister? 21. She is seven years old. 22. Thousands were present. 23. That is all the same to me. 24. We rise (außstehen) every morning at half past six.

(Continue oral practice, until the numerals are familiar.)

LESSON XXXIII.

ORDINAL NUMERALS.

307. The ordinal numerals from 2 to 19 are derived from the cardinal numerals by adding the suffix *t*, and from 20 upwards, *st*. They are declined like adjectives and are usually preceded by the definite article. Erst, *first*, is the superlative of *er*, *before*, *cher*, *sooner*; dritt, *third*, shortens the radical vowel; acht, *eighth*, drops one *t*. In compound numbers only the last takes the ordinal ending.

1st	der, die, das	erste, the first.
2nd	" "	zweite, the second.
3rd	" "	britte, the third.
4th	" "	vierte, the fourth.
5th	" "	fünfte, the fifth.
6th	" "	sechste (sechste), the sixth.
7th	" "	siebente, the seventh.
8th	" "	achte, the eighth.
19th	" "	neunzehnte, the nineteenth.
20th	" "	zwanzigste, the twentieth.
21st	" "	ein und zwanzigste, the twenty-first.
22nd	" "	zwei und zwanzigste, the twenty-second.
30th	" "	dreißigste, the thirtieth.

31st	der, die, daß	ein und dreißigste,	<i>the thirty-first.</i>
50th	" " "	fünfzigste (funfzigste),	<i>the fiftieth.</i>
100th	" " "	hundertste,	<i>the hundredth.</i>
101st	" " "	hundert und erste,	<i>the hundred-and-first.</i>
200th	" " "	zweihundertste,	<i>the two-hundredth.</i>
1000th	" " "	tausendste,	<i>the thousandth.</i>
"	" " "	letzte,	<i>the last.</i>

NOTE. — Der, die, daß andere, *the other*, is sometimes used for *the second*.

308. From *wie viel*, *how many*, is formed an interrogative ordinal, *der, die, daß wievielte*, or *wievielte*; as, *der wievielte ist daß, how many is that? den wievielten (Tag) haben wir heute, what day of the month is it to-day?*

Expressions of Date.

309. (a) In giving the day of the month, the ordinal is used elliptically, without preposition [*Tag von* being implied]; as, *es ist der fünfte August!*, *it is the fifth (day) of August.*

(b) In naming a date, the dative ordinal with *am* (an dem contracted) is used, or — especially in dating a letter — the simple accusative; as, *er starb am zehnten Mai*, — or *den zehnten Mai* — *he died (on) the tenth of May*; *Boston, den zehnten Mai.*

NOTE. — When figures are used, the endings *-(f)te*, *-(f)ten* are sometimes written, but often omitted; as *der 10te* or *der 10. Mai*; *am 20sten* or *am 20. Mai* — the period marking the abbreviated ordinal.

310. The date of the year is given by the cardinal number, usually preceded by *im Jahr(e)*, *in the year*; as, *Napoleon starb (im Jahre) achtzehn hundert ein und zwanzig*; *Napoleon died in (the year) 1821* (but not in *achtzehn hundert*, etc.)

311. From the ordinal numerals are formed:

1. *The fractional nouns*, by the ending *-tel* — originally the noun *Teil*, *part* — except *the half*, *die Hälfte*; as, *ein Drittel*, *a third*; *ein Viertel*, *a fourth*, etc. (For *halb*, see § 144.)

2. *The dimidiative* adjectives, by adding *halb, half*, to the ordinal, denoting half a unit less than the corresponding number; as, *anderthalb, one and a half*; *dritt(e)halb, two and a half* (i. e. *the third a half*)—etc. These are indeclinable.

3. Ordinal adverbs, ending in *-ens* (see § 399); as, *erstens, firstly*; *zweitenſ, secondly*, etc.

Expressions of Weight and Measure.

312. Nouns of quantity, weight, or measure, except feminines in *e*, are used in the singular after a numeral. The English 'of' is not expressed. Thus: *drei Pfund Tee, three pounds of tea*; *zehn Fuß lang, ten feet long*. But *drei Tassen Tee, three cups of tea*; *zwei Ellen lang, two yards long*, etc.

313. The names of the days and months are (usually with the article) the masculines:

Sonn'tag, <i>Sunday</i> .	Januar', <i>January</i> .	Ju'li, <i>July</i> .
Mon'tag, <i>Monday</i> .	Februar', <i>February</i> .	August', <i>August</i> .
Diens'tag, <i>Tuesday</i> .	März, <i>March</i> .	Septem'ber, <i>Septem-ber</i> .
Mitt'woch, <i>Wednesday</i> .	April', <i>April</i> .	
Don'nerstag, <i>Thursday</i> .	Mai, <i>May</i> .	Okto'ber, <i>October</i> .
Frei'tag, <i>Friday</i> .	Ju'ni, <i>June</i> .	Novem'ber, <i>Novem-ber</i> .
Sonn'abend, or Sam's'tag, <i>Saturday</i> .		[ber. Dezem'ber, <i>Decem-</i>

EXERCISE XXXIII.

- Die großen Soldaten Friedrichs des Ersten, Königs von Preußen, dienten in den Kriegen seines Enkels Friedrich des Zweiten.
- Ludwig Uhland wurde am 26. April 1787 in Tübingen geboren und starb daselbst am 13. November 1862.
- Das Haus, in welchem ich wohne, ist drei Stock hoch; ich wohne im dritten Stocke.
- Heinrich der Achte, König von England, war sechsmal verheiratet.
- Drei Achtel ist die Hälfte von drei Viertel.
- Jeder Soldat erhielt zwei Paar Stiefel.
- Er wohnt im vierten Hause um die Ecke.
- Der neunte Monat des Jahres heißt September.
- Wie

heißt der letzte Tag der Woche? 10. Man nennt ihn Sonnabend oder Samstag. 11. Der Zug wird in anderthalb Stunden ankommen. 12. Das Landhaus des Grafen ist drittelhalb Meilen von hier. 13. Das Dampfboot wird am 21sten nächsten Monats abfahren. 14. Nächsten Freitag werden wir den 25sten dieses Monats haben. 15. Den wievielften haben wir heute? 16. Wir haben heute den 25. August achtzehn (or tausend acht) hundert sechs und achtzig.

1. Sunday is the first day of the week, Monday the second, and Tuesday the third. 2. The last days of (the) January were very cold. 3. He has bought a dozen bottles of wine. 4. She drank two cups of tea. 5. Give me eight quires of paper. 6. Three is a fifth of fifteen. 7. The king will arrive on the 22d of May, at half past three. 8. He has bought five pairs of boots. 9. Send me ten pounds of tea. 10. A third and a sixth are three sixths. 11. The train will arrive in three hours and a half. 12. Last Saturday we had (*were*) gone to Dresden. 13. I have read the first twenty pages. 14. The bridge is 153 feet long, and 30 feet broad. 15. What day [of the month] *is it* to-day? 16. It is Thursday, the 15th of February, 1885.

LESSON XXXIV.

Adverbs.

314. Most adjectives are used in their predicate form as adverbs, not only in the positive, but also in the comparative and superlative degrees. Karl schreibt schön, Heinrich schreibt schöner, aber Luise schreibt am schönsten. Wer kann am schnellsten laufen? (§ 160), *who can run the fastest?*

NOTE.—Thus the adverb is often distinguished from the adjective only by the context. (See § 449, 2, *d.*)

315. In the superlative the form with *am* is used when actual comparison is expressed. But in the *absolute* superlative, which expresses simply a very high degree without comparison, the accusative neuter with *auf* (*auf* *daß* contracted to *aufs*) is used. As, *er grüßte mich aufs höflichste*, *he greeted me most politely* — in this case usually without the article in English.

316. A few superlatives use as adverbs the uninflected form in *-st*. And of these, the superlatives *höchst*, *äußerst*, *möglichst*, are frequently used to form an absolute superlative of adjectives or other adverbs. — As, *tun Sie es gefälligst*, *do it, please*; *höchst angenehm*, *most agreeable*; *äußerst schön*, *extremely beautiful*; *möglichst schnell*, *as quick (or quickly) as possible*.

317. The following adverbs form their comparative and superlative from other stems :—

<i>wohl</i> or <i>gut</i> , <i>well</i> .	<i>besser</i> , <i>better</i> ; <i>am besten</i> , <i>best</i> .
<i>bald</i> , <i>soon</i> .	<i>eher</i> , <i>sooner</i> ; <i>am ehesten</i> , <i>soonest</i> .
<i>gern</i> , <i>willingly</i> , <i>gladly</i> .	<i>lieber</i> , <i>more willingly</i> , <i>rather</i> ; <i>am liebsten</i> , <i>most willingly</i> .
See also § 156.	

318. Adverbs are often formed from adjectives by means of suffixes; as, *bitterlich*, *bitterly* (from *bitter*); *blindlings*, *blindly*, (from *blind*). Such forms will be more fully given in Less. XLIII.

NOTE. — Enlarged forms in *-e* occur; as, *lange*, *gerne*, *borne*, for *lang*, *gern*, *born*, etc., formerly more common than now.

319. (*a*) Some adverbs derived from nouns or adjectives take the sign of the genitive *s* (§ 399):—

<i>abends</i> , <i>in the evening</i> .	<i>links</i> , <i>to the left</i> .
<i>morgens</i> , <i>in the morning</i> .	<i>schönstens</i> , <i>in the best manner</i> .
<i>anfangs</i> , <i>in the beginning</i> .	<i>spätestens</i> , <i>at the latest</i> .
<i>teils</i> , <i>partly</i> .	<i>allerdings</i> , <i>certainly</i> .
<i>rechts</i> , <i>to the right</i> .	<i>anderwärts</i> , <i>otherwise</i> .

(*b*) Such forms are sometimes phrases, written as compounds; as, größtenteils, *for the most part*; unterwegs, *on the way*; keineswegs, *by no means*, etc.

320. (*a*) Many adverbial phrases are formed by combination with a preposition; as, von oben, *from above*; von unten, *from below*; gerade aus, *straight on*. Many adverbs are pure compounds, as, vorbei, *past*; überall, *everywhere*; vielleicht, *perhaps*, etc. For accent, see § 53. For compounds of da, wo, see §§ 209, 237.

(*b*) The compounds with her, *hither*; hin, *thither*, are often separable; as, woher kommen Sie? or, wo kommen Sie her? *where do you come from?* etc. Her and hin are used in many idiomatic phrases. (§ 484).

321. There are also many simple adverbs, or adverbs proper; such as, hier, *here*; dort, *there*; her, *hither*; hin, *thither*; dann, *then*; wann, *when*; so, *so*; nur, *only*, etc.

NOTE.—Adverbs are classed, according to their meaning, as in English, into adverbs of *place*, of *time*, of *manner*, of *degree*, of *predication* (or *mood*), etc. But such classification does not need to be explained here.

322.

Position of Adverbs.

1. The adverb stands immediately before the adjective or adverb it modifies. Except genug, *enough*; as, stark genug, *strong enough*.

2. The adverb cannot stand, as it so often does in English, between the subject and verb. For instance: *We generally dine at six o'clock*, wir speisen gewöhnlich um sechs Uhr. *He always speaks the truth*, er sagt immer die Wahrheit. Except in the *transposed* order (§ 177, 4.) See also § 354, 5.

3. The English “only” may either precede or follow the noun; the German nur must always precede it: *My sister only*, or *only my sister was present*, nur meine Schwester war zugegen.

4. When several adverbs or adverbial expressions occur in the same sentence, the adverb of time is usually first, the adverb of place second, and the adverb of manner last. Examples: Es hat heute hier stark geregnet, *it has been raining hard here to-day*. Er arbeitet immer fleißig, *he always works diligently*. (See also § 202.)

NOTE. — The same rule applies to the corresponding adverbial phrases; as, Es hat heute morgen in dieser Gegend sehr stark geregnet, *it has been raining very hard in this neighborhood this morning*.

5. The adverb nicht, *not*, when it negatives the verb, stands after all objects or other adverbs. But when it negatives some adjunct of the verb, it is placed before that adjunct. Examples: Ich sehe ihn nicht, *I do not see him*. Ich habe ihn heute nicht gesehen, *I have not seen him to-day*. Wir haben ihn nicht heute, sondern gestern gesehen, *we have not seen him to-day, but yesterday*.

323. When an adverb, or adverbial phrase, begins the sentence, an *inversion* occurs (see § 177, 3); as, heute hat es hier stark geregnet; or, hier hat es heute stark geregnet; or stark hat es heute hier geregnet. For fuller statements, see § 344.

NOTE. — Only one such adverb or adverbial phrase can precede the verb. The others will occupy their usual places, as in the examples.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Wo ist der Bahnhof? 2. Links um die Ecke. 3. Wo ist der Gasthof zu (of) den drei Königen? 4. In der dritten Straße rechts, das vierte Haus auf der linken Seite. 5. Bitte, zeigen Sie mir den Weg nach dem Dom. 6. Gehen Sie gerade aus, bis Sie an das Rathaus kommen; dort biegen Sie links um die Ecke und nehmen darauf die erste Straße rechts, welche Sie direkt' auf den Münsterplatz führt. 7. Wo wollen Sie hin? 8. Ich laufe auf den Bahnhof; ich werde bald wieder zurück kommen. 9. Die Schlafzimmer sind oben, der Speisesaal und die Wohnzimmer sind unten. 10. Sind Sie je in Genf gewesen, und kennen Sie die dortigen Gast-

höfe? 11. Zwar bin ich da gewesen, aber es ist schon lange her (ago). 12. Wir sind vorgestern hier angekommen, und werden übermorgen wieder abreisen. 13. Wir haben bereits die ganze Stadt gesehen. 14. Dann sind Sie wahrscheinlich auch schon im Dom gewesen? 15. Freilich sind wir da gewesen, und haben ihn von vorne und von hinten, von oben und von unten gesehen. 16. Das ist ja recht schön; Sie scheinen überall gewesen zu sein. 17. Woher kommen Sie heute? Wohin wollen Sie morgen? 18. Ich komme heute von Basel und will morgen nach Bern.

1. He entirely forgot the names. 2. Which of the sisters works most diligently? 3. The air is cool in – the – morning and in – the – evening. 4. We have waited [a] long [time]. 5. She cried bitterly. 6. Which of these boys sings most beautifully? 7. I expect him every hour (hourly). 8. He fell backwards over the stairs. 9. He can hardly have heard it. 10. The book is written partly in the English and partly in the German language. 11. It rained yesterday and [the] day – before – yesterday. 12. When did it happen? 13. It happened lately. 14. It is very probable that it will rain to-morrow. 15. I had almost forgotten it. 16. He is by no means so industrious as you think. 17. Is your brother at present (jetzt) in Basle? 18. No sir, at present he is in Strassburg.

LESSON XXXV.

Conjunctions.

324. Conjunctions which connect sentences of like kind are called co-ordinating conjunctions. Conjunctions which introduce dependent clauses are called subordinating conjunctions. Conjunctions are important chiefly from their influence on the order of words. (See Lesson XXXVI.)

325. Co-ordinating conjunctions are either pure conjunctions (the simple connectives) or adverbial conjunctions.

Pure Conjunctions.

326. The *pure conjunctions* cause neither *inversion* nor *transposition* of the verb. These are *and, but, or, for*:

und, <i>and</i> .	sondern, <i>but</i> .
aber, <i>but, however</i> .	oder, <i>or</i> .
allein, <i>but, yet</i> .	denn, <i>for</i> .

NOTE. — More rarely, also, doch, indeßent, meaning *yet*.

(a) *Sondern* is used only after a negative, and introduces an opposite statement. *Aber* is used both after affirmative and negative clauses, and merely qualifies, but does not contradict, the preceding statement. As: Er ist nicht reich, sondern arm. Er hat das Haus gekauft, aber nicht bezahlt. Ich komme nicht von der Stelle, aber es ist auch schwer; *I do not make any progress, but then it is difficult.*

(b) *Sondern*, *allein*, stand at the head of the clause; *aber*, in the sense of *however*, frequently after the introductory words. As: Er ist wohl sehr reich; er ist aber sehr geizig; *he is indeed very rich; he is however very avaricious.*

(c) *Allein* (literally *alone, only*) admits, but excepts from, a preceding statement, either affirmative or negative; and is of less frequent use than *aber*. As: Er war ein großer Feldherr, allein er besaß nicht die Gabe umfassender Berechnung, — *but (yet) he did not possess the gift of comprehensive calculation, etc.*

Adverbial Conjunctions.

327. The *adverbial conjunctions*, or co-ordinating conjunctions which partake of the nature of adverbs, when they stand at the head of the sentence, influence the order of words like adverbs — that is, they cause *inversion* of the verb (§ 323). Examples: Ich bin krank; deshalb kann ich

nicht ausgehen; *I am ill; on that account I cannot go out.*
 Er kam gestern Abend sehr spät an, und dennoch ist er sehr früh
 auf; *he arrived very late last night, and, nevertheless, he*
is up very early. But these same words stand as adverbs
 within the sentence: Ich bin krank, ich kann deshalb nicht aus-
 gehen.

328. The principal adverbial conjunctions are :

also, *accordingly.*

außerdem, *besides.*

da, *there, then.*

dann, *then.*

daher, }
 darum, } *therefore.*

deshalb, }
 deswegen, } *on that account.*

doch, }
 dennoch, } *yet, still, neverthe-*
 jedoch, } *less.*

folglich, *consequently.*

indessen, *meanwhile, however.*

noch, *still, yet (time).*

so, *so, then.*

sonst, *else, otherwise.*

NOTE.—So is frequently used to introduce a principal clause, pre-
 ceded by a dependent clause, when no connective is expressed in English,
 —especially after adverbial clauses of *cause* or *condition*. See § 486.

329. In the correlative or double connectives, entweder—
 oder, *either—or*; weder—noch, *neither—nor*, inversion occurs
 after weder and noch—and usually, but not always, after ent-
 weder; as: Entweder kommt er (or er kommt), oder er wird bald
 schreiben, *either he will come or he will soon write.* Weder wird
 er kommen, noch wird er schreiben, *neither will he come nor will*
he write. But: er wird weder kommen noch schreiben, *he will*
neither come nor write.

NOTE.—The phrases sowohl—als auch, *both—and*; nicht nur—sondern
 auch, *not only—but also*, are also used as correlative connectives.

Subordinating Conjunctions.

330. Subordinating conjunctions *transpose* the verb to
 the end of the clause which they introduce. Examples:
 Nachdem ich meinen Brief geschrieben hatte, trug ich ihn auf die

Post; *after I had written my letter, I carried it to the post-office.* Die Sonne ging soeben auf, als wir auf dem Gipfel des Berges ankamen; *the sun was just rising as we reached the summit of the mountain.*

331. When a dependent clause — adverbial or objective — precedes the principal clause, the latter is inverted. The dependent clause here has the effect of an adverbial modifier preceding the principal verb (§ 323). As: Nachdem er seine Rechnung bezahlt hatte, reiste er ab; *after he had paid his bill, he left.* Daß er das getan hat, kann ich nicht glauben, *that he has done that, I cannot believe.*

332. The most important subordinating conjunctions are:—

als, <i>when, as.</i>	ob, <i>whether, if.</i>
als ob, } <i>as if.</i>	obgleich, } <i>although.</i>
als wenn, }	obwohl, }
bevor, <i>before.</i>	seit, } <i>since (time).</i>
bis, <i>until.</i>	seitdem, }
da, <i>as, since (cause).</i>	sobald, <i>as soon as.</i>
daß, <i>that.</i>	während, <i>while.</i>
damit, <i>in order that.</i>	wann, <i>when.</i>
ehe, <i>before.</i>	wenn, <i>when, if.</i>
indem, } <i>while, as.</i>	weßhalb, <i>wherefore.</i>
indessen, }	wie, <i>how, as.</i>
nachdem, <i>after.</i>	weil, <i>because.</i>

NOTE.— Some of these words have other uses: *as, da, there, then*; *als, than*; *bis, up to*, etc. But the use as subordinating conjunction will always be shown by the position of the verb at the end of the clause.

333. For the distinction between *als, when* (definite past), *wenn, when* (future or contingent), and *wann, when* (interrogative); also for the separable compounds *wenn—auch, ob—gleich, although*, etc., see Lesson LXXI.

334. The correlative comparison, *the (more)—the (less)* is expressed by *je—desto* (or *je—je*), the leading, or dependent, clause being transposed, the second inverted; as, *je reicher der Mann wird, desto stolzer wird er, the richer the man becomes, the prouder he grows. Je eher, je lieber, the sooner, the better.*

Interjections.

335. The simple or natural interjections do not admit of grammatical treatment. They are more or less the same in all languages.

336. Sometimes words or phrases are used elliptically, in an exclamatory way, as interjections :

1. Such are : *wöh! o wöh! woe is me! leider! alas! gut Heil! hail! Gottlob! God be praised! wohlauf! cheer up! bewahre! God forbid! weg! fort! away! herein! come in! weiter! go on!*

2. Here may be mentioned the frequent use of the infinitive and perfect participle in German, instead of the English imperative : *Einsteigen! eingestiegen!* (on starting a train, etc.) *get in! all aboard! aussteigen! ausgestiegen! get out! all out!* And the exclamatory or *absolute* infinitive: *Ich dich verlassen! unmöglich! I forsake you! impossible!*

3. Occasionally an interjection is brought into a kind of connection with the structure of the sentence. For instance: *O des Toren! oh the fool! Pfui über den Feigen! fie on the coward! Ach, daß du da liegst! Alas! that thou liest there!*

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Frau (*Mrs.*) Braun hat uns zu einer Gesellschaft eingeladen, aber wir haben ihre Einladung nicht annehmen können. 2. Diese Soldaten haben in der Infanterie, und nicht in der Kavallerie gedient. 3. Ich will gerne kommen, aber mein Bruder kann nicht kommen. 4. Gehen Sie jetzt nicht aus, denn es regnet. 5. Mein Arzt hat mir geraten, mich ruhig zu verhalten; deshalb kann ich

heute nicht ausgehen. 6. Er ist theils in Deutschland, theils in Frankreich erzogen worden; deshalb spricht er sowohl Deutsch wie Französisch mit großer Fertigkeit. 7. Es regnet; deshalb bleibe ich zu Hause. 8. Als mein Diener in das Zimmer trat, schlief ich noch. 9. Je länger die Tage sind, desto kürzer sind die Nächte. 10. Die wilden Gänse sind schwer zu schießen, weil sie schnell und sehr hoch fliegen. 11. Je fleißiger man arbeitet, desto leichter wird die Arbeit. 12. Sowohl meine Eltern als auch viele meiner besten Freunde waren auf dem Bahnhof, als ich von meiner Reise zurückkam. 13. Entweder werden Sie bald einen Brief von mir erhalten, oder ich werde jemanden zu Ihnen schicken. 14. Wahrhaftig, schnell gefahren! 15. Gestern Abend fuhr ich von London ab, und heute Nachmittag um vier Uhr bin ich schon in dem kleinen Selters, das durch sein Mineralwasser so berühmt ist. 16. Was habe ich nicht in dieser kurzen Zeit gesehen! 17. Gottlob! endlich sind wir da und wollen uns ein wenig ausruhen. 18. Je früher, desto besser.

1. When I arrived yesterday, it was quite dark. 2. Wait a minute, until I have written my exercise. 3. It is raining, therefore I shall stay quietly at home. 4. After I had taken my ticket, I went into the waiting-room. 5. I sent the porter for a cab, because I have so much baggage that I cannot carry it myself. 6. He speaks as he thinks. 7. After it has lightened it thunders. 8. He slept whilst I was reading. 9. It struck twelve, when we arrived at Brandenburg. 10. The sun had set before we arrived at our journey's end. 11. You will find the gentleman either in the dining-room or in the sitting-room. 12. He can neither read nor write. 13. We could neither hear nor see. 14. All aboard! the train starts in a moment. 15. Not only my books, but also my clothes, were burned. 16. Alas! all that (was) I had is lost. 17. As he could not come, (so) he wrote me a long letter. 18. The more diligently I study the German language, the more clearly I see that it is very much (sehr) like the English [language].

LESSON XXXVI.

Order of Words. — Summary.

Some of the rules on the order of words have already been incidentally given (§ § 177, 202). It is now necessary to give a more complete summary of this subject.

337. The principal point in the construction of the German sentence is:

I. The Position of the Verb.

338. There are three forms of verb-position:—

I. NORMAL order — the verb follows the subject.

II. INVERTED order — the verb precedes the subject.

III. TRANSPOSED order — the verb stands at the end.

The first two of these belong, usually, to independent or principal sentences; the last only to dependent or subordinate sentences (clauses).

NOTE I. — If we denote the subject by S.; the verb by V.; the adjuncts of the verb by A., the forms will be as follows:—

I. Normal—N. = S. V. A.

II. Inverted— I. = V. S. A.

III. Transposed—T. = S. A. V.

Observe that it is the verb that changes its position. Thus the position of the verb indicates the character of the construction.

2. By the *verb* is meant always the affirming, or finite (*personal*) verb. This in all compound forms (§ 169) is the auxiliary, or inflected word. By the *subject* is meant not only the nominative noun or pronoun, but the *entire subject*, with all its modifiers. By *adjunct* is meant all the rest of the predicate, except the adjunct which precedes the verb in II. (§ 323).

1. The Normal Order.

339. The *normal* (S. V. A.) is the natural and usual order of the independent declarative sentence.

340. None of the adjuncts of the predicate can stand between the subject and the verb (as often in English). Thus: *he always wears a black coat*, er trägt immer einen schwarzen Rock. (See also § 343).

NOTE. — Only seeming exceptions are such words as *aber, however*; *doch, jedoch, yet*; *nämlich, namely*; *ja, indeed*, which are really parenthetical.

341. The infinitive and participle of compound tenses stand at the end, preceded by whatever qualifies them. When both occur, the infinitive stands last (§ 163) — as in many examples already.

342. The prefix of a separable verb stands at the end in simple tenses. In compound, it is written in one word before the participle or infinitive (§ 284) — as in many examples already.

NOTE.—But sometimes, as in poetry, the prefix will stand nearer the verb in a simple tense; as: *gürt' mir um den Degen, gird round me the sword.*

343. (a) The subject itself may be complex — consisting of several words, or including an adjective clause or clauses (§ 348). In all cases the rule stands that the principal verb *immediately* follows the subject. Thus: Friedrich der Zweite, König von Preußen (subject), war der größte Feldherr seiner Zeit. Ein Herr, der einem Manne, dem er nicht recht traute, eine Guinee geliehen hatte (subject), war (verb) erstaunt zu finden, etc.

NOTE.—Observe that in the latter case the final verb of the dependent adjective clause is brought *immediately before the principal verb*. This position will often, in a complex sentence, usefully show where the dependent construction ends, and the principal sentence is resumed.

(b) But if the clause modify the predicate, it should not (§ 340) stand between the subject and the verb, as often in English. Thus: *The Romans, after they had conquered the world, fell into luxury*; Die Römer verfielen, nachdem sie die Welt erobert hatten, in Üppigkeit (*not die Römer, nachdem, etc.*).

NOTE.—This rule is sometimes violated, but not in strict correctness. Rather, to avoid crowding, let the dependent clause precede; as, Nachdem die Römer, etc. . . . verfielen sie, etc. (§ 344).

For special case of normal order in dependent clause, see § 350, 1.

2. The Inverted Order.

344. The *inverted* order (V. S. A.) is assumed in independent declarative sentences when introduced by any adjunct of the verb:—

(a) Only one such adjunct may precede the verb; but this may consist of several words, forming, however, logically only one element of the sentence. As: Damals half uns ein Freund aus unsrer Not. Uns half damals ein guter Freund aus der Not. Aus unserer Not half er uns damals.

(b) A dependent clause — adverbial or objective — preceding the principal, has the value of an introductory adjunct, and causes inversion of the principal verb. As: Als wir ankamen, war es schon Tag. Daß er solche Worte gesprochen hat, glaube ich nicht. But sometimes, colloquially, or for emphasis, the inversion is omitted. As: Wäre sie nicht gekommen, ich stände noch da — for (so) stände ich, etc. See § 471, e.

(c) For the same reason, expressions like *I think, said he*, etc., when preceded by any of the words referred to, will be inverted, those phrases being logically the principal sentence, of which the words quoted form the object. As: Das, denke ich, ist meine Pflicht (but ich denke, das ist, etc.).

For dependent *subject* clauses, see § 343.

(*d*) Rarely the participle or infinitive of a compound tense, or even the verb itself, may stand first, in case of special emphasis. As: *Geflohen war alles*; *Schweigen will ich nicht*; *Ermorden lassen kann er mich, nicht richten*; *Kommt doch das Ärgerniß von oben*; *Hatten wir es ja alle gehört*.

345. (*a*) The "pure conjunctions" (*and, but, or, for*, § 326) do not cause inversion. They will, therefore, usually restore the *normal order* after a preceding inversion, unless the *cause of inversion* is repeated. Thus: *Da kam er zu mir, und ich fragte ihn sogleich*; but *und sogleich fragte ich ihn*.

(*b*) Conjunctionive words belonging to the subject alone will not cause inversion; as, *Auch mein Bruder war zugegen*. And sometimes an adverb may be allowed to stand, parenthetically, in the same way; as, *Freilich (indeed), ich kann es nicht sagen*.

346. The *inverted* is the regular order, without introductory adjunct:

(*a*) In direct questions, unless the interrogative word is *subject*; as, *Ist der Herr zu Hause*? *Wann wird er zu Hause sein*? But, *Wer ist der Herr*? *Wer bringt die Nachricht (normal)*?

(*b*) In imperative and optative (wish) sentences; except, sometimes, in the third person; as, *setzen wir uns*; *schweige (du)*; *wäre es doch Tag, would it were day*; *gebe Gott or Gott gebe, God grant, etc.*

(*c*) Often also in exclamation (§ 344, *d*); as, *ist doch das Leben schwer!*

NOTE. — Yet sometimes, colloquially, inversion occurs without introductory word; as, *kam ein Knabe, for es kam (there) came*; or, rarely, after *und*; as, *es war ganz ruhig und rührte sich nicht*.

For special case of inversion in dependent clause, see § 350, 2.

3. The Transposed Order.

347. The *transposed* order (S. A. V.) is used only in subordinate or dependent sentences (clauses).

NOTE. — The transposed order can therefore occur only in *complex sentences*. Yet sometimes, a dependent clause may stand alone, the principal clause being implied: as, *wenn er nur bald käme, if he would only come soon!* (I should be glad).

348. A dependent clause stands to its principal clause in the relation of a noun, or of an adjective, or of an adverb. Hence dependent clauses are called *noun clauses*, *adjective clauses*, or *adverbial clauses*.

(*a*) A dependent *noun* clause is usually introduced by the conjunction *daß, that*; as: *Er schrieb uns, daß er es tun würde*; — or, in a dependent question, by *ob, whether, if*; or *was, what*, or its equivalent (§ 222). As: *Wir fragten den Bedienten, ob sein Herr zu Hause wäre*; *ich wußte nicht, was er mir sagen wollte*. (For exception, see § 350, 1).

(b) A dependent *adjective* (relative) clause is introduced by a relative pronoun or its equivalent (§ 237). Example: Das Haus, welches vorige Nacht abgebrannt ist, gehörte einem Schuhmacher; alles, worüber ich mich gefreut hatte, ist verloren.

(c) Dependent *adverbial* clauses are usually introduced by subordinating conjunctions (§ 332), expressing a relation of time, place, cause, manner, purpose, condition or concession. Example: Es war noch Tag, als wir in dem Gasthose ankamen. Abel war ein Schäfer, während Cain ein Ackermann war. (For exception see § 350, 2.).

NOTE. — The same sentence may include several dependent clauses. For the effect of a dependent clause preceding the principal, see § 344, b. But if the introductory clause is *subject*, no effect is produced on the order of the principal sentence.

349. The pure conjunctions, *und*, etc. (§ 345) produce no effect on the dependent construction. Thus a series of connected clauses, dependent on the same subordinating word, will continue the transposed order to the end of the series, each dependent verb standing at the end of its own clause. As: Ein alter Mann, der in seiner Jugend nach Amerika reiste, sich dort verheiratete und eine große Familie erzog, ist neulich hier gestorben.

On the other hand, see § 345, a.

II. Special Cases in Verb-Position.

350. The following special cases occur in dependent clauses:

1. An *objective noun* clause, with *daß*, *that*, omitted (as often in English) is construed as a principal sentence; that is (a), *normal*; as, ich glaube, er wird bald kommen (for daß er bald kommen wird); der Bediente sagte, sein Herr sei nicht zu Hause; *the servant said (that) his master was not at home*. Or, (b) *inverted*; (as § 344): er sagte, jetzt sei sein Herr nicht zu Hause.

2. In a conditional (*adverb*) clause, if the conjunction *wenn*, *if*, is omitted, the order will be *inverted*. As: Ist der Herr zu Hause, so werde ich ihn bald sehen (for *wenn* er zu Hause ist, etc.). Wären Sie gestern gekommen, so hätten Sie uns zu Hause getroffen, *had you come* (for, *if you had come*), etc. (§ 470.)

This form is especially usual after *als*, for *als wenn*, *as if*. As: Er tat, als wäre er verrückt, *he acted as if he were crazy* (for: *als wenn* er verrückt wäre).

NOTE. — But in the *adjective* clause, the connective (*relative*) is never omitted (§ 239).

3. The transposed verb will stand before other verb-forms:—

(a) When two infinitives stand together, the auxiliary verb will stand immediately before them, the governing infinitive last (see also § 264). As: Ich weiß, daß ich es nicht werde tun können. Wenn er es hätte tun können,

so hätte er es gern getan, *if he could have done it, he would have done it gladly.* Wenn du wirst Betteln gehen müssen, *shall have to go a-begging.*

(b) The concurrence of werden in two different auxiliary uses will likewise be avoided. As: Ich verspreche, daß deine Schulden werden bezahlt werden (for bezahlt werden werden).

(c) Sometimes also a transposed auxiliary will be inserted before two participles or a participle and infinitive. As: Ich weiß, daß nicht alle sind bestraft worden (for bestraft worden sind). Sobald ich ihn werde gesehen haben.

4. Often the transposed clause ends in the participle of a compound tense, the auxiliary being omitted, when the meaning is already clear. As: Nachdem er die Bitte angehört (hatte), sagte der König. Sobald er in das Zimmer eingetreten (war), fing er an zu sprechen. Als das Urteil gesprochen worden (war).

351. The following cases may also be noticed: —

1. When the sentence consists of only subject and verb, the normal order (S. V. A.) and the transposed (S. A. V.), will be identical (S. V.). In this case the construction is distinguished only by the connective, or by the context. As: ich kann jetzt nicht spielen, denn (for) ich arbeite (normal); or, weil (because) ich arbeite (transposed).

2. Certain words are used both in demonstrative (independent) and relative (dependent) meaning; such as, *der, he or who; da, there, then; or when, as; indessen, meanwhile, or while, etc.* In such cases the position of the verb will show the meaning. As: ein Mann hatte drei Söhne, die (they) liebten ihn gleich — or, die (them) liebte er gleich; but, die (who) ihn gleich liebten — or, die (whom) er gleich liebte.

3. The use of es as introductory subject causes inversion of the true or logical subject; as, es ist nichts beschlossen; es zogen drei Burschen über den Rhein.

But without es, unless introductory; as, beschlossen ist nichts. See § 453. See Synopsis at end of this Lesson.

III. Order of Words not Verbs.

NOTE. — The arrangement of other words is not, generally, so rigidly fixed as the position of the verb, and is more largely influenced by emphasis, etc. The leading rules will here be given. These may be reserved for later study, or for reference.

Adjuncts of the Noun.

352. The adjective will usually precede the noun, but may follow for emphasis, or in special phrases. Pronominal precede qualifying adjectives; as, der gute Freund; der Freund, der gute; Friedrich der Große; der Held, edel und treu (see Lesson VIII.).

2. Adjective phrases with prepositions follow the noun; as, Frankfurt am Main; das Haus auf der Höhe.

3. (a) A limiting genitive usually follows the noun; as, der Anfang des Krieges; das Glück des Menschen.

(b) But a personal (*subjective*) genitive will often precede, taking the place of the article: des Vaters Haus; Schillers Werke; des Jünglings Stimme.

(c) This usage is widely extended in poetry, or elevated prose, to genitives not personal; as, Frankreichs Erde; in der Abendwolken Blut; des Meeres Wallen; ohne der Kronen Licht. (§430).

Adjuncts of the Adjective (or Participle).

353. An adjective, or a participle, will be preceded by its adjuncts:—

1. An adverb: ein sehr guter Mann; an object: sei mir gnädig. But an object with preposition may follow; as, sei nicht böse auf mich, *be not angry with me.*

2. Other dependent words, which, in English, will often require to follow, or to be expressed by an adjective (*relative*) clause; as, Friedrich der Große, von seinem Volke der „Alte Fritz“ genannt; in einem von meinem Vater neulich erhaltenen Briefe, *in a letter (which has been) lately received by my father*; auf eine der Ehre eines Fürsten würdige Weise; ein über 20 Fuß hoher Baum. This construction — often extended to great length — requires particular attention; but is not to be commended for imitation. (See §483.)

Adjuncts of the Verb.

NOTE. — The infinitives and participles of compound tenses, and the separable prefixes, are, strictly speaking, adjuncts of the verb; but these have been treated elsewhere. (§ 341-2).

1. Objects.

354. 1. Pronoun objects precede noun objects; as, er erzählte es seinem Freunde; er hat mir ein Buch gegeben.

2. The cases stand: 1. dative; 2. accusative; 3. genitive. But if the accusative is personal, or a pronoun, it will usually precede the dative; as, ich habe dem Knaben ein Buch geliehen; der Vater hat den Sohn einer schweren Sünde beschuldigt. But: wir müssen den Mann seinem Schicksale überlassen; er hat es mir gesagt. Yet, frequently, the contracted *mir's, dir's, etc.*

3. Objects with prepositions follow simple objects; as, er schickte seinen Freund zu mir; er schrieb mir einen Brief über seine Reise.

4. The reflexive *sich* usually precedes all other pronouns, and personals precede demonstratives; as, er empfiehlt sich Ihnen; er hat sich es gefallen lassen, *he has put up with it*; sagen Sie mir das nicht. But also *es sich* (§ 202,3).

5. *Especially*, in inverted or transposed order, an unemphatic pronoun object will often precede the subject, unless the latter is a personal pronoun; as, *da reichte ihm der Fremde die Hand*; *als ihn der Vater sah, weinte er vor Freude*. Rarely, also, a noun; as, *übrigens gehört Gott meine Seele*; more often, an adverb; as, *da sprach endlich der Vater*.

2. Adverbs.

355 1. Adverbs will stand: 1. time; 2. place; 3. manner.

2. Adverbs of time usually precede objects, except pronouns; as, *er hat mir gestern einen Brief geschrieben*.

3. Adverbs of place follow simple objects, but precede objects with prepositions; as, *wir konnten das Buch nirgends im Hause finden*.

4. Adverbs of manner usually precede, but may follow, objects with prepositions. — The rules for adverbs apply generally to the corresponding adverb phrases; but, in all cases, the position may be largely influenced by emphasis. Frequently also an adverb phrase stands at the end of the sentence, outside of the regular construction; that is, especially, after the dependent verb — contrary to § 177,4.

5. Of two adverbs of like kind, the more general usually precedes the more specific; as, *heute früh*; *morgen um 10 Uhr*.

6. (For adverbs modifying adjectives, see § 353.) Generally, an adverb will stand just before any word (not the verb) which it modifies; as, *nur mein Bruder war zugegen*; *kaum eine Stunde war vergangen*. (See § 345 *b*).

Prepositions usually precede objects (Exceptions § 280, and Appendix).

3. Predicates.

356. A noun or adjective standing as predicate (complement) will usually follow all other adjuncts; as, *Morgen wird wahrscheinlich wegen der Hochzeit ein Feiertag sein*; *viel Zeit war nach zehn Uhr nicht mehr übrig*.

357. Words, or phrases, which, by idiomatic usage, have come to be regarded as part of a verb-phrase (§ 379) — including also predicate or factitive objects — will take the same position as a predicate complement. Such are: *Rede stehen, to answer*; *fest halten, to hold fast*; *stehen bleiben, to stop*; *zu Mittag essen, to dine*, etc., etc.; as, *wir aßen gestern bei einem Freunde zu Mittag*; *da er den Verbrecher nicht festhalten konnte, so schlug er ihn tot*.

4. The Infinitive.

358. 1. For the infinitive in compound tenses, see § 341.

2. An infinitive without *zu*, dependent on the verb, stands last among the verb-adjuncts, without comma; as, *ich will mich gerne hier bis übermorgen aufhalten*; *ich sage Ihnen, daß ich mich hier bis übermorgen aufhalten will*.

3. The same position may be held by an infinitive with *zu*, dependent on a verb in a simple tense; as, *ich wünsche mich hier bis übermorgen aufzuhalten*; *ich sage Ihnen, daß ich mich hier bis übermorgen aufzuhalten wünsche*; *er fing zu singen an*.

4. But generally, to avoid too great complexity of construction, an infinitive with *zu*, especially if accompanied by adjuncts of its own, will be treated as a distinct clause; that is, it will stand outside of the limits of the principal construction, with the infinitive at the end:

(a) After the non-personal part of a verb, or after a transposed verb: *Er fing an, zu singen*; *sogleich fing er an, von seinem Unglücke zu reden*; *ich habe lange gewünscht, meinem alten Freunde einen Besuch zu machen*; *ich sage Ihnen, daß ich lange gewünscht habe, Ihnen einen Besuch zu machen*; *er behauptete, daß er eine Methode lehre, Gold zu machen*.

(b) Or before the main sentence, which it will then invert (§344, b); as, *um seinen Vater zu sehen, ist der Sohn zehn Meilen gegangen*.

5. In a series of infinitives, the governing one regularly stands last, reversing the English order. As: *Ihr habt mich ermorden lassen wollen*, *you have sought to have me murdered*; *er wird es nicht tun können*, etc. Yet not always if more than two infinitives: *Man wird mich wollen laufen lassen*.

IV. Position of Dependent Clauses.

359. (a) For the same reason — to avoid too great complexity of construction — a dependent clause will often be thrown outside of the usual limits; as, *ich gebe freiwillig die Ansprüche auf, welche ich auf das Buch habe*; *ich habe den Preis angenommen, welchen der Herr mir anbot*.

(b) Especially, in subordinate sentences, to avoid collision of dependent verbs; as, *er warf ihm einen Beutel zu, indem er sich wegen der geringen Summe entschuldigte, die er enthielt*.

(c) Also in comparison — elliptical: *Er hat mehr Fehler gemacht, als ich (gemacht habe)*.

360. Generally, it may be remarked, that dependent clauses will occupy their natural position, logically; but that ambiguity, or excessive involution of structure, must always be avoided. This, however, is in large degree prevented by the free use of the comma (§ 67), as well as by the distinctive position of the verb. Thus German can often sustain periods which would be intolerable in English — a power which, however, may be abused.

It may also be noted that modern German is marked by an increasing

freedom of word-order and, in general, by a tendency to simpler forms of construction.

REMARK. — The foregoing rules of position are naturally subject to exceptions, depending on emphasis, euphony, or individual style, and especially in poetry, with the freedom of poetic license. Still, the fundamental rules should be thoroughly mastered and strictly observed by the student who should be required, whenever possible, to account for exceptions, real or apparent. Once mastered, they become the key to almost all difficulties of construction.

NOTE. — No special Exercises are here added, because every German sentence is an exercise in the order of words.

Synopsis of Verb-Position.

The following condensed view may be helpful in remembering the chief rules of verb-position :

PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

When	introduced by subject	— <i>Normal.</i>
“ not	“ “ “	— <i>Inverted.</i>

DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

When introduced by subordinating word	— <i>Transposed.</i>
---------------------------------------	----------------------

Special Cases.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

Interrogative, Imperative, Optative sentences — *Inverted.*

DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Noun	clause — daß (<i>that</i>) omitted	— <i>Normal.</i>
Conditional	“ — wenn (<i>if</i>) “	— <i>Inverted.</i>

The verb precedes two infinitives.

NOTE. — The “pure conjunctions” (*and, but, or, for*) are not included.

See also Note at end of the Appendix. p. 378.

It is presumed that at this point — or even earlier — the pupil has begun the reading of an easy German text, outside of the grammar. In the following Lessons, therefore, the German-English Exercises will be omitted.

PART II.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTORY REMARK. — The German vocabulary is much more homogeneous than the English. The introduction of foreign elements — mainly French and Latin — from an early date, into the English language has not only added a large admixture of words not native in origin, but, by supplying foreign terms ready made, it arrested the development of the native speech. Hence the processes of derivation and composition, from native roots, have been much more largely extended in German than in English. These processes are, therefore, in German of much greater practical importance for the acquisition of a vocabulary, and for the exposition of the relation and meaning of words. A brief sketch of the most important classes of derivatives and compounds will be given in the following Lessons.

NOTE. — Foreign words of course exist largely in German also; but there they are distinctly marked, while in English they are fully assimilated. In this respect, on the other hand, the English vocabulary is more homogeneous than the German.

LESSON XXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs.

361. Most verbs of the strong conjugation, and many weak verbs of monosyllabic roots, are primitive verbs. There are many others, obviously derivative, in which the origin and the process of derivation are unknown.

Almost all derivative verbs are weak. (See § 199.)

362. (*a*) An important class of verbs are derived from other verbs by modification or change of root-vowel. The primitive is usually strong and intransitive;* the derivative is weak and

* See List of Irregular Verbs.

ALPHABETICAL VERB LIST.

THE following list contains all verbs which depart from the regular (weak) conjugation:

For convenience of learning and of reference the verbs are arranged in synoptical form, in a table containing all standard or usual forms;— except that single weak forms are not given when included in a foot-note (as in *baden*, etc.). Forms antiquated, or now incorrect, are included in []. Forms still in use, but not commended, are included in (). When two forms are given without further indication, the more usual is in general placed first. Quantity is marked only in special or doubtful cases. The § refers to the section of the grammar in which the verb, or class, in question is treated. Special remarks are added in foot-notes.

The **principal parts** are printed in full-faced type. Along with the infinitive is given the most usual English meaning, which when **COGNATE** is printed in small caps.

To show the relation of vowels, the present and imperative are placed next after the infinitive, and the preterit subjunctive after the preterit or past indicative. When these forms are not given they are regular; that is, the present and imperative as in weak verbs; the pret. subj. from the pret. indic., according to the usual rule.

Compound verbs are given only when the primitives are not in use.

REMARKS.— The following remarks are prefixed for convenient reference:

1. In verbs with root **e**, and some with **i**, having past **a**, another form of the past subjunctive in **ü**, sometimes **ii**, is often preferred, to distinguish more clearly in sound from the present indicative; as *besöhle*, *begönne*, *hülfe*— often from earlier forms of past indicative.

2. Verbs with sibilant stems, **f**, **h**, **sch**, **z**, often contract the 2d pers. sing. pres. indic., both in sound and spelling, so as to be identical with 3d pers., as: *du heißest*, or *heißt*; *er heißt*; *du wäschest*, or *wäschst*; *er wäschst*, etc.

3. An old 2d, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. and 2d sing. imper. in **en** occurs (chiefly in poetry) in some verbs with **ie** roots: *biegen*, *bieten*, *fliegen*, *fliehen*, *fließen*, *genießen*, *gießen*, *kriechen*, etc., as: *beugst*, *beugt*; *beug*; 2d, 3d pres. *fließt* (Rem. 2), *impv. fließ*, etc.

4. Often in *impv. e* is dropped when there is no vowel-change, as: *bleib*, *lauf*, etc.; but no rule can be given.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
backen , ¹ BAKE	2. bäckst 3. bäckt	....	back	....	gebacken	249
-bären	<i>see</i> gebären					
befehlen , <i>command</i>	2. befiehlst 3. befiehlt	befiehl	befahl	beföhle befähle	befohlen	232
befleifzen , <i>apply</i>	2. befleibest <i>or</i> befleißt	....	befleiß	....	befliffen	246
beginnen , ² BEGIN	....	....	begann	begönne begänne	begonnen	232
beißen , BITE	2. beißest <i>or</i> beißt	....	biß	....	gebiffen	246
bellen , ³ <i>bark</i>	2. [billst] 3. [billt]	[bill]	[boll]	....	[gebollen]	242
bergen , <i>hide</i>	2. birgst 3. birgt	birg [berge]	berg	bürge bürge	geborgen	232
berften , ⁴ BURST	2. birft(eft) 3. birft	birft	barft borft	börfte bärft	geborften	232
bewegen , ⁵ <i>induce</i>	....	....	bewog	....	bewogen	242b
biegen , ⁶ <i>bend</i>	....	....	bog	....	gebogen	241
bieten , ⁷ <i>offer</i>	....	....	bot	....	geboten	241
binden , BIND	....	....	band	....	gebunden	231
bitten , <i>ask</i>	....	....	bat	....	gebeten	243
blafen , ⁸ <i>blow</i>	2. bläf(eft) 3. bläft	....	bließ	....	geblafen	248
bleiben , <i>remain</i>	....	....	blieb	....	geblieben	247

1. Also weak, except in past participle. 2. Old forms in past, *begonn*, *begonnte*.

3. Now weak. Old forms, as above, now obsolete. 4. Also weak throughout.

5. Weak, except in this sense.

6. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. *beugst*, *beugt*, *beug*.

7. Old (poetic) pres. and impv. *beutst*, *beut*, *beut*.

8. Rarely also weak in present.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2. SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
bleichen, ¹ BLEACH	....	....	bleich	....	gebleichen	246
braten, ² <i>roast</i>	2. brätst 3. brät	....	briet	....	gebraten	248
brechen, BREAK	2. brichst 3. bricht	brich [breche]	brach	....	gebrochen	232
brennen, BURN	....	....	brannte	brenn(e)te	gebrannt	254
bringen, BRING	....	....	brachte	brächte	gebracht	254
-beihen	<i>see gedeihen</i>					
denken, THINK	....	....	dachte	dächte	gedacht	254
-derben	<i>s. verderben</i>					
dingen, ³ <i>hire</i>	....	....	ding dang	....	gedungen	231a
dröschén, ⁴ THRESH	2. drisch(ef)t 3. drischt	drisch	drösch drasch	drösche dräsche	gedroschen	242
-drießen	<i>s. verdriessen</i>					
dringen, <i>press</i>	....	....	drang	....	gedrungen	231
dürfen, <i>may</i>	Pr. darf, darfst, darf; dürfen, etc.	....	durfte	dürfte	gedurft	261
empfehlen, <i>recommend</i>	<i>see befehlen</i>					
essen, EAT	2. isst, isst 3. isst	iß [esse]	äß	....	geessen	243a
fahren, <i>go</i>	2. fährtst 3. fährt	....	fuhr	....	gefahren	249
fallen, FALL	2. fälltst 3. fällt	....	fiel	....	gefallen	248

1. Also weak, intrans. As trans. always weak.

2. Also weak, except in p. part.

3. Also weak — usually in p. indic. and now always in p. subj.

4. Also weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
fallen , ¹ FOLD	....	....	....	....	gefallen	
fangen , <i>catch</i>	2. fängst 3. fängt	....	fiug (fieng)	(fienge)	gefangen	248
fechten , ² FIGHT	2. fiht(e)ft 3. fiht	fiht	foht	....	geföhten	242
-fehlen ³	<i>see befehlen</i>					
finden , FIND	....	....	fand	....	gefunden	231
flechten , ⁴ <i>braid</i>	2. fiht(e)ft 3. fiht	fiht	floht	....	geflohten	242
-fleifien	<i>see befleifien</i>					
fliegen , ⁵ FLY	....	....	flog	....	geflogen	241
fliehen , ⁶ FLEE	....	....	floh	....	geflohen	241
fließen , ⁷ <i>flow</i>	2. fließeft <i>or</i> fließt	....	flöfi	....	gefloffen	241
fragen , ⁸ <i>ask</i>	2. [frägt] 3. [frägt]	....	[frug]	[früge]	....	249
frefien , <i>eat</i>	2. frieffeft <i>or</i> frißt 3. frißt	friß [frefie]	fräfi	....	gefrefien	243
frieren , FREEZE	....	....	fror	....	gefroren	241
gären , ⁹ <i>ferment</i>	....	....	gor	....	gegoren	242
gebären , ¹⁰ BEAR	2. gebierft 3. gebiert	gebier	gebar	....	geboren	232b

1. Weak, except p. part. gefallen, as adj. 2. Also weak, except in p. part. See 4.

3. Occurs only in befehlen, empfehien; fehlen, *to fail*, is weak.

4. Also weak, except in p. part. In 2. pres. also fihtft; and in fechten, fihtft.

5. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. fleugt, fleugt, fleug.

6. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. fleucht, fleucht, fleuch.

7. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. fließt, fließ.

8. Weak, except (rarely) as above.

9. Also weak. Spelled also gähren, etc.

10. Sometimes weak in pres. and impv. Old gebären.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	
geben, GIVE	2. gibst (giebst)	gib	gab	....	gegeben	243
	3. gibt (giebt)	(gieb)				
gedeihen, <i>thrive</i>	....	....	gedieh	....	gediehen	247
gehen, GO	....	....	ging [gieng]	[gienge]	gegangen	248 (note).
gelingen, <i>succeed</i>	....	....	gelaug	....	gelingen	231
gelten, <i>be worth</i>	2. giltst	gilt	galt	gölte, gälte	gegolten	232
	3. gilt	[gelte]		[gülte]		
genesen, <i>get well</i>	....	....	genas	....	genesen	243
genießen, ¹ <i>enjoy</i>	....	....	genöß	....	genossen	241
geschehen, <i>happen</i>	3. geschieht	....	geschah	....	geschehen	243
gewinnen, WIN	....	....	gewann	gewönne gewänne	gewonnen	232
-geffen	s. vergeffen					
gießen, ² <i>pour</i>	....	....	göß	....	gegossen	241
-ginnen	s. beginnen					
gleichem, ³ <i>be LIKE</i>	....	....	glich	....	geglichen	246
gleißem, ⁴ <i>glitter</i>	....	....	gließ	....	geglossen	246
gleiten, ⁵ GLIDE	....	....	glitt	....	geglichen	246
glimmen, ⁶ GLEAM	....	....	glomm	....	geglossen	242
graben, <i>dig</i>	2. gräbst	....	grub	....	gegraben	249
	3. gräbt					

1. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. geneußt, geneuß.

2. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. geußt, geuß.

3. When trans. *to liken*, usually weak; but not in compds., as *berggleichen*, etc.

4. Usually weak. 5. Often weak. 6. Sometimes weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
greifen, <i>seize</i>	....	....	griff	....	gegriffen	246
haben, HAVE	2. hast 3. hat	....	hatte	hätte	gehabt	256a
halten,¹ HOLD	2. hältst 3. hält	....	hielt	....	gehalten	248
hängen,² HANG	2. hängst 3. hängt	....	hing (hieng)	(hienge)	gehangen	248
hauen,³ HEW	....	....	hieb	....	gehauen	248
heben, <i>lift</i>	....	....	hob hub	hübe höbe	gehoben	242b
hehlen,⁴ <i>conceal</i>	....	....	....	....	....	....
heißen, <i>be named</i>	2. heißest or heißt	....	hieße	....	geheißen	248
helfen, HELP	2. hilfst 3. hilft	hilf [helfe]	half	hülfe hälfe	geholfen	232
feifen,⁵ <i>scold</i>	....	....	fiß	....	gefißen	246
kennen, <i>know</i>	....	....	kante	kenn(e)te	gekant	254
kiesen,⁶ <i>choose</i>	....	....	....	....	....	....
klemmen,⁷ <i>press</i>	....	....	klomm	....	geklommen	242
kleben,⁸ CLEAVE	....	....	klob	....	gekloben	241
klimmen,⁹ <i>climb</i>	....	....	klomm	....	geklommen	242
klingen,¹⁰ <i>sound</i>	....	....	klang	[klinge]	geklingen	231

1. Impv. *halt!* as interj. *halt*.2. Sometimes written *hängen*. Sometimes also weak pres. to dist. fr. weak trans. *hängen*. 3. Rarely weak. 4. Weak, except in p. part. *verhöhlen*, as adj. or adv.5. Usually weak. 6. Now regularly weak; see *fären*. 7. Usually weak.8. Also weak. 9. Often weak. 10. Sometimes weak in sense of *resound* (*loud*).

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
kneifen , ¹ <i>pinch</i>	....	....	kniß	....	gekneifen	246
kommen , ² COME	2. (kömmt) 3. (kömmt)	....	kam	....	gekommen	232b
können , CAN	Pr. kann, kannst, kann; können, etc.	....	konnte	könnte	gekonnt	261
kreischen , ³ <i>scream</i>	....	....	[kriß]	....	[getrischen]	246
kriechen , ⁴ <i>creep</i>	....	....	krösch	....	gekrösch	241
küren , ⁵ CHOOSE	....	....	kor	....	gekoren	242a
laden , ⁶ LOAD	2. lädt 3. lädt	....	lud	....	geladen	249
lassen , LET	2. lässest, läßt 3. läßt	laß lasse	ließ	....	gelassen	248
laufen , <i>run</i>	2. läufft 3. läuft	....	lief	....	gelaufen	248
leiden , ⁷ <i>suffer</i>	....	....	litt	....	gelitten	246
leihen , <i>lend</i>	....	....	lieh	....	geliehen	247
lesen , <i>read</i>	2. lies(es)t 3. ließt	lies [lese]	las	....	gelesen	243
liegen , LIE	....	....	lag	....	gelegen	243
-lieren	<i>see verlieren</i>					
-lingen	<i>see gelingen</i>					
löfchen , ⁸ <i>go out</i> (<i>fire</i>)	2. lifsch(es)t 3. lifcht	lifsch	lofch	....	gelofchen	242a

1. Also weak. The form *kneipen* is regularly weak.

2. The *ö* forms in pres. are now rarely used. 3. Now regularly weak.

4. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. *treuschst, treuscht, treusch*.

5. From old *liesen*; also weak.

6. Often weak in pres., more rarely in past. So also *laden, to invite*, which was originally weak. 7. As trans. *to hurt*, and in derivs. *verleiden*, etc., weak.

8. Also weak, especially when trans. *to put out*; also in p. subj., to dist. from pres. indic.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
lügen , ¹ LIE	....	....	log	....	gelogen	242
mahlen , ² <i>grind</i>	....	....	[mahl]	....	gemahlen	
meiden , <i>shun</i>	....	....	mied	....	gemieden	247
melken , ³ MILK	2. mil ^l st 3. mil ^l t	mil ^l t	molk	....	gemolken	242
messen , <i>measure</i>	2. miß ^e st <i>or</i> miß ^t 3. miß ^t	miß [<i>messe</i>]	māß	....	gemessen	243
mißlingen	<i>see</i> gelingen					
mögen , MAY	Pr. mag, magst, mag; mögen, etc.	[<i>mög</i>]	mochte	mö ^{ch} te	gemocht	261
müssen , MUST	Pr. muß, mußt, muß; müssen, etc.	....	mußte	müß ^t e	gemußt	261
nehmen , <i>take</i>	2. nim ^m st 3. nim ^m t	nimm [<i>nehme</i>]	nahm	....	genommen	232 <i>a</i>
nennen , NAME	....	....	nannte	nenn(e) ^t e	genannt	254
-niesen	<i>see</i> genesen					
-nießen	<i>see</i> genießen					
pfeifen <i>whistle</i>	....	....	pfiß	....	gepfißen	246
pfelegen , ⁴ <i>cherish</i>	....	....	pflog [<i>pflog</i>]	....	gepflogen	242 <i>b</i>
preisen , ⁵ PRAISE	2. preis ^e (e) ^t 3. preis ^t	....	pries	....	gepriesen	247
quellen , ⁶ <i>gush out</i>	2. quill ^l st 3. quill ^l t	quill	quoll	....	gequollen	242

1. Old *liegen*; hence, poetic forms, pres. and impv. *lieg^lst*, *lieg^lt*, *lieg^l*.
2. Now regularly weak, except in perf. part.
3. Now usually weak throughout.
4. Usually weak; now always, except in this sense.
5. Originally weak; now very rarely so.
6. As trans. *to soak*, weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
rächen, ¹ <i>avenge</i>	[röch]	....	(geröchen)	241
raten, ² <i>advise</i>	2. rätst 3. rät	....	riet	....	geraten	248
reiben, RUB	rieb	....	gerieben	247
reißen, <i>tear</i>	riß	....	gerißen	246
reiten, RIDE	ritt	....	geritten	246
rennen, ³ RUN	rannte	renn(e)te	gerannt	254
riechen, ⁴ <i>smell</i>	röch	....	geröchen	241
ringen, ⁵ <i>wrestle</i>	rang [rung]	[rünge]	gerungen	231
rinnen, <i>flow</i>	raun	rönne ränne	geronnen	232
rufen, ⁶ <i>call</i>	rief	....	gerufen	248
salzen, ⁷ SALT	gesalzen	248
saufen, ⁸ <i>drink</i>	2. säufft 3. säuft	....	soff	....	gesoffen	242
saugen, ⁹ SUCK	sog	....	gesogen	242
schaffen, ¹⁰ <i>create</i>	schuf	....	geschaffen	249a
schallen, ¹¹ <i>sound</i>	scholl	....	geschollen	242b

1. Now regularly weak, except (rarely) in p. part. See riechen.

2. Sometimes weak pres., rätst, ratet.

3. Sometimes weak; so always in trans. *to melt* (iron, etc.).

4. See rächen. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. reuchst, reucht, reuch.

5. The trans. ringen (Ring) is weak; except, occasionally, umrang, umrungen.

6. Weak forms rarely. 7. Weak, except in perf. part. 8. Also weak in pres.

9. Also weak; trans. säugen, *to suckle*, always weak. 10. Strong only in this sense.

11. Now usually weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	55
-ſchehen	s. geſchehen					
ſcheiden, <i>part</i>	....	....	ſchied	....	geſchieden	247
ſcheinen, <i>seem</i>	....	....	ſchien	....	geſchienen	247
ſchelten, SCOLD	2. ſchiltſt 3. ſchilt	ſchilt [ſchelte]	ſchalt	ſchölte ſchälte	geſcholten	232
ſcheren, ¹ SHEAR	2. ſchierſt 3. ſchiert	ſchier	ſchor	....	geſchoren	242
ſchieben, SHOVE	....	....	ſchob	....	geſchoben	241
ſchießen, ² SHOOT	2. ſchießeſt <i>or</i> ſchießt	....	ſchöſſe	....	geſchoſſen	241
ſchinden, ³ <i>flay</i>	....	....	ſchund [ſchand]	[ſchände]	geſchunden	231a
ſchlafen, SLEEP	2. ſchläffſt 3. ſchläſt	....	ſchlieſ	....	geſchlafen	248
ſchlagen, <i>strike</i>	2. ſchlägſt 3. ſchlägt	....	ſchlug	....	geſchlagen	249
ſchleichen, <i>creep</i>	....	....	ſchlich	....	geſchlichen	246
ſchleifen, ⁴ <i>whet</i>	....	....	ſchliſſ	....	geſchliſſen	246
ſchleifen, SLIT	2. ſchleißeſt <i>or</i> ſchleißt	....	ſchliſſe	....	geſchliſſen	246
ſchliefen, ⁵ SLIP	....	....	ſchloſſ	....	geſchloſſen	241
ſchließen, ⁶ <i>ſhut</i>	2. ſchleißeſt <i>or</i> ſchleißt	....	ſchlöſſe	....	geſchloſſen	241
ſchlingen, SLING	....	....	ſchlang	....	geſchlungen	231

1. Often weak, except in p. part.

2. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. ſcheußeſt, ſcheußeſt.

3. Weak rarely, except in perf. part.

4. Often weak, in sense of *glide*; always as intrans. *to drag*.

5. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. ſchleuſſiſt, ſchleuſt, ſchleuſt.

6. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. ſchleußeſt, ſchleußeſt.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
ſchmeißen, <i>dash</i>	....	....	ſchmiß	....	geſchmiſſen	246
ſchmelzen,¹ MELT	2. ſchmilz(e)ſt 3. ſchmilzt	....	ſchmolz	....	geſchmolzen	242
ſchnauben²	s. ſchnieben					
ſchneiden, <i>cut</i>	....	....	ſchnitt	....	geſchnitten	242
ſchneien,⁸ SNOW	....	....	[ſchnie]	....	[geſchnie(e)n]	246
ſchnieben,⁴ SNORT	....	....	ſchnob	....	geſchnoben	242
ſchrauben,⁵ SCREW	....	....	ſchrob	....	geſchroben	242
ſchrecken,⁶ <i>be afraid</i>	2. ſchrickſt 3. ſchrickt	ſchrick	ſchraf	....	geſchrocken	232
ſchreiben, <i>write</i>	....	....	ſchrieb	....	geſchrieben	247
ſchreien, <i>cry</i>	....	....	ſchrie	....	geſchrien	247
ſchreiten, <i>stride</i>	....	....	ſchritt	....	geſchritten	246
ſchringen, <i>crack</i>	(<i>obsolete</i>)	....	ſchrund ſchrand	ſchründe	geſchrunnen	231
ſchroten,⁷ <i>clip</i>	....	....	....	....	geſchroten	248
ſchwären,⁸ <i>fester</i>	2. ſchwierſt 3. ſchwiert	....	ſchwor ſchwur	ſchwöre ſchwüre	geſchworen	242
ſchweigen,⁹ <i>be silent</i>	....	....	ſchwieg	....	geſchwiegen	247

1. Also weak ; as trans. properly (though not always) weak.

2. In this form now usually weak.

3. Usually and properly weak.

4. Now usually ſchnauben, with weak forms. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. ſchneußt, ſchneußt, ſchneuß.

5. Usually weak.

6. Usually erſchrecken, with also weak impv. erſchrecke. As trans. *frighten*, regularly weak.

7. Weak, except, sometimes, in p. part.

8. Has also weak pres. — no impv.

9. As trans. *silence*, weak.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	55
schwollen, ¹ SWELL	2. schwillst 3. schwillt	schwill [schwelle]	schwoll	....	geschwollen	242
schwimmen, SWIM	....	....	schwamm [schwomm]	schwömme schwämme	ge= schwommen	232
schwinden, <i>vanish</i>	....	....	schwand [schwund]	schwände [schwände]	geschwunden	231
schwingen, SWING	....	....	schwang [schwung]	schwänge [schwänge]	geschwungen	231
schwören, SWEAR	....	....	schwor schwur	schwüre schwöre	geschworen	242
sehen, ² SEE	2. siehst 3. sieht	sieh(e) [siehe]	sah	....	gesehen	243
sein, <i>be</i>	<i>see para- digm (181)</i>	....	....	....	....	256b
senden, ³ SEND	....	....	sandte	sendete	gesandt	254
sieden, ⁴ <i>boil</i>	....	....	sott	....	gesotten	241
singen, SING	....	....	sang	....	gesungen	231
sinken, SINK	....	....	sank	....	gesunken	231
sinnen, ⁵ <i>think</i>	....	....	sann	sönne sänne	gesonnen	232
sitzen, SIT	2. sitzt <i>or</i> sitzt	....	sāẏ	....	gesessen	243a
sollen, SHALL	Pr. soll, sollst, soll; sollen, etc.	....	sollte	sollte	gesollt	261
spalten, ⁶ SPLIT	....	....	....	....	gespalten	248

1. As trans. weak ; also, rarely, as intrans., except in p. part.
2. The impv. siehe usually stands alone, or as interjection.
3. Also weak throughout.
4. Usually weak.
5. Rarely weak — chiefly in p. part. gesinnt, as adj.
6. Weak, except in p. part.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
speien, ¹ SPIT	....	....	spie	....	gespien	247
spinnen, SPIN	....	....	spann	spönne spänne	gesponnen	232
spleißē, ² SPLIT	2. spleißest or spleißt	....	spliḡ	....	gespliffen	246
sprechen, SPEAK	2. sprichst 3. spricht	sprich [spreche]	sprach	....	gesprochen	232
sprießen, ³ SPROUT	2. sprießest or sprießt	....	spröḡ	....	gesproffen	241
springen, SPRING	....	....	sprang	....	gesprungen	231
stechen, <i>prick</i>	2. stichst 3. sticht	stich	stach	....	gestochen	232
stechen, ⁴ STICK	2. stichst 3. stickt	....	stak	....	[gestochen]	232
stehen, STAND	....	....	staud [stund]	stände stünde	gestanden	249 (note)
stehlen, STEAL	2. stiehlst 3. stiehlt	stiehl [stehle]	stahl [stohl]	stöhle stähle	gestohlen	232
steigen, <i>mount</i>	....	....	stieg	....	gestiegen	247
sterben, <i>die</i>	2. stirbst 3. stirbt	stirb [sterbe]	starb	stürbe stärbe	gestorben	232
stieben, ⁵ <i>scatter</i>	....	....	stob	....	gestoben	241
stinken, STINK	....	....	stant	stänke stünke	gestunken	231
stoßen, <i>push</i>	2. stöß(ef)t 3. stößt	....	stieḡ	....	gestoßen	248
streichen, STROKE	....	....	strich	....	gestrichen	246

1. Also weak throughout.

2. Also weak — and now rare.

3. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. spreußt, spreuß.

4. Usually weak throughout.

5. Also weak. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. steußt, steußt, steuß.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
streiten, STRIVE	....	....	stritt	....	gestritten	246
tragen, <i>carry</i>	2. trägt 3. trägt	....	trug	....	getragen	249
treffen, <i>hit</i>	2. trifft 3. trifft	triff [treffe]	traf	....	getroffen	232 ^d
treiben, DRIVE	....	....	trieb	....	getrieben	247
treten, <i>step</i>	2. trittft 3. tritt	tritt [trete]	trat	....	getreten	243 ^a
triefen,¹ DRIP	....	....	troff	....	getroffen	241
trinken, DRINK	....	....	trank	....	getrunken	231
trügen,² <i>cheat</i>	....	....	trog	....	getrogen	242 ^a
tun,³ DO	Pr. tue, tust, tut; tun, etc.	tu(e)	tat	....	getan	255
verderben, <i>spoil</i>	2. verdirbst 3. verdirbt	verdirb	verdarb	verdürbe [verdürbe]	verdorben	232
verdrießen⁴ <i>vex</i>	2. verdrießest or verdrießt	....	verdröß	....	verdroffen	241
vergessen, FORGET	2. vergiffest, or vergißt 3. vergißt	bergiß [vergeffe]	vergäh	....	vergeffen	243
verlieren,⁵ <i>lose</i>	....	....	verlor	....	verloren	241
wachsen,⁶ <i>grow</i>	2. wächs(ef)t 3. wächst	....	wuchß	....	gewachsen	249

1. Now usually weak. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. treufft, treuft, treuf.

2. Old *triegen*; hence old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. treugft, treugt, treug.

3. Irregular. See paradigm (255). In popular phrase *tüt* is often used for *tat*, as *auxil.* with *infin.* Impv. *tu* chiefly colloquial.

4. Old (poetic) forms in pres. and impv. verdreufft, verdreuff.

5. Old form, *verließen*; hence still occasionally the p. part. *verlesen*.

6. Rarely weak in pres.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
wägen , ¹ WEIGH	<i>see</i> wiegen	....	....	....	....	242
waschen , ² WASH	2. wäscht(ef)t 3. wäscht	....	wusch	....	gewaschen	249
weben , ³ WEAVE	....	....	wob	....	gewoben	242 <i>b</i>
-wegen	<i>see</i> bewegen					
weichen , ⁴ <i>yield</i>	....	....	wich	....	gewichen	246
weisen , <i>show</i>	....	....	wies	....	gewiesen	247
wenden , ⁵ <i>turn</i>	....	....	wandte	wendete	gewandt	254
werben , <i>sue</i>	2. wirbst 3. wirbt	wirb [werbe]	warb	würbe wärbe	geworben	232
werden , ⁶ <i>become</i>	2. wirst 3. wird	werbe	wurde ward	würde	geworden worden	256 <i>c</i>
werfen , <i>throw</i>	2. wirfst 3. wirft	wirf [werfe]	warf	würfe wärfe	geworfen	232
wiegen , ⁷ WEIGH	....	....	wog	....	gewogen	241
winden , WIND	....	....	wand	....	gewunden	231
-winnen	<i>see</i> gewinnen					
wirren , ⁸ <i>tangle</i>	....	....	....	....	(geworren)	242
wissen , <i>know</i>	Pr. weiß, weißt, weiß; wissen, etc.	. .	wußte	wüßte	gewußt	254

1. Usually *wiegen*; both often weak; *wägen* usually transitive.

2. Rarely weak in pres.

3. Usually weak — always, except in sense of *weave*.

4. Always weak in sense of *soften* (from adj. *weich*).

5. Also weak throughout.

6. *ward* is used only in the singular; *worden* only as passive auxiliary, or poetically.

7. See *wägen*. The two are equivalent forms, *wiegen* more usual.

8. Weak, except, rarely, in p. part.; usually as adj.

INFIN.	2, 3 SING. PR.	2 SING. IMPV.	P. INDIC.	P. SUBJ.	P. PART.	§§
wollen, WILL	Pr. will, willst, will; wollen, etc.	wolle	wollte	wollte	gewollt	261
ziehen, <i>accuse</i>	....	....	zieh	....	geziehen	247
ziehen, ¹ <i>draw</i>	....	....	zog	....	gezogen	241
zwingen, <i>force</i>	....	....	zwang	....	gezwungen	231

1. Old (poetic) forms, pres. and impv. ꝥeuchst, ꝥeuchst, ꝥeuch.

GENERAL REMARK. — The classification of strong verbs (§ 228, etc. — and especially the forms of vowel sequence (§ 225) — will be found helpful for practice. Other classifications might also be given (as in some other grammars). But, after all, no classification can relieve the necessity of learning most of the verbs *as individuals*. How this may best be done is a question of method, for each teacher to decide. But at any rate, the habit should early be formed of verifying the conjugation of each verb as met with, and of consulting the Alphabetical List in all cases of doubt. In this way the most important verbs, which are of frequent use, may be soon learned without painful effort.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

The books of this series are printed according to the official rules now generally followed in Germany. These rules, and the words to which they apply, are fully given in a pamphlet entitled, „Regeln für die deutsche Rechtschreibung, nebst Wörterverzeichnis“ (latest ed. Berlin, 1902) which can be had at small cost. But for the immediate guidance of students who may have to use dictionaries, etc., printed after the old orthography, the following selection of the most important changes is given for reference. —

I. VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

The modified capitals—even in Roman type—always *Ä, Ö, Ü*; *Å, Ö, Ü*—not *Ae, De*, etc.

e, not *ä*, in *echt, Grenze, Greuel, Hering, stets, dachte, leugnen*, and some others.

i, not *ie*, in *sing, ging, hing*; also *gib, gibst, gibt*; but: —

ie, not *i*, in verbs like *studieren*, etc.

Single vowel for double vowel in: —

<i>bar</i> (<i>Barſchaft</i>),	<i>Schaf</i> ,
<i>Herd</i> ,	<i>Schar</i> ,
<i>Herde</i> ,	<i>Schoß</i> ,
<i>Loß</i> (<i>loſen</i>),	<i>Star</i> ,
<i>Loſung</i> ,	<i>Wage</i> ,
<i>Maß</i> ,	<i>Ware</i> , etc. — though in some other words the double vowel is retained.

The following are distinguished by spelling: —

<i>Fiber, fibre.</i>	<i>Fieber, fever.</i>
<i>Geißel, hostage.</i>	<i>Geißel, scourge.</i>

ORTHOGRAPHY.

Lid, <i>lid.</i>	Lied, <i>song.</i>
gräulich, <i>grayish.</i>	greulich, <i>terrible.</i>
Mähre, <i>mare.</i>	Märe, <i>story.</i>
Mine, <i>mine.</i>	Miene, <i>mien.</i>
Stil, <i>style.</i>	Stiel, <i>handle.</i>

and others.

II. CONSONANTS.

t not **th**, in German words*; as:

- a) *Initial*, Tau, tauen, Teil, Tier, teuer, verteidigen, Turm, tun, Tat, Tor, etc.
- b) In the suffix **-tum**: Eigentum, Reichthum, etc.
- c) *Final or medial*, as: Mut, Armut, Not, rot, raten, Atem, mieten, Wirt, etc.

f, not **ph**, in all German words.

s, not **ß**, in the pronoun compounds: deswegen, deshalb, weshalb, indes, etc. And in the suffix **-nis** (but plural **-nisse**): Gleichnis, Gleichnisse, etc.

t, not **dt**, in Brot, Ernte, Schwert, tot (adj.), töten, etc.

f for **c** in many foreign words; as: Kanon, korrekt, konkret Konjunktion, kurfür, etc.

z for **c** in many foreign words; as: Offizier, Prozeß, Konzert, etc.; while in many others, not so fully naturalized, **c** is retained; as: Dozent, social, etc.

III. CAPITALS.

The use of capitals is limited, more closely than heretofore, to nouns and words used strictly as nouns (§ 65).

* See § 42. Till recently, **th** was retained before a long single vowel; as, Thun, That, Thor; and was formerly used much more largely, as in all the examples here cited. It is now restricted to foreign words and proper names.

VOCABULARIES.

EXPLANATORY.

THESE Vocabularies, being part of a Grammar, are intended not to take the place of, but to assist — and, indeed, compel — grammar study. Hence only such help is given as the student ought to need. Thus, inflections are indicated only where they may not be known under the *most general* rules; for example, in nouns: the plural of *Apfel*, *Arm*, but not of *Bäder*, *Beg**, etc.; and such indications are not unnecessarily repeated, as in *Feiertag*, etc. (but given in *Bahnhof*, etc., because *Hof* does not occur). Special forms, as *Antwort*, *Band*, etc., are, however, not only given, but referred to the appropriate §§. Also, no more indication is given than is necessary; as, in general, where the plural sufficiently indicates the genitive, etc.

In verbs all peculiarities are referred to the Alphabetical List, p. 307, etc. *S* stands for *strong verbs*; *M* for *mixed verbs* (§ 253); the auxiliary *sein* is indicated by *f*. Separable compounds are indicated by the double hyphen (=); inseparable are simply written as one word. In special cases reference is made to the §.

Accents are indicated only when foreign or otherwise doubtful. Important points of syntax are indicated by references. The parts of speech are named only in case of double uses of the same word, or when the English equivalent might possibly be ambiguous.

Compounds (except verbs), and sometimes obvious derivatives, are grouped under a common title-word. Adverbs, unless of special form, are included under the adjectives. Separable prefixes are classed as adverbs.

The abbreviations employed are such as are generally understood. Outside of these, the straight line — indicates the title form unchanged, as *Achtel* —, for *Achtel*; *Arm*, —e, for *Arme*, etc.; while ^u indicates vowel modification, as *Ärzt*, ^ue, for *Ärzte*, etc.; and similarly in compounds, as *acht*, — *zēhn*, for *achtzēhn*, etc. The ending indicated after nouns is always that of the plural, unless otherwise stated; after adjectives ^u indicates *strong* comparison, as, *ält*, ^u, for *älter*, etc. All numerical references are to §§ of the grammar.

For special notes on nouns and on prepositions, see Appendix p. 367, etc.

* The following plurals are assumed as regular, all departures from which are recorded: *Monosyllables*: masculines, *pl.* —e. *Polysyllables*: masculines and neuters of class I, *pl.* —; all others, *pl.* —e (except masculines in —e, *pl.* —n); feminines, *pl.* —(e)n. Modification of vowel is always recorded.

GERMAN = ENGLISH.

A.

ab, off, from, away, down.
 Abend, *m.*, -e, evening, the west;
 des —s, or abends, *adv.*, evenings,
 in the evening (*indef.*).
 aber, but, however.
 ab-fahren, *S.*, *f.*, to drive off, de-
 part.
 ab-gehen, *S.*, *f.*, to go off, leave;
 result.
 ab-reisen, *f.*, to start off, set out
 (on a journey).
 ab-schreiben, *S.*, to write off, copy.
 Abt, *m.*, ^ue, abbot.
 acht, eight; —zehn, eighteen; —zig,
 eighty; der —(t)e, the eighth.
 Achtel, *n.*, —, eighth (part).
 achten, 212, to regard, esteem.
 addie'ren, 215, to add.
 Akademie', *f.*, academy.
 all, 460, all, every; alles, everything,
 everybody; aller—, *gen. pl. as sup.*
pref., allerheiligst, most holy, etc.
 allein', alone; *conj.*, but, only.
 Alpen, *pl.*, Alps.
 als, *adv.*, as, than; *conj.*, as, when
 (*def. past*); — wenn, ob, as if.
 alt, ^u, old; die Alten, (*often*) the an-
 cients.
 Alter, *n.*, age, old age.
 altern, 214, to age, grow old.
 am, for an dem.

Amerika'ner, *m.*, (an) American.
 an, *adv.*, on; *prep. (dat.)*, near, by,
 on (of dates); (*acc.*), to, towards,
 against; denken an or von, p. 134.
 ander, other; second; —halb, one
 and a half, 311.
 an-erkennen, *M.*, 289, to acknowl-
 edge.
 Anfang, *m.*, ^ue, beginning; anfangs
 (*adv.*), at first.
 an-fangen, *S.*, to begin.
 angenehm, acceptable, agreeable.
 an-kommen, *S.*, *f.*, to arrive; — auf,
impers. w. acc., to depend on,
 matter.
 an-nehmen, *S.*, to accept, assume:
reflex., to take interest in (*gen.*).
 Antwort, *f.*, -en, 122, answer.
 antworten, 212, to answer (*dat.*).
 anziehen, *S.*, to draw on, attract;
intr. f., to draw near, approach;
reflex., to dress (one's self).
 Apfel, *m.*, ^u, apple.
 Appetit', *m.*, -e, appetite.
 April', *m.*, *gen.* -s, April.
 Arbeit, *f.*, work, labor; —er, *m.*, la-
 borer; —smann, *pl.* —sleute, work-
 man, workpeople, 425.
 arbeiten, to work.
 ärgern, 214, to vex, anger; *reflex.*,
 to be angry.
 Arm, *m.*, -e, arm (limb).
 arm, ^u, poor.

artig, kind, good, polite.

Arzt, *m.*, ^ue, physician.

Asien, *n.*, Asia.

Ast, *m.*, ^ue, bough, branch.

auch, also, even, 485; *wer, was* —, whoever, whatever; *wenn, ob* —, even if, although, 486.

auf, *adv.*, up, open; *prep. (dat.)*, on, upon, at; (*acc.*), upon, to, towards; for (time); after, according to; — *daß*, in order that.

auf-er-ste-hen, *S.*, *ſ.*, 289, to rise (from the dead).

Aufgabe, *f.*, exercise, task.

auf-ge-hen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to go up, rise.

auf-he-ben, *S.*, to lift up, raise, put away.

auf-ste-hen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to stand up, rise (from bed).

Auge, *n.*, *gen.* -*ſ*, *pl.* -*n*, eye; — *n*-*blic*, *m.*, moment.

August, *m.*, *gen.* -*ſ*, August.

aus, *adv.*, out, forth, throughout; *prep. (dat.)*, out of, from, by, on account of.

aus-ge-ben, *S.*, to give out, spend; *reflex.*, to give one's self out (*für*).

aus-ge-hen, *S.*, to go out, proceed, end.

aus-ru-hen, to rest, repose.

aus-se-hen, *S.*, to look, seem; *as noun*, look, appearance.

au-ßer, *dat.*, outside of, without, except; — *dem*, *adv.*, besides.

aus-zie-hen, *S.*, to draw out, pull off; *intr. ſ.*, to move out, march out; *reflex.*, to undress (one's self).

B.

baken, *S.*, to bake.

Bäcker, *m.*, baker.

Bad, *n.*, ^ue, bath.

baden, 212, to bathe.

Bahnhof, *m.*, *comp.* ^ue, station (of railway).

bald, soon, now; *ſo* —, as soon (as).

Band, *n.*, ^ue, ribbon; -*e*, bond; *m.*, ^ue, volume, 424, 426.

bangen, *impers. w. dat.*: *mir bangt*, I feel afraid.

Bank, *f.*, ^ue, bench; -*en*, bank (commercial, 424).

Bauer, *m.*, *gen.* -*ſ*, *pl.* -*n*, peasant, farmer.

Baum, *m.*, ^ue, tree.

Bäumchen, **Bäumlein**, *n.*, *dim.*, little tree.

beantworten, 212, to answer, reply to (*acc.*).

bedecken, to cover.

be-finden, *S.*, *reflex.*, to find one's self, do (in health).

begleiten, 212, to attend, accompany.

bei, *adv.*, by, near; *prep. (dat.)*, by, near, at, in, with, among, at the house of, on condition of.

bei-ste-hen, *S.*, to stand by, help (*dat.*).

bei-ßen, *S.*, to bite.

bekannt, *part. adj.*, known; acquaintance; *as noun*, (an) acquaintance.

belagern, 214, to besiege.

benachrichtigen, to inform.

berei-sen, 213, to travel through.

berei-ts, *adv. gen.*, already.

Berg, *m.*, mountain. [mous.

berühmt, *part. adj.*, celebrated, fa-

bese-hen, *S.*, to look at, inspect.

Beforgnis, *f.*, -*ſſe*, care, apprehension.

besser, **best**, *irr. comp. and sup.* gut, better, best.

besuchen, to visit.
 betreffen, *S.*, to befall, concern.
 betrügen, *S.*, to deceive, cheat.
 Bett, *n.*, *gen.* -es, *pl.* -en or -e, 105,
 bed.
 bewegen, *S.*, to induce; *weak*: to
 move, excite.
 bewußt, conscious (of, *gen.*).
 bezahlen, to pay.
 Bibliothek, *f.*, library.
 biegen, *S.*, to bend.
 bieten, *S.*, to offer, bid.
 binden, *S.*, to bind.
 binnen, (*dat.*), within (time).
 bis, *adv.*, so far as; *prep.* (*acc.*), up
 to, till; *conj.* (*for* bis daß), until.
 Bischof, *m.*, ^{er}, bishop.
 bitten, *S.*, to beg, pray. Bitte, *I*
 beg, please.
 Blatt, *n.*, ^{er}, leaf, sheet (of paper).
 blau, blue. bläulich, bluish.
 bleiben, *S.*, [., to continue, remain;
 stehen —, to stop.
 blind, blind.
 Blume, *f.*, flower.
 Boot, *n.*, -e or Böte, 105, boat.
 Börse, *f.*, purse, Bourse.
 böse, bad, angry.
 Bote, *m.*, messenger.
 Botschaft, *f.*, message.
 Brauntwein, *m. comp.*, brandy.
 braten, *S.*, to roast.
 Braten, *m.*, —, roast (meat).
 brauchen, to use, need (*rarely gen.*).
 braun, brown.
 Braut, *f.*, ^e, bride.
 brechen, *S.*, to break.
 breit, broad.
 brennen, *M.*, to burn.
 Brief, *m.*, letter.
 bringen, *M.*, to bring.

Brot, *n.*, -e, bread.
 Brücke, *f.*, bridge.
 Bruder, *m.*, ^{er}, brother.
 Buch, *n.*, ^{er}, book; —binder, *m.*,
 book-binder.
 bunt, variegated, gay.

C (*see* K).

Chemie, *f.*, chemistry.
 Christ (Christus, 113), *m.*, Christ.
 Christ, *m.*, -en, Christian; —entum,
n., Christianity.

D.

da, *adv. dem.*, there, then; *conj. rel.*,
 when, as, since, 486; *in comp. be-*
fore vowels dar, 401.
 Dach, *n.*, ^{er}, roof.
 dadurch, 184, thereby; through, by
 it or them.
 dagegen, 184, against it or them;
 on the contrary.
 Dame, *f.*, lady.
 damit, *adv.*, therewith; with it or
 them, 184; *conj.*, in order that,
 468; — sagen, to mean.
 Dampfboot, *n. comp.*, steamboat.
 Dank, *m.*, thanks; (*no pl.*).
 danken, to thank (*dat.*).
 dann, then (time).
 dar, *for* da *in comp. before vowels.*
 darauf, 184, thereupon; upon, to,
 after—it or them; — daß, in
 order that.
 daraus, 184, thereout; out of it or
 them, thence.
 darf, *pres. dürfen.*
 darum, 184, thereabout; around, for
 it or them, therefore, on that ac-
 count; — daß, in order that, 468.

dafelbft, *comp.* da, in that same place, there.

daß, *conj.*, that, so that, in order that.

davon, 184, therefrom, thereof; of, by it or them; away, off.

dazu, 184, thereto; to it or them; in addition; for that purpose.

dein, *poss. adj.*, thy, your; *gen. pers.* (for *deiner*), of thee, of you; —*er*, *poss. pron.*, thine, yours; *gen. pers.*, of thee, of you, 186.

denken, *M.*, to think; — of (p. 134).

denn, *conj.*, then, for.

der, *art.*, the; *dem.*, that, that one, he; *rel.*, who, which, that, 234.

derjenige, 208, that one, he (who).

derselbe, 208, the same; as substitute for *personal*, etc., 457.

deshalb, *comp.*, on that account, therefore, 456.

desto, *correl.*, je —, 334, so much the (more).

deutlich, plain, clear.

deutsch, German; as *noun*, (a) German; —*land*, *n.*, Germany.

dicht, tight, close.

Dieb, *m.*, thief.

diener, to serve (*dat.*).

Diener, *m.*, servant; —*in*, *f.*, —*nen*, woman-servant.

dies, for *dieses*.

dieser, *dem.*, this, this one; the latter; he, etc., 457.

Ding, *n.*, —*e*, thing.

direkt, direct.

dividie' ren, 215, to divide.

doch, though, yet, however, surely, at any rate, please, 485.

Doktor, *m.*, *gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*en*, 117, doctor.

Dom, *m.*, —*e*, dome, cathedral.

donnern, 214, to thunder.

Dorf, *n.*, —*er*, village; —*chaft*, *f.*, village community.

Dorn, *m.*, *gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*er* or —*e* or —*en*, 105, thorn.

dort, there; —*ig*, *adj.*, of there.

drei, three; —*zehn*, thirteen; —*ßig*, thirty.

dritt, third; —*halb*, two and a half.

drucken, to print.

du, thou, you, 186.

durch, *adv.* (as *pref.*, 287), through, throughout; *prep.* (*acc.*), through, throughout, by, by means of.

durchziehen, *S.*, *sep.*, to draw through; *insep.*, to pass through, 287.

dürfen, 261, *modal*, to be allowed, may, need, etc. 472.

©.

eben, even, level; *adv.*, just, exactly.

Ecke, *f.*, corner.

edel, noble, 139.

Efeu (*old* *Ephcu*), *m.*, *gen.* —*s*, ivy.

ehren, to honor.

Eigentum, *n.*, property.

Eile, *f.*, haste, hurry.

ein, *indef. art.*, an, a; *num.*, one; *pron.* —*er*, one, some one; —*s*, one.

ein-, *adv. form of in*, as *prefix*.

einander, *comp. indecl.*, one another, each other. [same.

einerlei, *indecl.*, of one kind, all the

einige, *pl.*, some, several, a few.

ein-laden, *S.*, to invite.

Einladung, *f.*, invitation.

eins (in counting), see *ein*.

ein-ziehen, *S.*, *tr.*, to draw in; *intr.* †, to move in, march in.

Eis, *n.*, ice; —*kalt*, ice-cold.
Eisen, *n.*, iron.
eisern, of iron, iron.
elf (*eif*), eleven.
Eltern, *pl.*, parents.
empfehlen, *S.*, to recommend;
reflex., to send one's compliments
 (to, *dat.*).
Ende, *n.*, *gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*n*, end.
endlich, final, last; *usually adv.*;
 finally, at last.
Engländer, *m.*, Englishman.
englisch, English.
Enkel, *m.*, grandson.
entlang, *adv.*, along; *as prep. (acc.)*.
entweder, either.
er, *she*, *es*, he, she, it.
Erde, *f.*, earth; *auf Erden*, 106.
erfinden, *S.*, to find out, invent.
erfrischen, 213, to refresh.
erhalten, *S.*, to obtain, receive; keep,
 sustain.
erlöschen, *S.*, *intr.*, *f.*, to go out; (a
 light). [at.
erreichen, to reach to, attain, arrive
erschrecken, *S.*, to be frightened; *tr.*
weak: to frighten.
erst, *ord. num.*, first; *der* —*ere*, the
 former (157); *adv.*, first, only,
 just.
erwarten, 212, to await, expect.
erziehen, *S.*, to bring up, train, edu-
 cate.
es, it, there, 453.
essen, *S.*, to eat.
etwas, something, anything.
Europa, *n. gen.* —*s*, Europe.
Evange'lium, *n. gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*ien*,
 118, gospel.
Exercitium, *n. gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*ien*, 118,
 exercise.

F.

fahren, *S.*, *f.*, to drive, ride (in a car-
 riage); *spazieren* —, to take a drive.
fallen, *S.*, *f.*, to fall. [rupt.
fallie'ren, 215, to fail, become bank-
fechten, *S.*, to fight.
Federmesser, *n. comp.*, penknife.
fehlen, to fail, lack, miss; *usually*
impers., to ail (*dat. obj.*).
Fehler, *m.*, fault, mistake.
Feiertag, *m. comp.*, holiday.
Feind, *m.*, enemy; *as adj. pred. for* :
feindlich, hostile, 448.
Feld, *n.*, —*er*, field; —*herr*, *m.*, com-
 mander, general.
Fels or **Felsen**, *m.*, *gen.* —*en* or —*ens*,
pl. —*en*, 101, rock.
Fenster, *n.*, window.
Fertigkeit, *f.*, readiness, skill.
fett, fat.
Feuer, *n.*, fire; —*versicherung*, *f.*, fire
 insurance.
finden, *S.*, to find.
Finger, *m.*, finger.
Fisch, *m.*, fish.
Flamme, *f.*, flame.
Flasche, *f.*, flask, bottle.
Fleisch, *n.*, flesh, meat.
fleißig, industrious, diligent.
fliegen, *S.*, to fly (*aux.*, 298).
fliehen, *S.*, *f.*, to flee.
Flügel, *m.*, wing.
Fluß, *m.*, *flie*, river.
folgen, *f.*, to follow (*dat.*).
Fossil', *n.*, *gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*ien*, 119,
 fossil.
Frage, *f.*, question.
fragen, to ask, inquire.
Frankreich, *n.*, France.
Franzo'se, *m.*, Frenchman.

franzö'sisch, French; *as noun, n.*, French (language).
 Frau, *f.*, -en, woman, wife; *in address*, Mrs.
 Fräulein, *n. dim.*, young lady, miss, *in address*, Miss.
 frei, free; *in comp.*, 379, —sprechen, to acquit (of, *gen.*).
 freilich, *adv.*, indeed, truly.
 Freitag, *m. comp.*, Friday.
 fremd, foreign, strange; *as noun*, foreigner, stranger; *f.*, die —e, foreign parts.
 fressen, *S.*, to eat (*used of beasts*).
 Freude, *f.*, joy, 106.
 freuen, to make glad; *usually reflex.*, to be glad, rejoice (*gen.*).
 Freund, *m.*, friend; —in, *f.*, -nen, friend (female). [peace.
 Friede(n), *m.*, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99,
 Friedrich, *m.*, Frederick.
 frieren, *S.*, to freeze; *impers.*, to be cold (*acc. obj.*, 291).
 frisch, fresh.
 froh, glad, joyous.
 Frucht, *f.*, "e, fruit.
 früh, early; *in early morning*.
 Frühling, *m.*, spring (season).
 führen, to lead, conduct, drive, carry (on).
 fünf, five. [spark.
 Funte(n), *m.*, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99,
 für, (*acc.*), for, instead of.
 Fürst, *m.*, -en, prince.
 Fürstentum, *n.*, -tümer, principality.
 Fuß, *m.*, "e, foot, 312.

G.

galoppie'ren, 215, to gallop.
 Gans, *f.*, "e, goose.

ganz, all, whole, entire, 144; *adv.*, quite, very.
 Garten, *m.*, "e, garden.
 Gast, *m.*, "e, guest; —hof, *m.*, "e, hotel, inn.
 gebären, *S.*, to bear, bring forth.
 geben, *S.*, to give; es gibt, *impers.*, there is, there are, 294.
 Gebirge, *n.*, —, mountain range, mountains.
 geboren, *p. p.* gebären, *tr.*, borne; *intr.* *as adj.*, born.
 Gedanke(n), *m.*, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99, thought.
 Geduld, *f.*, patience.
 Gefahr, *f.*, -en, danger, risk.
 gefallen, *S.*, to please (*dat.*); sich — lassen, to submit to.
 Gefallen, *m.*, pleasure; mir zu — for my sake.
 gefälligt, *sup. adv.*, if you please.
 ge'gen (*acc.*), against, towards, about (number), *in comparison with*, for.
 Ge'gend, *f.*, neighborhood.
 gegenü'ber, *adv.*, and *prep.* (*dat.*, 280), over against, opposite to.
 gehen, *S.*, †, to go, walk, fare; spa- zieren —, to take a walk.
 gelb, yellow.
 Geld, *n.*, money; —summe, *f.*, sum of money.
 gelegen, *p. p.* liegen, situated; *as adj.*, convenient.
 gelingen, *S.*, †, *impers.* (*dat.*, 292), to turn out, succeed.
 Gemälde, *n.*, —, painting.
 genesen, *S.*, †, to recover, get well.
 Genf, *n.*, Geneva.
 genießen, *S.*, to enjoy (*sometimes gen.*).

genug, *indecl.*, enough.
 gerade, straight, direct; *usually adv.*, exactly, just.
 geraten, *S.*, *ſ.*, to turn out; *also p. p.* raten.
 gern, 485, willingly, with pleasure.
 geschehen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to happen, occur, be done.
 Gesellschaft, *f.*, company.
 Gesetz, *n.*, -e, law.
 gestern, yesterday.
 gewinnen, *S.*, to win.
 gewogen, *p. p.* wiegen; *as adj.*, inclined to, favorable (*dat.*).
 gießen, *S.*, to pour.
 Glas, *n.*, ^{er}, glass.
 glauben, to believe (*dat. pers.*, *acc. thing*, 437).
 Glaube(n), *m.*, *gen.* -nē, *pl.* -n, 99, faith, belief.
 gleichen, *S.*, to be like, resemble (*dat.*).
 Glück, *n.*, happiness, fortune.
 glücklich, happy, fortunate.
 golden, golden, (of) gold.
 Gott, *m.*, ^{er}, god; God; — lob, (*interj.*), praise God!
 graben, *S.*, to dig.
 Graf, *m.*, -en, 'count.
 Gramma'tik, *f.*, grammar.
 groß, größer, größt, great, large, tall.
 grün, green.
 gut, besser, best, good; *as adv.*, well.
 Gut, *n.*, ^{er}, property, estate; *pl.*, goods.
 Güte, *f.*, goodness, kindness.

S.

Saar, *n.*, -e, (a) hair; *pl.* (the) hair.
 haben, 256, to have (*as auxil.*, 296).

hageln, to hail.
 halb, half, 144; — acht, half past seven, *etc.*
 -halb, *in comp.*, as deshalb, for:
 halben, halber, (*gen.* 280), on account of, for the sake of; *meinest* —, *etc.* 452, b.
 Hälfte, *f.*, half.
 halten, *S.*, *tr.*, to hold, keep, contain; (*jür*) to hold for, consider; *intr.*, to hold on, halt, last.
 Hand, *f.*, ^e, hand.
 handeln, 214, to act, deal, trade.
 Häschen, *n. dim.*, little hare.
 Hase, *m.*, hare.
 Haus, *n.*, ^{er}, house, home.
 heben, *S.*, to heave, lift, raise.
 Heft, *n.*, -e, copy-book, note-book.
 heilig, holy.
 Heinrich, *m.*, Henry.
 heiß, hot.
 heißen, *S.*, *tr.*, to bid, call; *usually intr.*, to be called; to mean.
 heiter, cheerful.
 Held, *m.*, -en, hero.
 helfen, *S.*, to help (*dat.*).
 Hemd, *n.*, *gen.* -es, *pl.* -en, shirt.
 her, hither, along; ago; *as pref. in comp.* 377, 484.
 heraus-kommen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to come out, come forth, result.
 Herbst, *m.*, autumn, fall.
 Herr, *m.*, *gen.* -n, *pl.* -en, master, lord, gentleman; sir, Mr. (428); *mein* —, sir; *pl.* gentlemen.
 Herrin, *f.*, -nen, lady, mistress.
 herrlich, noble, glorious.
 herunter-fallen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to fall down.
 Herz, *n.*, *gen.* -ens, *pl.* -en, 102, heart.
 heute, to-day; — abend, this even-

ing; — zu Tage, at the present day.

hier, here; *in comp.*, — mit, herewith. with this, 401.

Himmel, *m.*, heaven, sky.

hin, hence, away, off (see her).

hinten, *adv.*, behind.

hinter, *adv.* (*as pref.*, 287), behind, back: *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), behind.

hintergehen, *S.*, *sep. f.*, to go behind; *insep.*, to deceive (287).

Hirt, *m.*, —en, shepherd.

hoch, höher, höchst, *before e*, hoch, high.

hoffen, to hope.

Holz, *n.*, wood.

hören, to hear.

Hund, *m.*, —e, dog.

hundert, (a) hundred.

Hut, *m.*, ^ue, hat.

Hütte, *f.*, hut, cottage.

I.

ich, I.

ihr, her, their; Ihr, your, 188.

ihrig (*ber — e*), hers, theirs; Ihrig, yours, 188.

in, *for in dem*.

immer, always, ever; *wer . . . immer*, whoever.

in, *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), in; into.

Infanterie', *f.*, infantry.

inner, 158, inner, interior.

inß, *for in daß*.

Insekt', *n.*, *gen.* —es, *pl.* —en, insect.

irren, to wander, err; *reflex.*, to be mistaken.

J.

ja, yes, indeed, 485.

Jäger, *m.*, hunter, sportsman.

Jahr, *n.*, —e, year; —eszeit, *f.*, time of the year, season.

jammern, 214, to lament, mourn; *impers. (acc.)*, it grieves.

je, ever; *correl.*, je . . . desto, 334 the (more) . . . the (more).

jeder, each, every; ein —, every one.

jedermann, 244, everybody.

jemand, 244, somebody.

jener, that, that one; the former.

jenseit(s), (*gen.* 280), on that side of, beyond.

jetzig, of now, present (time).

jetzt, now.

jung, ^u, young.

Jüngling, *m.*, youth, young man.

K.

Kahn, *m.*, ^ue, boat.

Kaiser, *m.*, emperor; —in, —nen, empress.

kalt, ^u, cold.

Kaplan', *m.*, —äne, chaplain.

Karl, *m.*, Charles.

Karlchen, *n. dim.*, (little) Charley.

Kartoffel, *f.*, potato.

kaufen, to buy.

Kaufmann, *m.*, —leute *or* —männer, 425, merchant.

Kavallerie', *f.*, cavalry.

kein, no, not any; *pron.*, —er, no one, none. [with.

kennen, *M.*, to know, be acquainted

Kind, *n.*, —er, child; —erkrube, *f.*,

nursery.

Kirche, *f.*, church.

Kirsche, *f.*, cherry.

klar, clear.

Klasse, *f.*, class.

Kleid, *n.*, —er, garment, dress: *pl.*,

clothes.

klein, little, small.
Klettern, 214, climb, clamber.
Klingen, *S.*, to sound, resound, ring.
Kloster, *n.*, ^u, cloister, convent.
Knabe, *m.*, boy; —*nschule*, *f.*, boys' school.
Koch, *m.*, ^ue, cook (man).
Köchin, *f.*, —*nen*, cook (woman).
Köln, Cologne; **Köln**, *indecl.*, 143, (of) Cologne.
Kommen, *S.*, *ī*, to come; —*aus*, (*dat.*), to come — result — from.
König, *m.*, king; —*straße*, *f.*, King Street; —*in*, *f.*, —*nen*, queen.
Königlich, kingly, royal.
Können, 261, *modal*: to be able; can, may, 472; to know.
Konzert, *n.*, —*e*, concert.
Krank, ^u, sick, ill.
Kranz, *m.*, ^ue, wreath, garland.
Krieg, *m.*, war; —*sheer*, *n.*, army.
Kuh, *f.*, ^ue, cow.
kühl, cool.
Kurz, ^u, short, curt; *adv.*, briefly, in short.

L.

Laborato'rium, *n.*, *gen.*, —*s*, *pl.* —*ien*, 118, laboratory.
lächeln, 214, to smile.
lachen, to laugh.
Land, *n.*, ^uer or —*e*, 425, country, land; —*gut*, *n.*, farm; —*haus*, *n.*, country house; —*leute*, *pl.*, country people, 425.
lang(e), long; *adv.*, — her, long ago.
längs (*gen. or dat.*, 280), along.
lassen, *S.*, to let, leave; *causative* 269, to make (do), have, cause to be (done); *reflex. for pass.* 274, can be (done).

laufen, *S.*, (*aux.*, 298), to run.
laut, loud; *adv.*, aloud.
leben, to live; *noun*, **Leben**, *n.*, life.
leben'dig, living, alive.
legen, to lay, put.
Lehrer, *m.*, teacher.
leicht, light, easy.
leiden, *S.*, to suffer.
leihen, *S.*, to lend.
lernen, to learn.
lesen, *S.*, to read.
lest, last; *der* —*ere*, the latter, 157.
Leute, *pl.*, people; (*in comp.* 425).
lieb, dear; *adv.*, —*er*, am —*sten*, rather, *liefer*, *liefest*, 485.
lieben, to love.
Lied, *n.*, —*er*, song.
liegen, *S.*, to lie, be situated.
links, left; *adv.*, *links*, on the left.
loben, to praise.
Lord, *m.*, *pl.* —*s*, 120, lord (English).
Löwe, *m.*, lion.
Luft, *f.*, ^ue, air.
lügen, *S.*, to lie, speak falsely.
Lust, *f.*, ^ue, pleasure, desire: — *haben*, to have a mind (to).

M.

machen, to make, do.
Mädchen, *n. dim.*, girl, maiden.
Magd, *f.*, ^ue, maid (-servant).
Maler, *m.*, —, painter.
man, *indef.*, 460, one, we, they, people, *etc.*; or *by pass.*
Mann, *m.*, ^uer, man, 425.
Mantel, *m.*, ^u, mantle, cloak.
Marie, *gen.*, *Mari'*ens, Mary.
Markt, *m.*, ^ue, market, market-place.
Matro'se, *m.*, sailor.
Mauer, *f.*, —*n*, wall.

mehr (*irr. comp.* viel), *indecl.* more; —ere, *pl.* 157, several.

Meile, *f.*, mile.

meinen, to think, mean.

meinig (der —e), mine.

melken, *S.*, to milk.

Mensch, *m.*, —en, man, human being.

Messer, *n.*, knife.

Metall, *n.*, —e, metal.

Milch, *f.*, milk.

Mineral, *gen.* —s, *pl.* —ien, 119, mineral; —wasser, *n.*, mineral water.

Mini'ster, *m.*, minister.

Minu'te, *f.*, minute.

mißlingen, *S.*, *ſ.*, *impers.*, to fail.

mit, *adv.*, along (with one); *prep.* (*dat.*), with, along with, in company with.

mögen, 261, *modal*: to like; may, can, *etc.* 472;

Monat, *m.*, —t, month.

Mond, *m.*, —e, moon.

Monument, *n.*, monument.

Morgen, *m.*, —, morning, the east; beß —s or morgens, of a morning.

morgen, *adv.*, to-morrow.

müde, tired.

multiplizie'ren, 215, to multiply; —mit, by.

Mün'ster, *n.* (*or m.*), minster, cathedral; —platz, *m.*, —square.

Muse'um, *n.*, *gen.* —s, *pl.* —en, 118, museum. [472.]

müssen, 261, *modal*: must, have to,

Mutter, *f.*, *pl.* ^u, mother.

N.

nach, *adv.*, after, behind; *prep.* (*dat.*), after, according to, towards; —

dem, *conj.*, after; —her, *adv.*, afterwards.

Nachbar, *m.*, *gen.* —s, *pl.* —n, neighbor.

Nachmittag, *m. comp.*, afternoon; (beß) —s, of an afternoon.

nächst, *irr. sup.* nah; *as prep.*, next (to, *dat.*).

Nacht, *f.*, ^{ue}, night.

Nadel, *f.*, needle.

nah(e), näher, nächst, near (*dat.*).

Name(n), *m.*, *gen.* —ns, *pl.* —n, 99, name.

Narr, *m.*, *pl.*, —en, fool.

neben, *adv.*, near, beside; *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*) beside, by, near, along with.

nebst, *prep.* (*dat.*), along with, besides.

Neffe, *m.*, nephew.

nehmen, *S.*, to take (from, *dat. pers.*).

nein, no.

nennen, *M.* to name, call.

neu, new; —lich, *adv.*, recently.

neun, nine; —zehn, nineteen; der —te, the ninth.

nicht, not.

nichts, nothing.

niemand, 244, nobody.

noch, still, yet; —ein, one more; —nicht, not yet; (weder) . . . noch, nor.

Nord(en), *m.*, north.

Not, *f.*, need, distress.

November, *m.*, November.

nun, now, then, well, 485; *as conj.*, now that, since, 486,2.

nur, only, merely; was . . . nur, whatever, *etc.*

nützlich, useful.

D.

- ob**, *conj.*, whether, if; *als* —, as if; —gleich, although, 486.
oben, *adv.*, above, up (stairs).
oberhalb (*gen.*, 280), above, over.
Ochse, *m.*, ox.
oder, or.
Offizier', *m.*, -e, officer.
oft, ^z, often, frequently.
ohne (*acc.*), without, but for; — *du*, without . . . *infin.*; — *daß*, 477, c.
Ohr, *n.*, *gen.* -es, *pl.* -en, ear.
Oufel, *m.*, —, uncle.
Ost(en), *m.*, the east.

P.

- Paar**, *n.*, -e, pair (312); ein paar, a few (245).
Pantof'fel, *m.*, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -n, slipper.
Papier', *n.*, -e, paper.
Papst, *m.*, ^{te}, pope.
Pastor, *m.*, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -en, 117, pastor.
pfeifen, *S.*, to whistle, pipe.
Pferd, *n.*, -e, horse.
pflanzen, 213, to plant.
Plan, *m.*, ^{te} or -e, plan.
Platz, *m.*, ^{te}, place, square (in a city).
plaudern, 214, to chat.
plündern, 214, to plunder.
Post, *f.*, -en, post-office, mail.
Preis, *m.*, prize, price.
Preuße, *m.*, Prussian.
Prinz, *m.*, -en, prince.
Professor, *m.*, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -en, 117, professor.
Pulver, *n.*, —, powder.

Q.

quellen, *S.*, (*aux.*, 298), to spring, well.

R.

- Rand**, *m.*, ^{ter}, edge, brink.
raten, *S.*, to advise (*dat.*).
Rathaus, *n. comp.*, council-house, town-hall.
rechnen, 212, to reckon, count.
Rechnung, *f.*, account.
recht, straight, right, just; right (hand); —*s*, *adv.*, on, to, the right.
Recht, *n.*, -e, right, justice, law; —haben, to be right.
reden, 212, to speak.
Regen, *m.*, rain.
Regiment', *n.*, *pl.* -er, regiment.
regnen, 212, to rain.
reich, rich.
reif, ripe.
Reise, *f.*, travel, journey.
reisen (213, *aux.*, 298), to travel, make a journey.
reißen, *S.*, to tear.
reiten (246, *aux.*, 298), to ride (on horseback).
Resultat', *n.*, -e, result.
retten, 212, to rescue, save.
Rhein, *m.*, Rhine.
Rock, *m.*, ^{te}, coat.
rot, ^z, red.
röthlich, reddish.
rufen, *S.*, to call, summons.
ruhig, quiet, peaceful.
rühren, to move, excite.
Rußland, *n. comp.*, Russia.

S.

^{ts}, for *es*, it.

Sache, *f.*, thing, affair, business.

sagen, to say.

Samstag, *m. comp.*, Saturday.

sauer, sour.

saufen, *S.*, to drink (of animals).

Schaf, *n.*, -e, sheep.

Schäfer, *m.*, shepherd. [do.

schaffen, *S.*, to create, make; *W.*, to

schärf, *n.*, sharp.

Schauspiel, *n. comp.*, -e, spectacle, play.

schienen, *S.*, to shine, seem.

schelten, *S.*, to scold, call (a bad name).

scheren, *S.*, to shear, cut.

schicken, to send.

schießen, *S.*, to shoot.

Schiff, *n.*, -e, ship, boat.

Schiffer, *m.*, skipper, boatman.

Schlacht, *f.*, -en, battle.

schlafen, *S.*, to sleep.

schläfrig, sleepy.

Schlafzimmer, *n. comp.*, sleeping-room.

schlagen, *S.*, to strike, beat, knock, *reflex.*, to fight.

schlecht, bad, poor.

schleichen, *S.*, *f.*, to creep, slink.

schleifen, *S.*, to whet, sharpen.

schließen, *S.*, to shut, close, lock.

schlingen, *S.*, to sling, twine.

Schloß, *n.*, *n*er, castle, palace.

Schlüssel, *m.*, key.

schmelzen, *S.*, *f.*, to melt.

Schmerz, *m.*, 101, pain.

schmauchen, *S.*, to snort.

Schnee, *m.*, *gen.* -s, snow.

schneiden, *S.*, to cut.

Schneider, *m.*, tailor.

schneien, to snow.

schnell, quick, fast; —zug, *m.*, fast train, express.

schon, already, even, surely, 485.

schön, fine, beautiful, handsome.

schreiben, *S.*, to write.

schreien, *S.*, to cry (out), scream.

schreiten, *S.*, *f.*, to stride, step.

Schuh, *m.*, -e, shoe.

Schuld, *f.*, -en, debt, guilt; *as adj. pred.*, in fault, to blame, 448.

Schule, *f.*, school; —knabe, *m.*, school-boy; —stube, *f.*, school-room.

Schüler, *m.*, scholar, pupil.

Schüssel, *f.*, dish.

schütteln, 214, to shake.

schwach, *n.*, weak.

schwarz, *n.*, black.

Schwefel, *m.*, sulphur; —holz, *n.*, *n*er, (sulphur) match.

Schweiz, *f.*, Switzerland, 416.

schwer, heavy, difficult; —lich, *adv.*, hardly.

Schwester, *f.*, sister.

schwimmen, *S.*, to swim (*aux.*, 298).

schwindeln, 214, *impers. (dat.)*, to be giddy.

schwinden, *S.*, *f.*, to vanish, disappear.

sechs, six; —mal, six times; —zehn, sixteen; —zig, sixty.

See, *m.*, -(e)n, lake; *f.*, sea (426).

segeln, 214, to sail (*aux.*, 298).

sehen, *S.*, to see, look.

sehr, very, much.

seiden, silken, of silk.

Seife, *f.*, soap.

sein, 256, *b.*, to be; (*as aux.*, 297).

seit, *prep. (dat.)*, since; *as conj. (for seitdem)*, since (time), 486.

Seite, *f.*, side; page.

September, *m.*, September.

setzen, 213, to set, put; *reflex.*, to take a seat; *p. p.* gesetzt, suppose.

ſieben, seven; —(en)*zehn*, seventeen.
ſingen, *S.*, to sing.
ſinken, *S.*, *f.*, to sink.
ſinnen, *S.*, to think, meditate.
ſitzen, *S.*, to sit.
ſo, so, thus, then; *often not transl.*; *for special uses*, 485; —*eben*, just; *ſo . . . wie*, as . . . as; *eben*—, just (as); —*wohl*, as well as, also.
Sohn, *m.*, ^ue, son.
Soldat', —*en*, soldier.
ſollen, 261, *modal*: shall, is to; is said to, 472.
Sommer, *m.*, —, summer.
ſondern, but, 326.
Sonnabend, *m. comp.*, Saturday.
Sonne, *f.*, sun; —*nſchein*, *m.*, sunshine.
Sophi'e (*gen.* —*nſ*), Sophia.
Spa'nien, *n.* (*gen.* —*s*), Spain.
ſpät, late; —*eſtens*, *gen. adv.*, at latest.
Spaten, *m.*, —, spade.
ſpazie'ren, 215, to walk, exercise; — *fahren*, *gehen*, *reiten*, *all f.*, to take a drive, walk, ride.
Spazier'gang, *m.*, *comp.* ^ue, walk.
Speiſeſaal, *m.*, *comp.* —*ſäle*, dining-room.
ſpielen, to play.
Sprache, *f.*, speech, language.
ſprechen, *S.*, to speak.
ſpringen, *S.* (*aux.*, 298), to spring, jump.
Staat, *m.*, *gen.* —*eſ*, *pl.* —*en*, state.
Stadt, *f.*, ^ue, city, town; —*mauer*, *f.*, city-wall.
ſtark, ^u, strong.
ſtechen, *S.*, to sting, prick.
ſtehen, *S.*, to stand; — *bleiben*, to stand still, stop.

ſtehlen, *S.*, to steal.
ſteigen, *S.*, *f.*, to mount, rise.
Stein, *m.*, stone.
ſtellen, to place, put.
ſterben, *S.*, *f.*, to die.
ſtieben, *S.*, to scatter, fly (like dust).
Stiefel, *m.*, *gen.* —*s*, *pl.* — *or* —*n*, 105, boot.
ſtill, still, quiet.
Stoß, *m.*, ^ue, stick, cane; story (of house).
Straße, *f.*, street.
Streichholz, *n. comp.*, ^uer, match.
ſtreiten, *S.*, to contend, quarrel.
Stube, *f.*, room.
Student', *m.*, —*en*, student.
ſtudie'ren, 215, to study.
Studium, *n.*, *g. n.* —*s*, *pl.* —*ien*, 118, study.
Stuhl, *m.*, ^ue, chair.
Stunde, *f.*, hour, hour's walk.
Sturm, *m.*, ^ue, storm.
Süd(en), *m.*, south.
ſüß, sweet.

T.

tadeln, 214, to blame.
Tag, *m.*, —*e*, day.
Tal, *n.*, ^uer, valley, vale.
Taler, *m.*, —, dollar.
Tanne, *f.*, fir, pine.
Tante, *f.*, aunt.
tanzen, 213, to dance.
Tanzlehrer, *m. comp.*, dancing-master.
tapfer, brave, bold.
tausend, (a) thousand.
Tat, *f.*, —*en*, deed, fact.
Teil, *m.*, part; —*s*, *gen. adv.*, partly.
Tempel, *m.*, temple.
Theologie', *f.*, theology.

Thron, *m.*, -e or en, 105, throne.
tief, deep.
Tier, *n.*, -e, animal, beast.
Tinte, *f.*, ink.
Tisch, *m.*, table.
Tochter, *f.*, ^u, daughter.
Tod, *m.*, death.
tot, dead. **töten**, to kill.
Tor, *m.*, -en, fool.
Tor, *n.*, -e, gate.
träg(e), lazy.
tragen, *S.*, to carry, bear; wear.
träumen, to dream.
treffen, *S.*, to hit, strike, meet with.
treiben, *S.*, to drive, pursue; *intr.*
(aux., 298), to drift, move.
treten, *S.*, *ſ.*, to step, tread.
triefen, *S.*, to drip, drop.
trinken, *S.*, to drink.
trösten, 212, to comfort.
tun, 255, to do, make; *intr.*, to act.
Tür(e), *f.*, door.

U.

über, *adv.* (*as pref. sep. or insep.*, 287), over, above; *prep. (dat.)*, over, above; (*acc.*), over, above, beyond; about, concerning.
überall, everywhere.
übergehen, *S. sep.*, *ſ.*, to go over, cross; *insep. tr.*, to pass over, omit.
übermorgen, day after to-morrow.
übersetzen, *sep.*, to set over, put across; *insep.*, to translate.
überstehen, *S., sep.*, to project jut out; *insep.*, to overcome, outlast.
Ufer, *n.*, shore, bank.
Uhr, *f.*, -en, watch, clock; (*indecl.*) o'clock, 305.
um, *adv.* (*as pref. sep. or insep.*, 287). around, about; *prep. (acc.)*, around,

about, concerning, for, at (time); um . . . willen, (*gen.*, 280), for the sake of; um . . . zu, (*infin.*), in order to (281).
umgehen, *S., sep.*, *ſ.*, to go around; *insep. tr.*, to evade.
um-kommen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to perish.
um-schreiben, *S., sep.*, to write again; *insep.*, to paraphrase.
unartig, unkind, naughty.
und, and.
Un'gar, -n, Hungarian.
ungeachtet, *part. adj. as prep. (gen.)*, disregarding, in spite of, 280.
ungeduldig, impatient.
Universität', *f.*, university.
unrecht, wrong; — haben, to be wrong.
unreif, unripe.
uns, us, (to) us.
unser, our.
unten, *adv.*, under, below.
unter, *adv.* (*as pref. sep. or insep.*, 287), under; *prep. (dat. or acc.)*, under, beneath, among.
unter-gehen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to go under, sink, set.
unterhalten, *S.*, to maintain, entertain; *reflex.*, to converse.
unweit, *adv.*, not far; *prep. (gen.*, 280), not far (from).

V.

Vater, *m.*, ^u, father.
verbieten, *S.*, to forbid.
Verbot', *n.*, -e, prohibition.
verdrießen, *S.*, to vex, annoy.
Verfasser, *m.*, —, author.
vergeffen, *S.*, to forget.
vergleichen, *S.*, to compare.

Bergnügen, *n.*, satisfaction, pleasure.

verhalten, *S.*, to hold back; *reflex.*, to hold one's self, be related.

verheiraten, 212, to give in marriage; *reflex.*, to marry, get married.

verirren, *reflex.*, to go astray, get lost.

verkaufen, to sell.

verlieren, *S.*, to lose.

vermittelt (*gen.*, 280), by means of.

versprechen, *S.*, to promise.

verstehen, *S.*, to understand.

Versuchung, *f.*, trial, temptation.

verzeihen, *S.*, to pardon (*dat.*).

Verzeihung, *f.*, pardon. [cousin.

Better, *m.*, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -n or —, 105,

viel, much; *pl.*, many, 245, *c.*

vier, four; *der* —te, the fourth.

Viertel, *n.*, fourth (part), quarter.

Vogel, *m.*, *n.*, bird.

Volk, *n.*, *n.*, people, nation.

vom = von dem.

von *dat.*, from, of, by, concerning.

vor, *adv.*, before, forward; *prep.* (*dat.*), before, in front of; for;

ago; (*acc.*), before, to the front of.

vorgestern, day before yesterday.

vorig, preceding, previous, last.

Vormund, *m.*, *n.*, guardian.

vorn(e), *adv.*, forward, in front.

W.

während, *prep.* (*gen.*), during; as *conj.*, while.

wahrhaftig, true, real.

wahrscheinlich, probable.

Wald, *m.*, *n.*, wood, forest.

wann, when (*interrog.*), 486.

warten, 212, to wait.

warum, *inter. or rel.*, (war for war, 222), for what, wherefore, why.

was, *inter.*, what; *rel.*, what, that, which; *indef. for etwas*, something, some; *adv.*, why, how.

waschen, *S.*, to wash.

Wasser, *n.*, — or *n.*, water.

weder, neither; . . . noch, nor.

Weg, *m.*, way, road.

weg, *adv. or sep. pref.*, away, off.

wegen, (*gen.*, 280), on account of, for.

weich, soft.

weichen, *S.*, *l.*, to yield, submit.

weil, while; *usually*, because.

Wein, *m.*, wine.

weinen, to weep.

Weise, *f.*, way, manner.

weis(e), wise.

weiß, white; —lich, whitish.

weit, wide, broad; far.

welcher, *inter.*, which, what; *rel.*, who, which, that; *indef.*, some.

Welt, *f.*, —en, world.

wenig, little; ein —, a little; *pl.*, few, 245, *c.*

wenn, 486, when, whenever; if; — auch, gleich, although, 386.

wer, *inter.*, who; *rel.*, who, whoever.

werden, *S.*, *l.*, to become; (*as aux.*, 173-4).

werfen, *S.*, to throw.

Werk, *n.*, —e, work.

Weste, *f.*, vest.

West(en), *m.*, west.

Wetter, *n.*, weather.

wie, *inter.*, how; *rel.*, how, as, when.

wider, *adv. and insep. pref.*, 288, again, against; *prep.* (*acc.*), against. [again, back.

wieder, *adv. and sep. pref.*, 288.

wiegen, *S.*, to weigh.
wieviel, *comp.*, how much; *pl.*, how many; *der* —*ſte*, *as ord. num.*, what number, what (day of the month).
wild, wild, savage.
Wind, *m.*, wind.
winden, *S.*, to wind, twine.
Winter, *m.*, winter.
wiſſen, *M.*, to know, know how, understand.
wo, *inter. and rel.*, where, when, if; *in comp.*, *before vowels*, *wor*, 222.
Woche, *f.*, week.
wofür, 222, wherefor, for what.
woher, whence, where from (*also sep.*, 484). [484].
wohin, whither, where to (*also sep.*, 485).
wohl, well, surely, indeed, 485.
wohlhabend, *part. adj.*, well off, wealthy.
wohnen, to dwell, live.
Wohnzimmer, *n.*, dwelling-room, sitting-room.
Wolke, *f.*, cloud.
wollen, 261, *modal*: to will, wish, intend, pretend (472).
woran, 222, whereon; on, at, what *or* which.
worauf, 222, whereupon; upon, after, what *or* which.
woraus, 222, whereout; out of, from, what *or* which.
Wort, *n.*, *er*, *or* —*e*, 425, word.
Wörterbuch, *n. comp.*, dictionary.
worüber, 222, wherover; over, on, concerning, what *or* which.
wovon, 222, wherefrom; from, by, of, what *or* which.
Wunde, *f.*, wound.
wünſchen, 213, to wish.

3.

Zahl, *f.*, —*en*, number.
zahlen, to pay.
zählen, to number, count.
Zahn, *m.*, *e*, tooth; —*weh*, *n.*, toothache.
zehn, ten; *der* —*te*, the tenth.
zeichnen, 212, to draw, design.
zeigen, to show.
Zeit, *f.*, —*en*, time; —*alter*, *n.*, age (of the world).
Zeitung, *f.*, newspaper.
zerſtören, to destroy.
ziehen, *S.*, to draw, pull; *intr.* *ſ.*, to move, march.
zieren, to adorn.
Zimmer, *n.*, room.
zu, *adv.* (*w. verb*) to; (*w. adj.*), too; *prep.* (*dat.*), to, in addition to; at, in, on; — *fuß*, on foot; *with infin.*, um . . . zu, in order to.
zufrie'den, *adj. comp.*, content, satisfied.
Zug, *m.*, *e*, draught, train, march; trait, feature.
zum, *for zu dem*.
zur, *for zu der*.
zurück', *adv.*, back, behind.
zurück-kommen, *S.*, *ſ.*, to come back.
zurück-ſchicken, to send back.
zusammen, together.
zuwider (*dat.*, 280), contrary, repugnant (to).
zwanzig, twenty; *der* —*ſte*, the twentieth.
zwar, indeed, truly.
zwei, two; —*mal*, twice; *der* —*te*, the second.
zwingen, *S.*, to compel, force.
zwölf, twelve.

II.

ENGLISH = GERMAN.

See Explanatory Notes, p. 324. References are to §§.

A.

a, an, 419; many, such, what —, 420; not —, kein.
abbot, der Abt, ^{2e}.
able, tüchtig; to be —, können, 261, 472.
aboard, an Bord; all —! ein-steigen, 336.
about, *adv.*, um, 287, umher, herum; *prep.* (around) um (*acc.*); (on account of) wegen (*gen.*); concerning) über (*acc.*); (near) gegen (*acc.*); to be — to, im Begriff sein . . . zu.
absent, abwesend, *part. adj.*; **absence**, die Abwesenheit.
abuse, *v.*, mißbrauchen, 288; (in words) schimpfen; *n.*, der Mißbrauch.
accept, an-nehmen, *S.*
accidental, zufällig; *adv.*, —ly, —erweise, 399.
accompany, begleiten, 212.
accomplish, vollbringen, 288.
account, die Rechnung; on — of, wegen (*gen.*); on that —, deshalb.
accuse, an-klagen, beschuldigen, 434, *b.*
acknowledge, an-erkennen, 289.
acquainted (with), bekannt mit, (*dat. person*); kundig (*gen. thing*).
acquit, frei-sprechen (*acc., gen.*, 379).
across, *adv.*, über, hinüber; *prep.*, über (*acc.*).

act, *v.*, handeln, 214, tun, 255; *n.* same as:
action, die Handlung, die That, —en.
adapted, geeignet; (— to, zu).
address, *v.*, an-reden; *n.*, die Anrede; (*of a letter*) die Adresse.
adorn, zieren, schmücken.
advice, der Rat, 422; *v.*, **advise**, raten (*dat.*, 248).
affair, die Angelegenheit.
afraid, bange; to be —, sich fürchten; to feel —, bangen (*impers.*, 291).
after, *prep.*, nach (*dat.*); *conj.*, nach-dem; —wards, nachher, darnach.
afternoon, der Nachmittag; in the —, des —s, *or* nachmittags.
again, wieder, wiederum; once —, nochmals, noch einmal.
against, gegen (*acc.*), wider (*acc.*); —it, dagegen.
age, *n.*, (old age), das Alter; — of the world, Zeitalter; *v.*, altern, 214.
ago, vor (*dat.*), her; a year —, vor einem Jahre; long —, lange her.
agree, sich vertragen, 249, übereinkommen, *S.*, *f.*
agreeable, angenehm (to, *dat.*).
air, die Luft, ^{2e}.
alas, ach! leider (*inverts verb*).
all, all, 460; (entire) ganz, 144.
allow, erlauben (*dat.*, *acc.*, 437); be—ed, dürfen (*modal*, 472).

almost, fast, beinahe.
alms, das Almo'sen.
along, *prep.*, längs (*gen.*), entlang (*acc.*); — with, mit, nebst (*dat.*); *adv.*, (with one) mit.
aloud, laut.
Alps, die Alpen, *pl.*
already, schon.
also, auch.
although, obgleich, ob schon, obwohl; *also sep.*, ob . . . gleich, *etc.*, 486.
always, immer, stets.
ambassador, der Gesandte (*part.*, senden, *as noun.*).
American, der Amerika'ner; —, *adj.*, amerikanisch.
amiable, liebenswürdig.
amount, *n.*, die Summe; *v.*, — to, betragen, *S.*
ancient, alt, ^u, ehemalig; the —s, die Alten.
and, und; both —, sowohl . . . als.
angry, zornig, böse; to be —, zürnen.
animal, das Tier, —e.
another, ein anderer; (additional) noch ein.
answer, *n.*, die Antwort, —en; *v.*, antworten (*dat.*, 212); (correspond to) entsprechen, *S.*, (*dat.*).
antiquity, das Altertum, ^{er}.
any, irgend ein; *pron.*, —body, —one, jemand; —thing, etwas; not —, kein; not —thing, nichts; *often not trans.*
apartment, das Zimmer, das Gemach, ^{er}.
appearance, die Erscheinung, der Schein (*seeming*).
appetite, der Appetit', *gen.* —s.
apple, der Apfel, ^u; — tree, der Apfelbaum.

appoint, bestimmen; (to office, 443, *d*) ernennen, *M.*
apprentice, der Lehrling.
arch-, *prefix*, Erz'-; —angel, der Erzengel; —bishop, der Erzbischof, ^ue; —duke, der Erzherzog, —e.
arise (from), hervor-gehen, *S.*, *f.*, (aus, *dat.*).
arm, (limb) der Arm, —e; (weapon) die Waffe; coat of —s, das Wap-pen, —.
army, die Armee', —(e)n, das Heer, —e.
around, *prep.*, um (*acc.*), um . . . her; *adv.*, umher, herum.
arrive, an-kommen, *S.*, *f.*
art, die Kunst, ^ue.
as, *adv.*, als, wie, 450, 2; as . . . as, (eben)so . . . wie; *conj.*, wie, da (reason, 485); — if, als (wenn), als (ob), 350, 2.
ascend, *tr.*, besteigen, ersteigen; *intr.*, (hin)auf-steigen, *f. all S.*
ashamed, beschämt; to be —, sich schämen (*gen.*).
ask (question), fragen; (petition) bitten, *S.*, — (for), — um (*acc.*).
assertion, die Behauptung.
assist, bei-stehen, *S.*, helfen, *S.*, (*both dat.*).
assure, versichern.
at, an, zu, bei, in, auf (*dat.*), um (*acc.*); — home, zu Hause; — noon, zu Mittag; — 10 o'clock, um 10 Uhr; — once, auf einmal; — one's house, bei (*dat.*).
attack, *n.*, der Angriff; *v.*, an-greifen, *S.*
attend (company), begleiten; (pres-ence) bei-wohnen (*dat.*).
attentive, aufmerksam.

August, der August', *gen.* —s.
aunt, die Tante.
author, der Verfasser, —.
autumn, der Herbst.
await, erwarten. [*chen*, *f.*]
awake, *v. tr.*, weden; *intr.*, auf=wa=
away, weg, ab, fort.
awkwardness, die Ungeschicklichkeit.

B.

back, *n.*, der Rücken; *adv.*, zurück,
 nieder; —wards, rückwärts.
bad, schlecht; (*active*) böse.
baggage, die Baggage, das Gepäck.
bake, baden, *S.*
baker, der Bäcker.
balloon, der Ballon'.
bank, (*shore*) das Ufer, —; (*com-*
mercial) die Bank, —en, 424.
bath, das Bad, *er.*
bathe, baden.
be, sein; *pass. auxil.*, werden, 273;
 is to, sollen, 472; (*in health*) sich
 befinden, *S.*
bear, *n.*, der Bär, —en; —'s skin, das
 Bärenfell. [*ertragen.*]
bear, *v.*, (*carry*) tragen, *S.*; (*suffer*)
beat, schlagen, *S.*
beautiful, schön.
because, weil.
become, (*grow*) werden; (*suit*) gezie=
 men (*dat.*); — of, werden aus
 (*dat.*).
bed, das Bett, *gen.* —es, *pl.* —en, 105.
beer, das Bier.
befall, begegnen, *f.* (*dat.*).
before, *prep.*, vor (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*,
 vorher; *conj.*, bevor, ehe; —hand,
 vorher; (*also sep. pref.*).
beg, bitten, *S.*; — for, — um (*acc.*).

begin, beginnen, *S.*; an=fangen, *S.*
behave, sich betragen, *S.*; sich beneh=
 men, *S.*
behavior, das Betragen, das Beneh=
 men (*inf. nouns*).
behind, *adv.*, hinter, 287, hinten;
prep., hinter (*dat. or acc.*).
believe, glauben (*dat., acc.* 437, 2).
bell, die Glocke.
belong, gehören (*dat.*).
beloved, geliebt (*part. adj.*).
below, *adv.*, unten; *prep.*, unter (*dat.*
or acc.).
bench, die Bank, *er*, 424.
beside, *prep.* (*dat., acc.*), neben.
besides, *prep.* (*dat.*), außer; *adv.*,
 außerdem.
best, best (*irr. sup.*, gut); to do one's
 —, sein Bestes tun.
betray, verraten, *S.*
better, besser (*irr. comp.*, gut).
between, *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), zwischen.
big, groß, *n*, 156.
bill (*account*), die Rechnung; (*of ex-*
change) der Wechsel.
bird, der Vogel, *n*.
bishop, der Bischof, *er*.
bite, beißen, *S.*
bitter, bitter; —ly, bitterlich.
black, schwarz, *n*.
blame, tadeln.
blind, blind.
bloom, blühen.
blossom, blühen.
blow, *n.*, der Schlag, *er*.
blow, *v.*, blasen, *S.*; — up, sprengen.
blue, blau. **bluish**, bläulich.
boat, der Kahn, *er*, das Boot, 105;
 —man, der Schiffer.
body, der Leib, —er, der Körper; any—,
etc., see any.

bombard, bombardie'ren.
Boniface, Bonifacius.
book, das Buch, ^{er}.
boot, der Stiefel, *gen.* -s, *pl.* 105.
born, geboren, *p. p.* gebären (*as adj.*).
both, beide, die beiden; beides, 460;
conj., both . . . and, sowohl . . . als.
bottle, die Flasche.
bough, der Ast, ^{er}, der Zweig.
boy, der Knabe; —s' school, die
 Knabenschule.
brave, tapfer.
bread, das Brot, -e.
breadth, die Breite.
break, brechen, *S.*; — out, aus-bre-
 chen; — in pieces, zerbrechen.
breakfast, *n.*, das Frühstück; *v.*, to
 —, frühstücken, 380.
breathe, atmen, 212.
bride, die Braut, ^{er}.
bridge, die Brücke.
bright, hell.
bring, bringen, *M.*; — with (one's
 self), along, mit—; back, zurück—.
broad, breit; —-shouldered, breit-
 schultrig.
brother, der Bruder, ^{er}; *or pl. coll.*,
 die Gebrüder, 387.
build, bauen; —ing, *n.*, das Ge-
 bäude, —.
bundle, das Bündel, -e, 426; der, (das)
 Bündel.
burn, brennen, *M.*; — up, verbren-
 nen.
bush, der Busch, ^{er}; *coll.*, bushes, das
 Gebüsch.
but, *conj.*, aber, allein, sondern, 326;
adv., (only) nur; *prep.*, (except)
 außer (*dat.*).
butter, die Butter.
buy, kaufen.

by, *prep.*, (place) bei, neben (*dat.*);
 (agent) von (*dat.*); (means) durch
 (*acc.*); *adv.*, (near) dabei; (past)
 vorbei.

C.

cab, die Droschke.
call, rufen, *S.*; (name) nennen *M.*; —
 out, aus-rufen; — on, (visit) besu-
 chen; — out (local) heraus-rufen.
can, können, 261, 472.
capable, fähig (*gen.*).
captain, der Hauptmann, ^{er}; der Ra-
 pitän', -e.
carriage, der Wagen, — *or* ^{er}.
carry, (bear) tragen, *S.*, bringen, *M.*;
 (lead) führen; — out, (execute)
 ausführen, (local) hinaus-tragen;
 — up, hinauf-tragen, *S.*
castle, das Schloß, ^{er}.
cat, die Katze.
cattle, das Vieh.
cause, *n.*, die Ur'sache; (reason) der
 Grund, ^{er}; *v.*, verursachen.
celebrated, *tr.*, berühmt (*part. adj.*).
cellar, der Keller.
center, der Mittelpunkt, -e; — of grav-
 ity, der Schwerpunkt.
certain, gewiß, bestimmt (*part. adj.*).
chain, die Kette.
chair, der Stuhl, ^{er}.
change, ändern, wechseln; *intr.*, sich
 —; — cars, um-steigen, *S.*
chapter, das Kapitel, —.
charge, (accusation) die Beschuldi-
 gung; (attack) der Angriff.
Charles, Karl.
chat, plaudern.
cheese, der Käse, *gen.* -s, *pl.* —.
chemistry, die Chemie'.

cherry, die Kirſche; —tree, der Kirſchbaum.
child, das Kind, —er; —hood, die Kindheit; —ish, kindiſch; —like, kindlich.
Christian, der Chriſt, —en; *adj.*, chriſtlich.
Christianity, das Chriſtentum.
Christmas, die Weihnachten, *pl.*
church, die Kirche; —tower, —steeple, der Kirchturm.
city, die Stadt, *we*; —wall, die Stadtmauer.
class, die Klaſſe.
clean, *adj.*, rein; *v.*, reinigen.
clear, klar, deutlich.
clerk, der Kommiſſ', 120, der Schreiber.
climb, klimmen, *S.*, *f.*
cloak, der Mantel, *we*.
cloister, das Kloſter, *we*.
close, ſchließen, *S.*, zu-machen.
cloth, das Tuch, *we*.
clothes, *pl.* die Kleider.
clothe, kleiden.
cloud, die Wolke; *coll.*, clouds, 387.
coach (*see* carriage); —man, der Kutſcher.
coat, der Rock, *we*.
coffee, der Kaffee, *gen.* —s.
cold, kalt, *we*; it is —, eſ friert; I am —, eſ friert mich, mich friert.
Cologne, Köln; *as adj.*, Kölner, 143.
color, die Farbe; *v.*, färben.
Colossus, der Koloß', *gen.* —es, *pl.* —e.
come, kommen, *S.*, *f.*; —of, werden auß (*dat.*).
comfort, *n.*, der Troſt; *v.*, tröſten.
command, *v.*, (order) befehlen, *S.*; (control) gebieten, *S.*, (über, *acc.*).
companion, der Gefährte; *f.*, Gefährtin, —nen.

company, die Geſellſchaft; (*milit.*) die Compagnie' (*French*).
compare, vergleichen, *S.*
comparison, der Vergleich.
compel, zwingen, *S.*
compliment, das Kompliment', —e; to send one's —s to, ſich empfehlen, *S.* (*dat.*).
comprehend, begreifen, *S.*
concern, betreffen, *S.*; an-gehen, *S.*, (*both acc.*).
concert, das Konzert', —e.
conductive, dienlich, behülflich; (*both dat.*, 438).
conduct, *v.*, (lead), führen; — one's self, ſich benehmen, *S.*; *n.*, das Benehmen (*infin.*).
conquer (a place), erobern; (an enemy) beſiegen.
conscious, bewußt (*gen.*, 433).
consider, *tr.*, bedenken, *M.*, überlegen; *intr.*, ſich bedenken; — as, halten für (*acc.*).
contented, zufrieden.
contrary; — to, zuwider (*follows dat.*); on the —, dagegen, im Gegeſteil.
convent, das Kloſter, *we*.
conversation, das Geſpräch, —e, die Unterhaltung. [*lehren.*]
convert, *v.*, verwandeln; (moral) be-
convince, überzeugen (*acc.*, *gen.*, 434).
cook, (man) der Koch, *we*; (woman) die Köchin, —nen.
cool, kühl.
copy, *v.*, ab-ſchreiben, *S.*
corner, die Ecke.
cost, *v.*, koſten (*acc.*, 442).
cottage, die Hütte.
count, *n.*, der Graf, —en; —ess, die Gräfin, —nen.

count, *v.*, zählen; (*reckon*) rechnen.
country, das Land, *pl.* *er, or -e*, 425; — *man*, der Landmann, *or* Landsmann, 425, *c*; — *people*, Landleute.
course, der Lauf, *gen.* *-es*; *of* —, natürlich, es versteht sich.
court, der Hof, *ne*.
cousin, der Vetter, *gen.* *-s*, *pl.* *-n*, *or* —, 105; die Cousine.
cover, *v.*, decken, bedecken; *n.*, die Decke, der Dedel.
cow, die Kuh, *ne*.
creep, kriechen, *S.*, (*slink*) schleichen, *S.*
crime, das Verbrechen.
cross (over), über=setzen, 287.
crowd, die Menge, 431, *c*.
crown, die Krone; — *prince*, der Kronprinz.
crucifix (cross), das Kreuz, *-e*.
crumble (to pieces), zerfallen, *S.*, *f*.
cry (out), schreien, *S.*; (*weep*) weinen.
cup, der Becher, die Tasse.
curse, *n.*, der Fluch, *ne*; *v.*, verfluchen.
cut, *v.*, schneiden, *S.*; — *off*, abschneiden.

D.

dance, *n.*, der Tanz, *ne*; *v.*, tanzen.
dancing-master, der Tanzlehrer.
dangerous, gefährlich.
dare, wagen, dürfen, 261, 472.
dark, dunkel; *to grow* —, dunkeln.
date, *n.*, das Datum; *v.*, datieren.
daughter, die Tochter, *n*.
day, der Tag, *-e*; *to* —, heute; *adj.*, *of to* —, heutige; *some* —, einst.
dead, tot.
deaf, taub; — *and dumb*, taubstumm.
dear, lieb, teuer.
death, der Tod, 422.

deceive, betrügen, *S.*, hintergehen, *S.*
decide, entscheiden, *S.*
declare, erklären, behaupten.
deed, die That, *-en*.
deem, halten, *S.*, für; — *worthy*, würdigen, (*acc.*, *gen.*).
deep, tief.
defy, trotzen (*dat.*); Trotz bieten, *S.* (*dat.*, 437).
degenerate, *adj.*, mißgeartet, 288.
delight, *n.*, die Freude, 106; *v.*, erfreuen; *intr.*, sich freuen (*gen.*); *to be* — *ed*, sich freuen (*or impers.*, 291)
deliver, liefern, überliefern.
dentist, der Zahnarzt.
deny, leugnen, verneinen.
depend, abhängen, *S.*; — *on*, von (*dat.*).
deprive, rauben, berauben, 440.
desert, *v.*, verlassen, *S.*
desert, *n.*, die Wüste.
deserve, verdienen.
desire, verlangen; *also impers.*, mich verlangt (*nach*).
despise, verachten.
destroy, zerstören, (*spoil*) verderben, *S.*
devotion, die Ergebenheit.
dictionary, das Wörterbuch.
die, sterben, *S.*, *f*.
difficult, schwer.
dig, graben, *S.*
dignity, die Würde.
diligent, fleißig.
dine, zu Mittag essen, *S.*, 379.
dining-room, der Speisesaal, *-säle*.
dinner, das Mittagessen (*inf. noun*).
disagreeable, unangenehm (*to, dat.*).
disapprove, mißbilligen, 288.
dish, die Schüssel.
dismiss, entlassen, *S.*, 434.

dissatisfied, unzufrieden.
distance, die Entfernung, die Weite.
distinct, (clear) deutlich; (different) verschieden.
distinguish, unterscheiden, *S.*; — one's self, sich auszeichnen.
distress, *n.*, die Not, das Elend; — *ing*, *adj.*, elend, peinlich.
ditch, der Graben, *n.*
divide, dividie'ren, 215; (separate) entzweien; (distribute) verteilen.
divine, göttlich.
do, tun, 255, machen; (in health) sich befinden, *S.*; *as aux. not transl.*
doctor, der Doktor, 117; (physician) der Arzt, *n.*
dog, der Hund, — *e.*
dollar, der Taler, —.
door, die Türe.
double, doppelt.
doubt, *n.*, der Zweifel; *v.*, zweifeln.
down, nieder; *her-* or *hin-*ab, =unter, 484; — *hill*, bergab.
dozen, das Duzend.
draw, (attract) ziehen, *S.*; (design) zeichnen; — *ing*, die Zeichnung.
dress, *n.*, das Kleid, die Kleidung; *v.* *tr.*, kleiden; *intr.*, sich anziehen, *S.*
drink, *v.*, trinken, *S.*, (of animals) faufen, *S.*; *n.*, das Getränk.
drinkable, trinkbar.
drip, triefen, *S.*
drive, *tr.*, treiben, *S.*; (a carriage) *tr.*, führen; *intr.*, fahren, *S.*, *f.*; to take, go for a —, spazieren fahren.
drunken, betrunken.
dry, *adj.*, trocken; *v.*, trocknen.
dumb, stumm; deaf and —, taubstumm.
during, während (*gen.*, 280).
duty, die Pflicht, — *n.*

dwel, wohnen.
dye, *n.*, die Farbe; *v.*, färben.

E.

each, jeder; — one, jeder, ein jeder; — other, einander (*indecl.*).
eagle, der Adler, —.
ear, das Ohr, *gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*en*.
early, früh.
earth, die Erde, 106; — *ly*, irdisch.
easy, leicht.
East, der Osten; (*fig.*) der Morgen.
Easter, Ostern (*pl.*).
eat, essen, *S.*, (of animals) fressen, *S.*
eatable, eßbar.
edge, der Rand, *n.*; (of knife) die Schneide.
education, die Erziehung.
egg, das Ei, — *er*. [achtzig.
eight, acht; — (t)een, achtzehn; — (t)y, eithier, beides, 460; *correl. conj.*, entweder . . . oder (*or*).
elderly, ältlich.
elect, *v.*, wählen, erwählen (zu, 443).
eleven, elf; the — *th*, der elfte.
emperor, der Kaiser.
end, *n.*, das Ende, *gen.* —*s*, *pl.* —*n*; *v.*, endigen.
enemy, der Feind; *coll.*, the —, *pl.*
England, (das) England.
English, englisch; — *man*, der Engländer.
enmity, die Feindschaft.
enough, genug' (*usually follows*).
enter, (*her-* or *hin-*) ein=gehen, *S.*, *f.*; ein=treten, *S.*, *f.*
entertain, unterhalten, *S.*
entire, ganz, 144; *adv.*, also gänzlich.
equal, gleich (*dat.*), gewachsen (*dat.*); *v.*, gleich=kommen, *S.*, *f.* (379, *dat.*).

err, sich irren.
errand-boy, der Laufbursche.
escape, entgehen, *S.*, *f.*; (run off) entlaufen *S.*, *f.* (*both dat.*).
estate, das Gut, *er*; — country, Landgut, *er*.
esteem, achten, halten für.
Europe, (das) Europa.
evoke, umgehen, *S.*, 287.
even, *adj.*, eben; *adv.*, auch, 485, selbst, 454.
evening, der Abend, —e; in the —, des —s *or* abends, 435.
event, die Begebenheit, das Ereignis, —ße.
ever, je, jemals; (always) immer.
every, jeder, aller, 460; —body, —one, ein jeder, jedermann; —thing, alles; —where, überall.
except, *v.*, ausnehmen, *S.*; *as prep.*, außer (*dat.*), ohne (*acc.*); *part.*, ausgenommen.
excessive, übermäßig; *as adv.*, äußerst, 450, —, *c.*
excitement, die Aufregung.
excuse, *v.*, entschuldigen; *n.*, die Entschuldigung.
exercise, die Übung; (lesson) das Exercitium, 118.
exhibition, die Ausstellung.
expect, erwarten; *n.*, —ation, die Erwartung.
expensive, teuer, kostbar.
explain, erklären.
express, *v.*, ausdrücken; *n.*, — (train), der Schnellzug.
expression, der Ausdruck, *er*.
expressive, ausdrucksvoll.
eye, das Auge, *gen.* —s, *pl.* —n.

F.

fable, die Fabel.
face, das Gesicht, —er.
fact, die Tatsache; in —, in der That.
fade, verblichen, *S.*, *f.*, verblühen, *f.*
fail, fehlen; (bankrupt) fallie' ren.
fairy-tale for children, das Kindermärchen.
faith, der Glaube, *gen.* —ns, 99.
faithful, treu.
fall, fallen, *S.*, *f.*; — in (her- *or* hin-) ein-fallen, *S.*, *f.*
false, falsch.
famous, berühmt (*part. adj.*).
fan, der Fächer.
fancy, *v.*, meinen, sich ein-bilden, 437.
far, fern, weit; *as* — *as*, so fern (als), bis (*prep.*).
farmer, der Bauer, 104.
fast, (firm) fest; (rapid) schnell.
fat, fett.
fate, das Schicksal, —e.
father, der Vater, *er*.
fault, der Fehler; in —, schuldig, schuld, 448.
favor, die Gunst, —en, 106, *note*.
favorable, günstig, gewogen (*part. adj.*), *both dat.*
fear, *n.*, die Furcht; *v.*, fürchten, 212; sich fürchten (vor, *dat.*).
feature, der Zug, der Gesichtszug, *er*.
February, der Februar'.
feeble, schwach, *er*.
feel, fühlen, sich fühlen; — afraid, bangen; — giddy, schwindeln, *both impers. (dat.)*.
fell, fällen.
fellow, der Bursche; —man, Mitmenschen, —en.
fetch, holen.

few, wenige (*pl.*); a —, einige (*pl.*).
field, das Feld, —er.
fifteen, fünfzehn (*or* funfzehn).
fifth (*the*), der fünfte.
fifty, fünfzig (*or* funfzig).
fight, fechten, *S.*; *n.*, das Gefecht.
find, finden, *S.*, — out, erfahren, *S.*
fine, (*size*) fein; (*look*) schön.
fire, das Feuer; —insurance, die Feuer-
 versicherung.
first (*the*), der erste; *adv.*, erst, 485;
 —ly, erstens; at —, zuerst, anfangs;
 —born, erstgeboren (*part. adj.*).
fish, *n.*, der Fisch; *v.*, fischen.
five, fünf; of — kinds, fünferlei, 306.
flag, die Flagge, die Fahne.
flame, die Flamme.
flatter, schmeicheln (214, *dat.*).
flattery, die Schmeichelei'.
flay, schinden, *S.*
flee, fliehen, *S.*, f.
flow, fließen, *S.*; rinnen, *S.* (*aux.*, 298).
flower, die Blume; — basket, der
 —korb, ^{2e}; — garden, der —
 garten.
fly, *v.*, fliegen, *S.*, (*aux.*, 298).
fly, *n.*, die Fliege.
follow, folgen, f. (*dat.*).
folly, die Torheit.
food, die Speise, die Nahrung (*infin.*,
 das Essen).
fool, der Narr, der Tor, *both pl.* —en;
 —ish, närrisch, töricht.
foot, der Fuß, ^{2e}; on —, zu Fuß.
for, *prep.*, für (*acc.*), (*cause*) vor (*dat.*),
 wegen (*gen.*); *conj.*, denn.
forbid, verbieten, *S.*
force, zwingen, *S.*; *n.*, der Zwang.
foreign, fremd; —er, *n.*, der Fremde;
 — parts, die Fremde, das Aus-
 land.

foremost, der erste.
foresee, vorher'-sehen, *S.*
forest, der Wald, ^{2e}er.
foretell, vorher'-sagen.
forget, vergessen, *S.*, (*rarely gen.*);
 — me-not, das Vergißmeinnicht.
forgive, vergeben, *S.*, (*dat.*).
former, vorig; (*the*) —, ersterer, 157,
 417, jener.
forsake, verlassen, *S.*
fortnight, vierzehn Tage; a — ago,
 vor —n (*dat.*).
forty, vierzig.
fossil, das Fossil', *gen.* —s, *pl.* —ien,
 118.
fountain, die Quelle, der Brunnen, —.
four, vier; —cornered, —edig; —
 footed, —füßig; —teen, —zehn.
franc, der Franke.
Frederick, Friedrich; — Street, die
 —straße.
freedom, die Freiheit; — of will, die
 Willens—.
freeze, frieren, *S.*
French, *adj.*, franzö'sisch; *n.*, (*lan-*
guage) das Französisch; *the* —, *n.*,
 die Franzo'sen.
frequent, häufig; *adv.*, also oft, öfters.
friend, der Freund; —ly, —lich; —
 ship, die —schaft.
frighten, *tr.*, weak, erschrecken; *intr.*,
 be —ed, erschrecken, *S.*, bangen
 (*impers. dat.*, 291).
from, von (*dat.*), aus (*dat.*); (*cause*)
 vor (*dat.*), wegen (*gen.*).
fruit, die Frucht, ^{2e}.
fugitive, der Flüchtling.
full, voll, 433.
further, weiter (*comp.*).
future, *n.*, die Zukunft; *adj.*, zukünf-
 tig.

G.

garden, der Garten, ⁿ; — -wall, die Gartenmauer.
gardener, der Gärtner.
garment, das Kleid.
gate, das Thor, -e.
gem, der Edelstein. [(*pl.* -äse).
general, der Feldherr, der General/
gentleman, der Herr, 97.
German, *adj.*, deutsch; *as noun*, a —, ein Deutscher; — (language), das Deutsch.
Germany, (das) Deutschland.
get, (obtain) bekommen, *S.*; *intr.*, (become) werden; — in, — out, ein-, aussteigen, *S.*, f.; — on, gehen, *S.*, f. (*impers. dat.*); — well, genesen, *S.*, f.
giant, der Riese.
giddy, schwindelig; to be, feel —, schwindeln (*impers. dat.*).
gilded, verguldet.
girl, das Mädchen, (servant) die Magd, ^{ne}.
give, geben, *S.*; — up, aufgeben.
glad, froh; to be — of, sich freuen (*gen.*); *adv.*, —ly, gern, 485.
glass, das Glas, ^{er}; *adj.*, gläsern.
glide, gleiten, *S.*
glimmer, glimmen, *S.*
glorious, herrlich.
glory, (fame) der Ruhm (*gen.* -es); (splendor) die Herrlichkeit.
go, gehen, *S.*, f.; — by, vorbeigehen; — out (a light), erlöschen, *S.*, f.; — to walk, spazieren gehen; — with, mitgehen.
god, der Gott, ^{er}; God, Gott.
gold, das Gold; *adj.*, golden.
good, gut; *also adv.* (*for well*); *noun*, das Gut, ^{er}.

goodness, die Güte.
goose, die Gans, ^{ne}.
gospel, das Evangelium, 118.
gracious, gnädig.
gradual, allmählig.
grammar, die Gramma'tik.
grand, großartig; (rank) vornehm; — father, der Großvater; — mother, die Großmutter.
grant, zu=geben, *S.*, verleihen, *S.*; God —, gebe Gott.
great, groß, ⁿ, 156.
Greek, *n.*, der Grieche; *adj.*, griechisch.
green, grün; *n.*, das Grün; —ish, grünlich.
grievous, schmerzlich; (heavy) schwer.
grind, (corn) mahlen; (a knife) schleifen, *S.*
grove, der Hain.
grow, wachsen, *S.*, f.; (become) werden; — dark, dunkeln.
guest, der Gast, ^{ne}.
guilt, die Schuld (*pl.* -en, debts).
gun-powder, das Schießpulver.

H.

hail, *n.*, der Hagel; *v.*, hageln.
hair, das Haar (*pl.* -e, *as coll.*).
half, halb, 144; a, the — 420; *n.*, die Hälfte.
hand, die Hand, ^{ne}; the right, left —, die Rechte, Linke.
handsome, schön.
hang, *intr.*, hängen, *S.*; *tr.*, wackeln, hängen; — up, aufhängen.
happen, geschehen, *S.*, f.
happiness, das Glück; (joy) die Freude.
happy, glücklich.
harbor, der Hafen, ⁿ.

hardly, schwermlich; (scarcely) kaum.
hare, der Hase.
harm, der Schade(n) 100; *v.*, schaden (*dat.*).
haste, die Eile; *hasty*, eilig.
hat, der Hut, ^{2e}.
have, haben (*as aux.*, 296); — *to*, müssen, sollen (*modal*).
hawthorn, der Weißdorn.
he, er; der, dieser, derselbe, 457; — (who) der, derjenige, 208.
head, der Kopf, ^{2e}; —ache, das Kopfwesh.
health, die Gesundheit.
hear, hören; — *tell*, sagen hören.
heart, das Herz, *gen.* -ens, *pl.* -en, 102.
heat, die Hitze; *v.*, heizen.
heath, die Heide.
heathen, der Heide; —ism, das Heidentum.
heaven, der Himmel.
height, die Höhe.
help, helfen, *S.*, beistehen, *S.* (*both dat.*); *n.*, die Hilfe.
Henry, Heinrich.
her, *pers.*, sie, (*dat.*, *to*) ihr; *poss. adj.*, ihr; —self, *reflex.*, sich; *emph.*, selbst, 454. [mit, 401.
here, hier; *adj.*, hiesig; —with, hier-
hero, der Held, -en.
high, hoch, *irreg.*, 135, a, 156.
hill, der Hügel; up, down —, bergauf, —ab.
him (*acc.*), ihn, (*dat.*, *to*) ihm; —self *reflex.*, sich; *emph.*, selbst, 454.
his, *adj.*, sein; *pron.*, seiner; dessen, desselben, 457.
history, die Geschichte.
hit, treffen, *S.*
hold, halten, *S.*; — for (consider),

— für (*acc.*); — worthy, würdigen (*acc.*, *gen.*).

holiday, der Feiertag.

home, die Heimat, -en; *adv.*, (to), at, from —, nach, zu, von Hause.

honesty, die Ehrlichkeit.

honor, *n.*, die Ehre, 106; man of —, der Ehrenmann, 425; *v.*, ehren.

hope, *v.*, hoffen; *n.*, die Hoffnung; —ful, hoffnungsvoll; —less, hoffnungslos; — of, or for, auf (*acc.*).

horse, das Pferd, -e.

hospital, das Hospital', ^{2er}.

hot, heiß.

hotel, der Gasthof, ^{2e}; —porter, der Hausknecht.

hour, (duration) die Stunde; (o'clock) (die) Uhr, 305; —ly, freundlich.

house, das Haus, ^{2er}; — of lords, das Herren—.

how, wie.

human, menschlich; — being, der Mensch, -en.

humanity, die Menschheit; (feeling) die Menschlichkeit.

humble, demütig.

hundred (a), hundert.

Hungarian, der Un'gar, -n.

hungry, hungrig; to be —, hungern; *impers.* (*acc.*).

hunter, der Jäger.

hurry, die Eile; in a —, in Eile.

husband, der Mann, Ehemann, 425.

hut, die Hütte.

hypocrisy, die Heuchelei'.

I.

I, ich.

ice, das Eis; cold as —, eiskalt.

if, wenn (*omitted*, 350, 2); even —, wenn . . . auch, 486; (whether) ob.

ill, krank, *n.*; **dangerously** —, sterbenskrank; —ness, die Krankheit.
image, das Bildniß, —ße.
imagine, sich (*dat.*) einbilden.
immediately, sogleich.
immortality, die Unsterblichkeit.
impatient, ungeduldig.
important, wichtig, bedeutend.
impostor, der Betrüger.
improvidence, die Unvorsichtigkeit.
in, *prep.*, in (*dat.*), into (*acc.*); *adv.*, (place) darin; (motion) herein, hinein; *as sep. pref.*, einz.
include, einschließen, *S.*
incontestable, unstreitig.
incredible, ungläublich.
industrious, fleißig.
infer, schließen, *S.*; — from, aus, (*dat.*); (from one's look) ansehen, *S.* (*dat. pers.*).
inform, benachrichtigen.
injurious, schädlich (*dat.*).
inn, das Wirtshaus.
innocence, die Unschuld.
innocent, unschuldig.
insist, bestehen, *S.*; — on, auf (*acc.*, 477).
inspect, besehen, *S.*
instead, (of), anstatt, statt (*gen.*); *before infin.*, 475, 2.
insult, *v.*, beleidigen; *n.*, die Beleidigung.
interest, *n.*, das Interesse, *gen.* —s, *pl.*, —n; *v.*, an=gehen, *S.*; — one's self in, sich an=nehmen, *S.* (*gen.*).
interior, inner, 158; *as n.*, das Innere.
into, *prep.*, in (*acc.*); *adv.*, herein, hinein.
intolerable, unerträglich; *see also* 482. [stellen.
introduce, ein=führen; (a person) vor=

invent, erfinden, *S.*
invention, die Erfindung.
invite, ein=laden, *S.*
iron, das Eisen; *adj.*, eisern.
island, die Insel, das Eiland, —e.
it, es, 452–3; **its**, sein, *or dem., gen.*, 457.

J.

January, der Januar'.
jewel, das Kleinod, *pl.* —e, *or* —ien.
journey, die Reise.
joy, die Freude; for —, vor —n.
judge, urteilen; (official) richten; *n.*, der Richter.
jump, springen, *S.* (*aux.*, 298).
just, *adj.*, gerecht; *adv.*, gerade; (time) soeben, erst.

K.

keep, halten, *S.*; (retain) behalten, *S.*; *intr.*, sich halten, bleiben, *S.*, s.
key, der Schlüssel.
kill, töten.
kind, die Art, —en; — of, *by suffix*, —erlei, 306; what — of, was für.
kind, gütig; —ness, die Güte.
king, der König; —dom, das Königreich, —e.
kitchen, die Küche.
knife, das Messer.
knock, klopfen; (hit) stoßen, *S.*
know, kennen, wissen, 254 (*see note*, p. 134); können, 268.
known (well —), bekannt (*part. adj.*).
knowledge, die Kenntnis, —ße, das Wissen (*infin.*); of my —, meines Wissens.

L.

laboratory, das Laborato'rium, 118.
laborer, der Arbeiter.

lacerate, zerfleischen.

lady, die Dame.

lake, der See, 104, 426.

lame, lahmt.

land, *n.*, das Land, 425; *v.*, landen, f.

landlord, der Wirt, der Hausherr.

language, die Sprache.

large, groß, *n.*, 156.

last, leßt, 157; (preceding) vorig; *adv.*, at —, endlich, zuletzt.

late, spät; —ly, neulich; at latest, spätestens (*gen.*).

laugh, lachen; — at, lachen (*gen.*), aus-lachen (*acc.*).

law, das Gesetz, —e.

lawyer, der Advokat, —en, der Rechtsgelehrte (*adj.*, *noun.*).

lay, legen.

lazy, träge.

lead, führen, leiten.

lead, das Blei.

leaf, das Blatt, *n.*er.

leap, springen, *S.*; (*aux.*, 298).

learn, lernen (*inf.*, 474); —ed, gelehrt (*part.*, *adj.*).

leave, *v.*, lassen, verlassen, *S.*; *intr.*, (depart) ab-fahren, *S.*, f.

leave, *n.*, (permission) die Erlaubnis; (departure) der Abschied, —e.

leg, das Bein, —e.

lend, leihen, *S.*

length, die Länge; *adv.*, at —, endlich.

lessen, (ver)mindern.

lesson, (task) die Aufgabe; (hour) die Stunde.

let, lassen, *S.*; or by *imperat.*

letter, der Brief; (of alphabet) der Buchstabe, usually *gen.* —ns, *pl.* —n, 99; —carrier, der Briefträger.

liberate, befreien, frei-lassen, *S.*, 379.

liberty, die Freiheit; to set at —, in —setzen.

library, die Bibliothek.

lie, (posture) liegen, *S.*

lie, (falsehood) lügen, *S.*; *n.*, die Lüge; to tell a —, lügen.

life, das Leben; —insurance, die Lebensversicherung.

lift, heben, *S.*; —up, auf-heben.

light, das Licht (*pl.*, 424); —of day, 389, 2.

lighten, (flash) blitzen.

like, *v.*, (love) lieben; —to, mögen, 472, or *adv.*, gern 485.

like, *adj.*, gleich, ähnlich (*dat.*); *adv.*, wie; to be —, gleichen, *S.*, (*dat.*); *adv.*, —ly, wahrscheinlich.

limb, das Glied, —er.

lion, der Löwe.

listen, hören, zu-hören (to, *dat.*).

little (size), klein; (quantity) wenig; a —, ein wenig; (*often tr. by dim.*).

live, leben; —to see, erleben.

load, *v.*, laden, *S.*; *n.*, die Last, —en.

lock, schließen, verschließen, *S.*

long, *adj.*, lang; *adv.*, lang(e); —ago, lange her, längst.

look, blicken, sehen, *S.*; (seem) aus-sehen; —for (seek), suchen; (expect) erwarten; —at, an-sehen, befehen, *S.*

lord, der Herr, *gen.* —n, *pl.* —en.

lose, verlieren, *S.*; —one's way, sich verirren, sich verlaufen, *S.*; —at play, verspielen.

loss, der Verlust, *n.*e.

loud, laut.

love, *v.*, lieben; —to, *adv.* gern, 485; *n.*, die Liebe; —letter, der Liebesbrief.

lovely, lieblich, liebenswürdig.

low, niedrig, (soft) sanft.

lucky, glücklich.
luggage, das Gepäck.

M.

magnanimous, großmütig.
maid-servant, die Magd, ²e.
maintain, (assert) behaupten; (support) erhalten, S.
make, machen; — haste, eilen.
malicious, böshaft.
man, (sex) der Mann, ²er (see 425); (human) der Mensch, -en.
manner, (mode) die Weise; (custom) die Sitte.
many, viele (*pl.*); — a, mancher, manch ein; how —, wie viele.
marble, der Marmor; *adj.*, marmorn.
March, der März.
march, marschie' ren, 215; (*aux.*, 298); ziehen, S., f.; *tr.*, — lassen, 269.
mark (coin), die Mark, 312.
market, der Markt, ²e; — place, —, der Marktplatz.
marriage, (state) die Ehe; (wedding) die Hochzeit.
Mary, Marie', 110.
mast, der Mast, *gen.* -es, *pl.* -en.
master, der Herr, *gen.* -n, *pl.* -en; — of, mächtig (*gen.*).
material, das Material', *gen.* -s, *pl.* -ien, 119.
matter, *n.*, (affair) die Sache; to be the —, fehlen (*impers.*, *with dat.*); it matters, es kommt darauf an.
May, der Mai.
may, mögen, können, dürfen, 472.
maybe, *adv.*, vielleicht.
mayor, der Bürgermeister.
me, mich (*acc.*); mir (*dat.*).
mean, meinen, sagen wollen, *p.*, 121.

mean(s), das Mittel; by — of, vermittelt (*gen.*), durch (*acc.*); by no —, keineswegs, 399.
measure, *n.*, das Maß, -e; *v.*, messen, S.; take one's —, anmessen, S. (*dat. pers.*; for *acc.*).
meat, das Fleisch.
meditate, sinnen, S.
meet, begegnen, f. (*dat.*); — with, treffen, S.
melt, schmelzen, S., f.
memory, das Gedächtnis.
mend, bessern, aus-bessern.
merchant, der Kaufmann (*pl.*, 425).
merciful, barmherzig, gnädig (*to, dat.*).
mercy, die Barmherzigkeit; to have —, sich erbarmen (*on, gen.*).
meritorious, verdient, (*part. adj.*).
messenger, der Bote.
Michael, Michel.
middle, *n.*, die Mitte; *adj.*, mittler (*comp.*, 158).
midnight, die Mitternacht.
mighty, mächtig.
mild, mild(e).
mile, die Meile, die Stunde (*hour's walk*).
milk, die Milch; *v.*, melken (see List).
mine, meiner, meinig; *in pred.* also mein, 193.
minister, der Mini'ster.
minute, *n.*, die Minu'te (*time*).
misfortune, das Unglück.
miss, verfehlen; (*feeling*) vermiffen; — the mark, vorbei-schießen, S.
Miss, *n.*, das Fräulein; (*title*, 428).
mistake, *n.*, der Fehler; (*error*) der Irrtum, -tümer; *v.*, to be —n, sich irren.
modest, bescheiden (*part. adj.*).
moment, der Augenblick.

Monday, der Montag.
money, das Geld; sum of —, die Geldsumme.
monk, der Mönch.
monkey, der Affe.
month, der Mo'nat, -e.
monument, das Monument'.
moon, der Mond, -e; full —, der Vollmond.
more, mehr (*indecl.*); noch, 485; *or by comp. inflection*; the —, 334.
morning, der Morgen, —; in the —, des —s, *or adv.*, morgens.
morrow (to-) morgen; day after —, übermorgen. .
most, meist, am meisten; *abs. superl.*, höchst, äußerst; *or by sup. inflection*.
mother, die Mutter, *m*; — tongue, die Muttersprache.
mount, steigen, *S.*, *f.*; *tr.*, besteigen; — up, auf-steigen, *f.*
mountain, der Berg; — range, das Gebirge, —.
mouse, die Maus, *me*.
move, *tr.*, bewegen; (*excite*) rühren; *intr.*, ziehen, *S.*, *f.*
Mr., (der) Herr; **Mrs.**, (die) Frau, 428.
much, *adj.*, viel, 245, *also adv.*; (*degree*) sehr (*adv.*).
multiply, multiplizie'ren, 215; — by, mit (*dat.*). .
multitude, die Menge, 431.
museum, das Muse'um, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -en, 118.
music, die Musik'.
must, müssen, 261, 472.
my, mein; —self, (*subj.*), selbst; (*obj. reflex.*) mich, mir (selbst, 434).

N.

name, *n.*, der Name, *gen.* -ns, *pl.* -n, 99); his — is, er heißt; *v.*, nennen, *M.*; be — ed, heißen, *S.*
narrow, enge, schmal.
nature, die Natur'.
naughty, unartig, böse.
near, *adj.*, nah, näher, nächst (*dat.*); *prep.*, neben, bei (*dat.*); *adv.*, —ly, beinahe.
nearness, die Nähe.
necessary, nötig.
need, *n.*, die Not; *v.*, brauchen, bedürfen (*gen.* 434); *modal*, dürfen, 472.
needle, die Nadel.
neglect, vernachlässigen.
neighbor, der Nachbar, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -n.
neither, *pron.*, keiner (von beiden); *conj.*, weder . . . (nor) noch.
never, nie, niemals.
nevertheless, dennoch, dessen ungeachtet, 280.
new, neu; — laid (egg), frisch.
news, die Kunde, die Nachricht; — paper, die Zeitung.
next, *adj.* (*see* nah); (*following*) folgend; *adv.*, zunächst.
night, die Nacht, *me*.
nightingale, die Nachtigall.
nine, neun; —teen, —zehn; —ty, —zig.
no, *adj.*, kein; —one, —body, keiner, niemand; —thing, nichts; *adv.*, nein.
noble, edel; —man, der Edelmann (*pl.*, 425).
none, *pl.*, keine.
nonsense, der Unsinn.
nor, (neither) . . . , (weder) . . . noch.
north, der Nord(en).

not, nicht; — yet, noch nicht; — any, one, kein, keiner; — anything, nichts.

nothing, nichts.

now, (time) jetzt, nun, 485; *adj.*, (of now) jetztig.

number, die Zahl, -en; (amount) die Anzahl.

nursery, die Kinderstube.

nut, die Nuß, "ße.

O.

O, oh, Oh! ach!

oath, der Eid; on —, eidlich.

obey, gehorchen (*dat.*).

obliged, verbunden (*part.*, verbinden); to be —ed, (must) müssen, 472.

occur, vorkommen, *S.*, f.; (to the mind) einfallen *S.*, f. (*dat.*).

o'clock, Uhr, 305; what —? wie viel Uhr; at two —, um zwei Uhr.

odious, verhaßt (*part. adj.*).

of, von, (out of) aus, (among) unter, *all dat.*; (on) an, über (*acc.*); *or by gen. case.*

off, ab, davon.

offer, bieten, *S.*, an-bieten.

office, das Amt, "er.

officer, der Offizier', -e.

often, oft, öfters.

old, alt, "e; grow —, altern.

olive-tree, der Ölbaum.

on (place), auf, (time) an (*dat.*); (direction) auf, über (*acc.*); — foot, zu Fuß, *adv.*, fort, hin.

once, einmal, 401, 2; — more, noch —.

one, *adj.*, ein; (in counting, *neut.*) eins; *indef. pron.*, einer, man, 460; — another, einander; every —, (ein) jeder; no —, keiner.

only, *adj.*, einzig; *adv.*, allein', nur; not — . . . but, nicht nur . . . sondern.

open, *adj.*, offen; *v.*, öffnen, auf-machen.

opinion, die Meinung; to be of —, meinen, der Meinung sein.

opportune, gelegen.

oppress, unterdrücken.

or, oder.

orchard, der Baumgarten.

order, *v.*, (person) befehlen, *S.*; (thing) bestellen; *n.*, der Befehl, die Bestellung; in — to, um . . . zu, 281.

other, ander; each —; one an—, ein-ander (*indecl.*); (one more), noch ein.

ought (to), sollen, 261, 472.

our, unser; *pron.*, ours, un(s)erer, un(s)erig; ourselves (*subj.*), wir selbst; (*obj. reflex.*), uns (selbst).

out, *adv.*, aus, heraus, hinaus, (outside) draußen; — of, *prep.*, aus, außer (*dat.*).

outside, *adv.*, draußen; — of, *prep.*, außer (*dat.*), außerhalb (*gen.*); *n.*, das Äußere, 158, die Außenseite.

over, *adv.*, über, her-, hin-über; (past) vorüber, vorbei; *prep.*, über (*dat.*, *acc.*).

overcome, überwinden, *S.*

owe, schuldig sein, 438.

ox, der Ochs(e).

P.

page, die Seite.

pain, der Schmerz, 101; to give —, wehe tun, 437, 4.

paint, malen; —er, der Maler, —; —ing, das Gemälde, —.

pair, das Paar, 431, c.

pale, bleich; turn —, erbleichen, *S.*, f.
paper, das Papier', -e; news—, die
 Zeitung. [-ffe.]

parable, die Para'bel; das Gleichniß,

parade, die Para'de.

pardon, verzeihen, *S.*; (*dat.*); *n.*, die
 Verzeihung; I beg —, ich bitte um
 B.

parents, die Eltern.

part, (*divide*) teilen; (*separate*) schei-
 den, *S.*; (*also intr.*, sein); *n.*, der
 Teil; on the — (*of*), von Seiten,
 106; for my —, meinerseits, 399.

partly, theils (*gen. adv.*).

pass (*away*), vergehen, *S.*, f.; (*happen*)
 vorgehen; (*by*) vorbei-gehen (*all*,
 sein); (*time*) zu-bringen, *M.*

passage, die Überfahrt, -en.

past, *adj.*, vergangen (*part. adj.*);
adv., vorbei; *n.*, the —, die Ver-
 gangenheit; of the — (*adj.*), vor-
 herig; half —, *etc.*, 305.

pastor, der Pastor, *pl.* -en, 117.

patience, die Geduld. [-en.]

patient, geduldig; *n.*, der Patient',

pay, bezahlen; (*for*, penalty) büßen;
 — a visit, einen Besuch machen.

peace, der Friede, *gen.*, -ns, *pl.* -n.

peasant, der Bauer, *gen.* -s, *pl.* -n.

pen, die Feder.

penalty, die Strafe; under — of
 death, bei Lebensstrafe.

people, das Volk, *er*; die Leute (*pl.*);
indef., man, 460.

permission, die Erlaubniß, -ffe.

persuade, überreden.

petrify, versteinern.

physician, der Arzt, *ae.*

pick, lesen, *S.*; — out, aus-lesen; —
 up, auf-heben, *S.*

picture, das Bild, -er; — -book, das

Bilderbuch; — -gallery, (*painting*)
 die Gemäldegallerie'.

pin, die Stednadel.

pit, die Grube.

place, *n.*, der Ort, *pl.*, 425; *v.*, stellen;
 (*lay*) legen.

plan, der Plan, *ae or -e.*

plant, *n.*, die Pflanze; *v.*, pflanzen.

play, *n.*, das Spiel, -e; *v.*, spielen;
 to lose by —, verspielen.

pleasant, angenehm.

please, gefallen, *S.*, (*dat.*); (*pray*),
 bitte; if you —, gefälligst (*sup. adv.*).

pleasure, das Vergnügen; (*joy*) die
 Freude, (106, *note*).

plough, *n.*, der Pflug, *ae*; *v.*, pflügen.

poem, das Gedicht'.

poet, der Poet', -en, der Dichter.

poetry, die Poesie', die Dichtung.

polite, höflich.

political, politisch.

poor, arm, *ae*; (*quality*) schlecht.

porter, (*hotel*), der Hausknecht.

portmanteau, der Koffer, —.

post-office, die Post, -en.

potato, die Kartoffel.

pound, das Pfund, 312.

pour, gießen, *S.*

power, die Macht, *ae.*

praise, *v.*, loben, preisen, *S.*; *n.*, das
 Lob; to my —, mir zu Liebe.

pray, beten; (*I*)—, (*ich*) bitte.

prayer, das Gebet'.

preach, predigen; —er, der Prediger.

precious, kostbar, köstlich; — stone,
 der Edelstein.

prefer, vor-ziehen, *S.*; *see* gern, 485.

present, *n.*, (*gift*) das Geschenk; (*time*)
 die Gegenwart; *adj.*, gegenwärtig;
 (*place*) anwesend; at —, jetzt; of
 the —, jetzig.

president, der Präsident', -en.
prick, stechen, *S.*
pride, der Stolz.
prince, der Prinz, der Fürst, *both* -en.
print, drucken; —ing-office, die Druckerei'.
prison, das Gefängnis, -isse; —er, der Gefangene (*part. noun*).
privilege, das Vorrecht, -e.
probable, wahrscheinlich; *idiom.*, 465.
procession, der Aufzug, *we*.
professor, der Professor, 117.
profit, der Nutzen; (money) der Gewinn; *v.*, nützen (*dat.*).
progress, die Fortschritte (*pl.*).
prohibition das Verbot, -e.
project, *v.*, (jut over) überstehen, *S.*
promise, versprechen *S.*; *also n.*; —ing (*part. adj.*), hoffnungsvoll.
proof, der Beweis.
propose, vor-schlagen, *S.*; *intr.*, sich vor-nehmen, *S.*
proverb, der Spruch, *we*, das Sprichwort, *we*.
Prussia, (das) Preußen; -n, preußisch; *n.*, der Preuße.
pull, ziehen, *S.*; — out, heraus—.
punishment, die Strafe.
pupil, der Schüler; (*fem.*) die —in.
push, schieben, *S.*; (strike) stoßen, *S.*
put, (set) setzen; (place) stellen; (lay) legen; — off, verschieben *S.*; — on (clothes) an-ziehen, *S.*; — out (a light) aus-löschen, *S.*

Q.

quarter, das Viertel, (place) das Quar-
queen, die Königin, -nen. [tier'.
question, die Frage; it is the —, es fragt sich.

quick, (rapid) schnell.
quiet, ruhig, still; *v.*, beruhigen.
quire, das Buch (Papier, 312); (choir) der Chor, *we*, 426.
quite, ganz, durchaus.

R.

railway, die Eisenbahn, -en; — station, der Bahnhof, *we*.
rain, *n.*, der Regen; *v.*, regnen.
raisin, die Rosine.
rank, (row) der Rang, *we*; (social) der Stand, *we*.
ransack (plunder), plündern.
rapid, schnell, geschwind.
reach, reichen; (attain) erreichen.
read, lesen, *S.*; — (aloud), vorlesen; —ing, *n.*, die Lectur'e, das Lesen, (*instr.*).
ready, bereit; (finished) fertig.
real, wirklich.
receive, empfangen, *S.*; erhalten, *S.*, *usually things (get)*.
recent, neu; *adv.*, —ly, neulich.
recollect, sich besinnen, *S.* (*gen.*).
recover, *intr.*, genesen, *S.*, *f.*
rector, der Rektor, -en, 117.
red, rot; — as fire, feuerrot.
redder, *tr.*, röten; *intr.*, erröten.
redound, gereichen (*dat.*).
refresh, erfrischen.
refuse, (deny) verweigern; (reject) ab-schlagen, *S.*
refute, widerlegen.
regiment, das Regiment', -er.
reign, regie'ren, 215; *n.*, die Regie-rung.
rejoice, *intr.*, sich freuen (*gen.* 434); *or impers.*, es freut (*acc.*, 292); *tr.*, erfreuen.

relate, (tell) erzählen; be —ed, sich verhalten, *S.*; (akin) verwandt sein.
relation, das Verhältniß, —ſſe; (kinsman) ein Verwandter (*adj. n.*).
relieve, zu Hilfe kommen (*dat.*, 437); (of) entheben, *S.*, entledigen (*both gen.*, 434).
rely, sich verlassen, *S.*, (on, auf, *acc.*).
remain, bleiben, *S.*, f.; —ing, übrig (*adj.*).
remarkable, merkwürdig.
remember, gedenken, *M.*; sich erinnern (*both gen.*, 434).
remit, (send) übersenden, *M.*; (let off) erlassen, *S.*, 434.
reply, entgegnen, (*dat.*).
request, *v.*, bitten, *S.*; *n.*, die Bitte.
resemble, gleichen, *S.* (*dat.*).
resent, rächen.
resound, erschallen, *S.*
respect, achten.
result, heraus-kommen, *S.*, f.
retire, abtreten, *S.*, f.; sich zurück-ziehen *S.*
return, *v.*, zurück-kehren; *n.*, die Rück-kehr.
reward, belohnen; *n.*, die Belohnung.
Rhenish, rheinisch.
Rhine, der Rhein.
Rhodes, das Rhodus.
ribbon, das Band, *er*, 424.
rich, reich.
riddle, das Rätsel.
ride, reiten, *S.* (*aux.*, 298); take a — spazieren —; —r, der Reiter.
rifle, *n.*, die Büchse.
right, recht; — hand, die Rechte; on, to the —, rechts; *n.*, das Recht; to be —, recht haben.
righteous, gerecht, rechtschaffen.
ring, *n.*, der Ring.

ring, *v.*, (resound) klingen, *S.*; (bell) klingeln; —ing of bells, das Geläut.
ripe, reif.
rise, (get up) auf-*stehen*, *S.*, f.; (go up) auf-*gehen*, *S.*, f.; (from the dead) aufer-*stehen*, *S.*, f. (289).
river, der Fluß, *ise*.
road, der Weg, die Landstraße.
roast, braten, *S.*; *n.*, der Braten.
robber, der Räuber.
rock, *n.*, der Fels, Felsen, 101.
roof, das Dach, *er*.
room, (space) der Raum, *e*; (of a house) das Zimmer, die Stube.
rose, die Rose.
row, *n.*, die Reihe.
row, *v.*, rudern.
royal, königlich.
run, rennen, *M.*, laufen, *S.*; (*both aux.*, 298); — after, nach- (=*dat.*); — off, davon-; — up, heran-lau-*fen*, *S.*, f.; — away (from) entlau-*fen*, *S.*, f. (*dat.*).
rush, stürzen.
Russia, (das) Rußland.

S.

sack, (bag), der Sack, *e*.
sad, traurig.
sailor, der Matro'se.
sake, for the —, wegen, um . . . willen (*gen.*, 280); for my —, meint —, *etc.* (452, *b*).
same (the), derselbe, 208; all the —, ganz derselbe, einerlei; at the — time, zugleich.
Saturday, der Samstag, der Sonn-*abend*.
sausage, die Wurst, *pl.* *e*.
save, retten; (spare) sparen.

- saving**, sparsam.
- savior**, der Retter; the Saviour, der Heiland.
- Saxony**, (das) Sachsen.
- say**, sagen; he said to, sollen, 472.
- scholar**, (pupil) der Schüler; (learned) der Gelehrte (*part. noun*).
- school**, die Schule; —room, die Schulstube; boy's —, die Knabenschule.
- scold**, schelten, *S.*
- scream**, schreien, *S.*; *n.*, das Geschrei; *or infin. noun*.
- sea**, das Meer, —e, die See, —(e)n, 426; —sick, seekrank.
- seal**, *n.*, das Siegel; *v.*, siegeln, versiegeln.
- season** (of the year), die Jahreszeit.
- seat**, *n.*, der Sitz; *v.*, setzen; to take a —, sich setzen.
- second** (the), der zweite, der andere (of two). [*suchen*].
- see**, sehen, *S.*; call to — (visit), besuchen, *suchen*.
- seem**, scheinen, *S.*, vor-kommen, *S.*, *f.*
- seize**, greifen, *S.*
- self**, (*emph.*) selbst, selber; (*object*) the *refl. pron.*, 434.
- sell**, verkaufen.
- send**, schicken, senden, *M.*; — for (person) kommen lassen; (thing) holen lassen, *S.*
- sentiment**, die Gesinnung.
- servant**, (man) der Diener; (woman) die Dienerin; —-girl, die Magd, *ne*; body of —s, die Dienerschaft.
- serve**, dienen (*dat.*); (wait upon) bedienen (*acc.*).
- service**, der Dienst.
- set**, *tr.*, setzen; *intr.*, (go down) untergehen, *S.*, *f.*: — across, over, über-setzen, 287.
- settle**, *tr.*, (arrange) ordnen; (quiet) beruhigen.
- seven**, sieben; —ty, sieb(en)zig; —times, siebenmal.
- several**, mehrere, 157; — times, mehrmals. [*schwer*].
- severe**, (strict) streng; (grievous)
- shake**, schütteln.
- shall**, *modal*: sollen, 261, 472; *as fut. aux.*, 173.
- sharp**, scharf, *n.*
- she**, sie, (es, 452).
- shear**, scheren, *S.*
- sheep**, das Schaf, —e.
- sheet** (of paper), der Bogen, 431, *c.*
- shepherd**, der Schäfer; —ess, die Schäferin, —nen.
- sheriff**, der Scherif (*Eng.*).
- shine**, scheinen, *S.*; (glitter) glänzen.
- ship**, das Schiff, —e.
- shirt**, das Hemd, *gen.* —es, *pl.* —en.
- shoe**, der Schuh, —e.
- shoot**, schießen, *S.*
- shop**, der Laden, *pl.* —en, *or* —.
- shore**, das Ufer.
- short**, kurz, *n.*; —ly (time), bald, in kurzem; —ness, die Kürze.
- show**, *n.*, die Schau; *v.*, zeigen, weisen, *S.*, (guide) führen.
- shut**, schließen, *S.*, zu-machen.
- sick**, krank, *n.*
- side**, die Seite; on this, that — of, diesseit(ig), jenseit(ig) (*gen.*, 280).
- siege**, die Belagerung.
- sight**, der Anblick, die Ansicht (*pl.* —en); in — of, ansichtig (*gen.*).
- silent**, schweigend (*part. adj.*).
- silver**, das Silber; *adj.*, (of) —, silbern.
- sin**, die Sünde; —ner, der Sünder.
- since**, *prep.*, seit (*dat.*); *conj.*, (time) seit, seitdem; (reason) da, 486.

sing, fingen, *S.*
sink, finken, *S.*, *f.*
sir, Herr, mein Herr, 97, 428.
sister, die Schwester.
sit, sitzen, *S.*; — down, sich setzen; —
 ting-room, das Wohnzimmer.
six, sechs; —th (the), der sechste; —
 part, das Sechstel.
skin, *n.*, die Haut, *we*; (pelt) das Fell,
 —e; *v.*, schinden, *S.* [blau.
sky, der Himmel; — blue, Himmels-
sledge, der Schlitten.
sleep, *v.*, schlafen, *S.*; —ing-room,
 das Schlafzimmer; *n.*, der Schlaf;
 —y, schläfrig; —less, schlaflos; go
 to —, ein-schlafen (sein).
slipper, der Pantof'fel (105).
small, klein.
smile, lächeln.
sneak, schleichen, *S.*, *f.*
snore, schnarchen.
snow, *n.*, der Schnee; *v.*, schneien; —
 white, schneeweiß.
so, so, 485; (then) also.
soap, die Seife.
society, die Gesellschaft.
soldier, der Soldat', —en.
some, einige (*pl.*); welches (*sing.*);
as part. adj. often not transl.; —
 body, one, jemand; —thing, etwas;
 —times, zuweilen; —where, irgend-
 wo; —day, einst.
son, der Sohn, *we*; —in-law, der
 Schwiegersohn.
song, der Gesang, *we*; das Lied, —er.
soon, bald; *comp.*, eher; (earlier)
 früher; (rather) lieber; as — (as),
 sobald.
Sophia, Sophi'e, *gen.* —ns.
sorry, betrübt (*part. adj.*); I am —,
 es tut mir leid, 437.

sort, die Sorte, what — of, was
 für.
soul, die Seele.
sound, klingen, *S.*; *n.*, der Klang, *we*.
sour, sauer.
South, der Süd(en); —ern, südlich;
 —wards, südwärts.
Spain, (das) Spa'nien.
Spanish, spanisch.
spark, der Funke, *gen.* —ns, *pl.* —n, 99.
speak, sprechen, *S.*, reden, 212.
speech, die Sprache; die Rede; *infin.*
n., das Sprechen.
speed, die Eile; —y, eilig.
spell, buchstabie'ren, 215, *b.*
spend, (money) aus-geben, *S.*; (time)
 zu-bringen, *M.*
spin, spinnen, *S.*
spite, der Widerwille, 99; in — of,
 trotz (*gen.* 280).
splendid, prächtig.
spoil, verderben, *S.*, *intr.*, *f.*
sportsman, der Jäger.
spring, (jump) springen, *S.*; (well)
 quellen, *S.*, (*both aux.*, 298); *n.*, der
 Sprung, *we*; die Quelle; (season)
 der Frühling.
sprout, *v.*, sprießen, *S.*
square, (figure) das Viereck; (place)
 der Platz, *we*; *adj.*, viereckig.
stable, der Stall, *we*; —boy, der
 Stallknecht.
staff, der Stab, *we*.
stair(s), die Treppe; up —, oben; .
 down —, unten; (motion) —, her-,
 hin-unter.
stand, stehen, *S.*; (endure), aus-hal-
 ten, *S.*; — by (help), bei-stehen, *S.*,
 (*dat.*); — still (stop), stehen blei-
 ben, *S.*, *f.*
star, der Stern.

start, (depart) ab-fahren, *S.*, *f.*, ab-reisen, *f.*
state, der Staat, *gen.* -es, *pl.* -en.
station, die Station'; (house) der Bahnhof, *2e.*
statue, die Bildsäule.
stay, bleiben, *S.*, *f.*; (a time) verweilen.
steal, stehlen, *S.*
steel, der Stahl; — pen, die Stahlfeder; *adj.*, stählen.
step, *v.*, treten, *S.*, *f.*; *n.*, der Tritt; stair —, die Stufe.
stick, der Stock, *2e.*
still, *adj.*, still(e); *adv.*, (time) noch; (however) doch, 485.
stone, der Stein; of —, steinern.
stoop (down), sich bücken.
storm, der Sturm, *2e.*; —y, stürmisch.
story, (tale) die Geschichte, die Sage; (of a house) der Stock, *pl.* *2e.* [aus.
straight, recht, gerade; — on, gerade
strange (foreign), fremd; (odd) sonderbar.
stranger, der Fremde (*adj. n.*).
stream, der Strom, *2e.*; *v.*, strömen.
street, die Straße.
strength, die Stärke; *v.*, stärken.
strike, schlagen, *S.*; (hit) treffen, *S.*; (the mind) auf-fallen *S. f. (dat.)*.
strong, stark, *2e.*
student, der Student', -en.
study, *v.*, studie'ren, 215; *n.*, das Studium, *gen.* -s, *pl.*, 118.
subject, der Gegenstand, *2e.*
succeed, gelingen, *S.*, *f. impers. (dat.)*; (follow) folgen, *f. (dat.)*.
such, solcher; — a, ein solcher, solch ein, 207; *before adj.*, so, 456.
sudden, plötzlich.
suffer, leiden. *S.*; (allow) erlauben.

suffice, genügen, genug sein.
sufficient, genug, hinreichend (*part.*).
sugar, der Zucker.
suite, das Gefolge.
sum, die Summe.
summer, der Sommer.
summit, der Gipfel, die Höhe.
sun, die Sonne; — shine, der Sonnenschein.
Sunday, der Sonntag.
sunken (*part. adj.*), gesunken.
superior, überlegen; — to (*dat.*).
suppose, an-nehmen, *S.*; *idiom.*, see 465; — (that), angenommen, gesetzt (daß), 480.
sure, sicher, gewiß; *adv.*, —ly, gewiß; doch, ja, wohl, 485.
surrender, *tr.*, übergeben, *S.*; *intr.*, sich ergeben (243), *S.*
sweet, süß.
swell, schwellen, *S.*, *intr.*, *f.*
swim, schwimmen, *S.*; (*aux.*, 298).
swing, schwingen, *S.*
Swiss, *adj.*, schweizerisch; *n.*, der Schweizer; *f.*, die —in.
Switzerland, die Schweiz, 416.
sword, das Schwert, —er, der Degen.

T.

table, der Tisch, die Tafel.
tailor, der Schneider.
take, nehmen, *S.*; — from, *dat. pers.*; — off (clothes), aus-ziehen, *S.*; — place, statt-finden, *S.*, 379; — a drive, ride, walk (*see these words*).
talk, sprechen, *S.*; — of, besprechen; *n.*, das Gespräch.
tall, hoch, 133, *a.*, 156; (person) groß, 156.

- task**, die Aufgabe.
- taste**, schmecken; (try) probieren, 215; *n.*, der Geschmack.
- tea**, der Tee.
- teach**, lehren, 442; —er, der Lehrer.
- tear**, reißen, *S.*; — to pieces, zerreißen.
- tell**, sagen; (a story) erzählen; — a lie, lügen, *S.*
- temptation**, die Versuchung.
- ten**, zeh'n; the —th, der zehnte; —fold, zehnfach.
- testimony**, (testimonial) das Zeugnis, —ße.
- than**, als; rarely denn, 449, 2.
- thank**, danken (*dat.*); *n.*, —s, der Dank.
- that**, *dem.*, der, jener, dieser, 456; *rel.*, der, welcher, 459; *conj.*, daß; in order —, damit, 468, *c.*
- the**, der, *def. art.*, 416; *adv. correl.*, the . . . the, je . . . desto, 334.
- thee**, dich (*acc.*), dir (*dat.*).
- theft**, der Diebstahl (*gen.* —s).
- their**, ihr; —s, ihrer, der ihrige.
- them**, sie (*acc.*), ihnen (*dat.*); or *dem.*, 457; —selves, (*emph.*), selbst, selber; (*reflex.*) sich (selbst).
- then**, (time) dann, damals; (inference) denn, also.
- theology**, die Theologie'.
- there**, dort, da (*in comp.*, 184); *expletive*, — (is, are), es, 294; *adj.*, dortig.
- therefore**, deshalb, daher, also.
- they**, sie, or *dem.* 457.
- thief**, der Dieb.
- thine**, *adj.*, dein; *pron.*, deiner, der deineige.
- thing**, das Ding, —e; any—, some—, etwas; not any—, nichts.
- think**, denken, *M.*; — of, (*as object*), *gen.* or an (*acc.*); (opinion) von (*dat.*); (believe), glauben.
- third**, *adj.*, (the) der dritte; *n.*, das Drittel (*part*).
- thirst**, *n.*, der Durst; *v.*, dürsten (or durften); —y, durstig; I am —, es dürstet mich, 290.
- thirty**, dreißig.
- this**, dieser, der; *in comp.*, hier, 401.
- thou**, du, 186.
- though**, *adv.*, doch, jedoch; *conj.* (although), obgleich, wenn . . . auch, 485.
- thought**, der Gedanke, *gen.* —ns, *pl.* —n, 99; — of, an (*acc.*).
- thousand**, (a), tausend.
- threaten**, drohen (*dat.*).
- three**, drei; — cornered, —edig, — times, —mal; of — kinds, —erlei.
- thresh**, Dreschen, *S.*
- throne**, der Thron, —e, or —en.
- through**, *adv.*, durch, 287; *prep.*, durch (*acc.*); (motive) aus (*dat.*).
- thunder**, der Donner; *v.*, donnern.
- Thursday**, der Donnerstag.
- thus**, so, 485; also (inference).
- thy**, dein.
- ticket**, das Billet'; take —, lösen.
- till**, *prep.*, bis, bis auf (*acc.*); *conj.*, bis, bis daß.
- time**, die Zeit *pl.* —en; (counting) das Mal, *in comp.*, =mal; of that —, *adj.*, damalig; —table, der Fahrplan; at (what) —, um (*acc.*).
- timid**, furchtsam.
- tired**, müde; — to death, todmüde.
- tiresome**, mühsam, langweilig.
- to**, zu; (place) nach (*dat.*); an, auf, bis (*acc.*); or by *dat. case*; before *infin.*, zu (um . . . zu).

together, zusammen.

too, *adv.*, zu; *conj.*, (also) auch.

tooth, der Zahn, ^{2e}; —ache, das Zahnweh.

top, die Höhe, der Gipfel.

torment, quälen.

towards, nach (*dat.*), gegen (*acc.*).

tower, der Turm, ^{2e}.

town, die Stadt, ^{2e}; —councillor, der Stadtrat, ^{2e}. [Schneßzug.

train, der Zug, ^{2e}; express—, der

transitory, vergänglich.

translate, übersetzen, 287.

travel, reisen (*aux.*, 298); *n.*, —er, der Reisende (*part. n.*).

tree, der Baum, ^{2e}.

trip, (journey), die Reise.

trouble, *n.*, (pains) die Mühe; (affliction) die Trübsal, —e.

trousers, die Beinkleider (*pl.*).

true, wahr; (faithful), treu; *adv.*, —ly, wahrlich, wahrhaftig; zwar.

trust, trauen (*dat.*).

truth, die Wahrheit.

try, versuchen; (test), probie'ren.

Tuesday, der Dienstag.

turn, drehen, wenden, *M.*; — in, einkehren; — out, geraten, *S.*, *f.*; — pale, erleichen, *S.*, *f.*

twelve, zwölf.

twenty, zwanzig; —second, der zweiund—ste.

twice, zweimal.

two, zwei, beide, 460.

U.

umbrella, der Regenschirm:

uncle, der Oheim.

under, *adv.*, unten, unter, 287; *prep.*, unter (*dat.*, *acc.*).

understand, verstehen, *S.*

undertake, unternehmen, *S.*

undress (one's self), sich ausziehen, *S.*

unfavorable, ungünstig (*to*, *dat.*).

unfortunate, unglücklich; *as adverb usually*, —erweise, 399.

unhappy, (*same as preceding*).

universe, das Weltall (*gen.* —s).

university, die Universität'.

unjust, ungerecht.

unknown, unbekannt (*part. adj.*).

unmanageable, unlenksam.

unripe, unreif.

until, *prep.*, bis, bis auf (*acc.*); *conj.*, bis, bis daß.

unwell, unwohl.

unworthy, unwürdig.

up, *adv.*, auf, herauf, hinauf; — hill, bergan'; — stairs, oben.

upon, *prep.*, auf, über (*dat.*, *acc.*).

upper (the), der obere; —most, der oberste, 158.

us, uns (*dat. acc.*).

use, brauchen (*rarely gen.*); — up, verbrauchen; make — of, sich bedienen (*gen.*).

useful, nützlich (*dat.*).

usual, gewöhnlich.

utmost (the), der äußerste, 158.

utter, *v.*, äußern, 214

V.

vacation-ramble, die Ferienreise.

vain, eitel; in —, vergebens.

valley, das Thal, ^{2er}.

value, der Wert.

vanish, schwinden, *S.*, *f.*

vanity, die Eitelkeit.

very, sehr; *abs. sup.*, höchst, äußerst.

victor, der Sieger; —ious, siegreich.
view, (sight) die Aussicht; (opinion) die Ansicht.
village, das Dorf, „er; — community, die Dorfschaft.
virtue, die Tugend.
virtuous, tugendhaft.
visit, besuchen; *n.*, der Besuch.
voice, die Stimme.
volume, der Band, „e, 426.
vowel, der Vokal, —e; — change, der Umlaut; — modification, der Umlaut.

W.

wait, warten; — for, rarely *gen.*, 434; usually auf (*acc.*); —ing-room, der Wartesaal; *n.*, —er, der Kellner.
wake (up), auf-wachen; *tr.*, wecken.
walk, *v.*, gehen, *S.*, f.; go to —, spazie'ren —; *n.*, der Spazier'gang.
wall, die Mauer; (of a room) die Wand, „e.
want, *v.*, brauchen, bedürfen (261, *gen.*); *n.*, (need) das Bedürfnis; (lack) der Mangel (an, *dat.*).
war, der Krieg.
wardrobe, die Garderobe.
warm, warm; I am —, mir ist —.
wash, waschen, *S.*; also reflex.
watch, wachen; *tr.*, bewachen; *n.*, die Wache; (time) die Uhr, —en.
water, das Wasser; *v.*, wässern, begießen, *S.*
wave, *n.*, die Welle; *v.*, wehen; *tr.*, schwingen, *S.*
way, der Weg; (manner) die Weise.
we, wir.
weak, schwach, „.
wealthy, reich, vermögend (*part. adj.*).

wear, tragen, *S.*
weary, müde, ermüdet (*part. adj.*).
weather, das Wetter; —cock, der Wetterhahn, „e.
Wednesday, der Mittwoch, 388.
week, die Woche.
weep, weinen.
weigh, wiegen, *S.*; *tr.*, wägen (242).
welcome, willkommen. [486.
well, *adj.*, wohl; *adv.*, gut, wohl,
what, *inter. rel. pron.*, was; *inter. adj.*, welcher; —ever, alles was, was . . . auch, 459; — kind of, was für, 221.
when, *inter.*, wann; *indef.*, wenn; *def.*, als, da, 486; —ever, wenn.
whence, woher, or *sep.*, 483.
where, wo; (*in comp., before vowels*, *vor*, 222).
whether, *conj.*, ob.
which, *inter.*, welcher; *rel.*, welcher, der, 234.
while, *n.*, die Weile; *conj.*, (whilst) während, indem, indessen, 486.
whip, die Peitsche.
whistle, pfeifen, *S.*
white, weiß.
Whitsuntide, Pfingsten (*pl.*).
who, *inter.*, wer; *rel.*, welcher, der, 234; (he) —, —ever, wer, wer . . . auch, 459.
whole, ganz, 144; *n.*, das Ganze.
whose, *inter.*, wessen; *rel.*, dessen, deren, 234.
why, warum, weshalb, was, 458.
wicked, böse.
wife, die Frau, —en.
wilderness, die Wüste, die Wildnis.
will, *n.*, der Wille, *gen.* —ns, *pl.* —n, 99; (last) das Testament; *v.*, wollen, 261; *modal*, 472; *as fut.*, 173.

willing, willig; to be —, willens sein.
win, gewinnen, *S.*
wind, der Wind.
wind, winden, *S.*; — up (a clock), aufziehen, *S.*
window, das Fenster.
wine, der Wein; — glass, das Weinglas, *er.*
wing, der Flügel; —ed, geflügelt.
William, Wilhelm.
winter, der Winter.
wise, weise.
wish, *n.*, der Wunsch, *er*; *v.*, wünschen.
with, (together) mit, samt, bei (*dat.*); (means) durch (*acc.*).
within, *adv.*, innen, darin; *prep.*, (time) binnen (*dat.*); (place) innerhalb (*gen.*).
without, *adv.*, draußen; *prep.*, ohne (*acc.*), außer (*dat.*), außerhalb (*gen.*).
woman, das Weib, —er, die Frau, —en.
wonder, *n.*, das Wunder, —; *v.*, sich wundern (über, *acc.*).
wood, (material) das Holz; (place) der Wald, *er*; —en, hölzern.
woodman (cutter), der Holzhauer.
word, das Wort, *pl.* *er*, —e, 425.
work, *n.*, das Werk, —e, die Arbeit; *v.*, arbeiten; — people, die Arbeitsleute (*pl.* 426).
world, die Welt, —en.
worm, der Wurm, *er.*

worth, *adj.*, wert (*gen.*); — while, der Mühe wert. [*den.*]
wound, *n.*, die Wunde; *v.*, verwunden
wreath, der Kranz, *er.*
write, schreiben, *S.*
writer (author), der Schriftsteller.
writing, *n.*, die Schrift, —en; in —, schriftlich.
wrong, *adv.*, unrecht; *n.*, das Unrecht; to be —, unrecht haben.

Y.

year, das Jahr, —e.
yellow, gelb.
yeoman, der Bauer, *gen.* —s, *pl.* —n.
yes, ja.
yesterday, gestern; *adj.*, of —, gestrig; day before —, vorgestern.
yet, (time) noch; not —, noch nicht; (however) doch, jedoch, 485.
yield, weichen, *S.*, nachgeben, *S.*: *both dat.*
yonder, *adj.*, jener; *adv.*, dort.
you, (*pl.*) ihr; (*sing.*) du; (*s. or pl.*) Sie, 189, *note.*
young, jung, *er*; — man, der Jüngling; — lady, das Fräulein.
your, yours, *adj. and pron.* (*see you*); —self, selves, (*emph.*), selbst; *or refl. object*, 454.
youth, die Jugend; (young man), der Jüngling.

APPENDIX.

I. Plural of Nouns.

See Foot-Note, p. 46. The following lists are added for reference: —

1. STRONG I. (a) The following masculines modify the vowel (§ 76). Der Apfel, Ader, Boden, Bruder, Garten, Hafen, Hammel, Hammer, Handel, Mangel, Mantel, Nagel, Ofen, Sattel, Schnabel, Schwager, Vater, Vogel.

(b) Variant are: Der Faden, Graben, Laden, Kabel, Schade(n), Wagen; and the neuter, das Lager — with a few others, rarely, as der Bogen, der Magen, etc.

2. STRONG II. (a) The following masculine monosyllables do not modify the vowel (§ 83, b): Der Kal, Kar, Arm, Bord, Born, Docht, Dolch, Drud (but in comp. Ausdrücke, etc.), Forst, Grad, Gurt, Hauch, Huf, Hund, Lachs, Laut, Luchs, Molch, Mond (Monden = *months*), Pfad, Pol, Puls, Punkt, Schuft, Schuh, Stoff, Tag, Zoll (*inch*), and a few others, with some of variant usage (§ 424-5).

(b) But the following foreign masculines modify the vowel of the last syllable: Der Altar', Bischof, Choral', General', Kanal', Kaplan', Kardinal', Morast', Palast' — to which may be added the neuters, das Hospital', Spital' (pl. -äler).

3. STRONG III. For masc. plurals in -er, see pp. 29-30. There may be added — though with variant forms — Der Dorn, Strauß (*nosegay*), Wicht, Bösewicht (§ 105).

4. WEAK. For masculine monosyllables of weak declension see p. 34. There may be added: Der Fels (§ 101), Fink, Gef, Nerv, Spaz; also (§ 121), Steinmeß, Vorsahr. Der Bursch, der Gesell (as also der Hirt, der Dohs, and others rarely) occur with or without final e.

5. The strong feminines (§ 82) are the monosyllables: Die Angst, Art, Bank (*bench*), Braut, Brunst, Brust, Faust, Frucht, Gans, Gruft, Hand, Haut, Kluft, Kraft, Kuh, Kunst, Laus, Lust, Luft, Nacht, Magd, Maus, Nacht, Naht, Nuß, Stadt, Wand, Wurf, Zunft; and, with variant forms, Not, Sau, Schnur, Zucht. Also, =sucht, =kunst in comp., Armbrust, Geschwulst; and Mutter, Tochter (§ 77).

6. Neuter monosyllables with plural -e (§ 82) are:

(a) In -r: Das Haar, Meer, Jahr, Meer, Paar, Rohr, Tier, Tor (*gate*), and the following:

(b) Das Beet, Beil, Bein, Boot, Brot, Ding (*thing*), Erz, Fell, Fest, Gift, Heft, Joch, Knie, Kreuz, Loß, Maß, Neg, Pferd, Pfund, Pult, Recht, Reh, Reich, Riff, Roß, Salz, Schaf, Schiff, Schwein, Seil, Sieb, Spiel, Stück, Werk, Zelt, Zeug, Ziel, with a few others, and some of variant usage (§ 105).

7. The most important nouns of *mixed declension* are given § 99-104. There may be added, though with some variation of usage: Der Gebatter, Lorbeer, Pfau (?), Strauß (*ostrich*), Untertan, Zierat, and the neuter, das Leid, with a few foreign words, as Kon'sul, Intereſ'se, Juwel', Statut'.

8. Other lists might be added, but hardly with advantage to the student. For special irregularities, variant or double forms, etc., reference must be made to the dictionaries. (See also §§ 105, 424-6).

II. Uses of Some Prepositions.

See § 447. The following are selected for illustration. The arrangement is made alphabetical, for reference:

An, with dative or accusative, at or to a point.

1. With dative: (a) *Place at or near*: (1) er steht an der Türe, an der Ecke, (nah) an der Wand, etc.; (2) **on**: der Hut hängt an der Wand; an dem Ufer stehen; die Wacht am Rhein; and (3) **of**, of battles named for *rivers*: die Schlacht an der Alma (see bei).

(b) *Relative point or degree* (see pred. superl. § 160): Die Tage sind jetzt am längsten, (*at the*) longest.

(c) *Definite specification*, (1) primarily of *place*, **in**: lahm an einem Fuße; (2) *manner*, **by**: an der Hand greifen, führen, halten, ziehen, *by the hand*; hence, *means*, **by**: an der Stimme erkennen, *to know by the voice*; (3) *plenty or want*, **of, in**: reich, arm, stark, schwach an; Überfluß, Mangel, an Geld; *excess, want, of money*. (4) *cause*, **from**: leiden, sterben, an; **from**, or **of** (a disease; see vor). (5) And with verbs, as fehlen, hindern, zweifeln, *to doubt of*; teilnehmen, Lust finden, *to take pleasure in*, etc.

(d) *Time*, definite without duration, **at, in**: am Morgen geht die Sonne auf; am Anfange; am Ende. **On**: am Montag; am neunten Mai (dates § 309); an meinem Geburtstage (see zu; and for time of day, um).

(e) In many phrases, as, es ist an mir zu reden, *my turn to speak*; es ist

nichts an der Geschichte, *nothing in the story*; am Leben, *alive*; an seiner Stelle, *in his place*; an dessen Stelle, *instead of that*, etc.

2. With accusative, *motion or direction to*.

(a) *Place — to, on, against*: er geht an die Ecke, stellt den Tisch an das Fenster, hängt den Hut an die Wand; klopft an die Türe; stößt den Fuß an einen Stein; lehnt sich an die Mauer; and in phrases like: An die Arbeit gehen, *go to work*, etc. So, with motion implied (where sometimes dat. of ind. object): einen Brief schreiben; ein Buch senden; eine Rede halten—*an, to*; and in address, without verb — letters, poems, etc., as: an Emma, an die Freude.

(b) *Figuratively, direction of mind*: denken, erinnern, mahnen, *an, of*; glauben, *an, in*; gewöhnen *an, to*, etc., and the corresponding nouns: der Gedanke, Glaube, *an*; as, ich glaube an einen Gott, *in one God* (see denken von p. 134).

(c) *Number or time*; here *an, alone*, denotes indefinite amount, *up to, or nearly*: es kostet an die zehn Taler; more usually with *bis, to, till*: bis an das Ende; vom Morgen bis an den Abend, etc.

Auf, with dat. or accus., *on, upon*, a surface.

1. With dative: (a) *Place, on, upon*, literally, as: auf dem Tische, dem Berge, der See, dem Schiffe, der Straße, sein, etc. Hence (b), with places implying *elevation or importance, at*: auf meinem Zimmer (*up stairs*); auf dem Schlosse (*up at*); and so, auf der Universität, der Ausstellung, dem Ball, dem Markte, der Post, sein, etc. Also (c), local *occupation or condition, at, on*: Er ist auf der Schule (= *still a pupil, while in school* = in der Schule); auf der Jagd; auf einer Reise, etc. And hence in phrases like auf dem Lande, *in the country*; auf der Stelle, *on the spot*; auf der That, *in the very act*, etc. (d) *Metaphorically, resting or standing on*: bauen, beruhen, beharren, bestehen (*insist*) auf (yet also accusative).

2. Much more largely, sometimes when dative might be expected, *auf* is used with accusative:

(a) *Place, with verbs of motion or action, corresponding to a, b, c above*; *as, on*: auf den Berg, die See, die Straße, gehen; *to*: auf den Ball, den Markt, die Post, das Land, gehen; *on or for*: auf die Jagd, eine Reise, gehen, etc.

(b) (**Up**) *to*, a point, or degree; as: bis auf den Tod; er hat mich außers äußerste gebracht; — and here the *absolute superlative* (§ 315): außers schönste grüßen, etc.

(c) *Direction, on or after*: Schlag auf Schlag, *blow upon (after) blow*; der Sonnenschein folgt auf den Regen. Hence, *on, as occasion*: das tue ich

auf Ihren Befehl, *on your order*. And so, in phrases expressing *manner*, **in**: auf diese Weise, *in this way*; auf Deutsch, *in German*; aufs neue, *anew*, etc.

(d) **Direction on or toward** an object or purpose: sie hat immer ein Auge auf das Kind; er gibt viel Geld auf Bücher aus, *on or for books* (thus, auf daß, *for, in order that*). Hence, as *prospective condition*, **on**: auf die Gefahr handeln, *on the risk*; auf Leib und Leben; auf diese Bedingung; or **in**: auf diesen Fall; auf alle Fälle (literally, *for all cases*); or **at**: auf meine Kosten, *at my expense*, and other phrases.

(e) So, with verbs and adjectives, denoting direction of mind **on or towards** as, **for**: hoffen, warten; **to**: antworten, hören, merken: er antwortet mir; but: auf meine Frage; er hört auf meine Rede; **on**: rechnen, sich verlassen, es wagen, zählen; — adjectives, **of**: eifersüchtig, neidisch, stolz; **at**: böse, erbost, etc.

(f) **Time** (1) **on, towards**: es geht auf neun; ein Viertel auf drei, *a quarter past two*; (2) prospectively **for** a point, or period: eine Reise auf den ersten Mai festsetzen — auf eine Woche verschieben; er verreist auf eine Woche, *for a week*; and in phrases like: auf immer, *for ever*; auf Wiedersehen, *till we meet again*, etc., in *prospective* sense, **for, till**. (3) **On or at** a point, precisely: Kommen Sie auf die Minute, *at the minute*; auf einmal, *all at once*.

NOTE. — Auf is much used adverbially (*up, open*, etc.), and in adverbial phrases.

Aus, with dative only — **out of** (from within).

(a) **Place** — motion **out of**: (1) Aus dem Hause kommen; Geld aus der Tasche nehmen; aus dem Fenster sehen, *to look out of the window*; sometimes **from** (yet strictly **from within**): aus der Stadt kommen, etc.

(2) More rarely removal **away from**: aus den Augen; aus der Mode, *out of sight, fashion*, etc.

(b) **Source** — **from, by**: (1) Ich sehe aus Ihrem Briefe — aus seinem Betragen; ich weiß aus Erfahrung — aus vielen Gründen; aus Versehen, *by mistake*.

Hence, (2) **origin, from**: Er stammt aus einer alten Familie — aus Berlin; ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten; Nachrichten — Briefe — aus Deutschland, etc.

(c) **Material** — **out of, of**: Aus Gold gemacht; aus Lehm gebrannt; der Mensch besteht aus Leib und Seele; aus nichts wird nichts; werden aus, *to become of*, etc.

(d) **Motive** — **from, for**: Aus Eitelkeit, Geiz, Not handeln; aus Mangel an Geld, *for want of money*; aus Achtung gegen Sie, *out of respect*, etc.

Bei, with dative only — **by, near**.

(a) **Place** — properly (**near**) **by**: Er wohnt bei der Kirche; ich stand bei dem König. So in many phrases: bei Tische, *at table*; bei Hofe, *at court*; beim

Wein sitzen; ich habe kein Geld bei mir, *about me*; die Schlacht bei Leipzig, *of* (with names of towns); bei Sinnen sein, *in one's senses*; bei Seite, *aside*, etc.

(b) More especially **at one's house**: (1) Bei dem Schneider, *at the tailor's* (house or shop); er wohnt bei mir, *with me* (at my house—mit mir, elsewhere). Hence (2) as *characteristic* — **with, among, in**: Das ist bei uns Mode — bei den Deutschen üblich, *with us, among the G.*; das Wort findet sich bei den Dichtern — bei Goethe, *in the poets*, etc. Das steht bei Ihnen, *stands with—depends on—you*; fragen Sie bei ihm nach, *inquire of him*, etc.

(c) *Instrument* — **by** (less frequently than in English): (1) Bei der Hand nehmen; bei seinem Namen nennen, *to call by his name*. So (2) in *adjuration*: bei Gott, *by (the help of) God*; bei meiner Ehre, *by, or on my honor*; and (3) *condition* — **on**: bei Lebensstrafe, *on penalty of death*; bei alle dem, *with (in spite of) all that*.

(d) *Time* — (1) **on**, as occasion: Bei dieser Gelegenheit, *on this occasion*; bei diesen Worten, *at these words*. And (2) in phrases, **during, by**: bei Nacht; bei Tage; bei Lichte, *by candlelight*; bei hellem Tage, *in broad day*; bei diesem Wetter; beim Lesen, *while reading*. Rarely with numbers, meaning *nearly*.

Durch, with accusative only — **through**.

(a) *Place* — motion **through**: Durch die Stadt — den Wald — reiten; durch einen Fluß schwimmen, *across a river*; durch alle Gefahren siegreich, etc.

(b) *Means* — **through, by**: Der Brief kam durch die Post, *through (by) the mail*; er ward reich durch den Handel — durch Ihren Beistand, *by trade*, etc.; durch einen Pfeil verwundet, *by an arrow*, etc.

(c) *Time* — extension **through**: here durch usually follows the noun (more frequently, hindurch): das ganze Jahr durch; den Tag hindurch, *all day long*.

NOTE. — Durch is much used adverbially (*throughout*); and, as prefix, is separable or inseparable, with changed sense (§ 287).

Für, with accusative only — **for** (originally same as vor).

(a) Primarily, place — in front of; hence, **in behalf of, for**: wir kämpfen für König und Vaterland; meine Freunde stimmen für mich, *vote for me*; ich sorge für dich, etc.

(b) Hence, **in place of, for**: (1) Er handelt für mich, *for me (as my agent)*; billige Waren für b(a)ares Geld, *cheap goods for cash*; ich nehme es für Bezahlung an, *for, or in, payment*. (2) *Price* — **for**: für zehn Taler kaufen — verkaufen. (3) And **for, as**: in phrases like achten, erklären, gelten, halten, sich ausgeben — für (§ 443, c), etc.

(c) Hence, *fitness, destination* — **for**: Das Glück ist nicht für mich; Spielzeug für Kinder, *toys for children*, etc. Or (2) *proportion, correspondence*:

Er ist alt für seine Jahre, *old for his years*; and phrases like Mann für Mann; Tag für Tag; Wort für Wort, etc. (3) *Restriction*: für heute, für dieses Mal, *for this time*; für mich, *as for me*; an und für sich, *in and for itself*, *per se*, etc.

In, with dative or accusative — **in, into**.

1. With dative — position **in** (nearly as in English).

(a) *Place or time*—**in, within**: in diesem Hause—diesem Jahre—der nächsten Woche; in Berlin; im Winter, etc.; **at**: in der Kirche — der Schule, *in school* (see auf); in Kurzem, *in a short time*; in aller Frühe, *as soon as possible*: im Alter von 60 Jahren, *at the age*, etc.

(b) *Condition*: in Gedanken; in Verzweiflung; in einer unglücklichen Lage — Stimmung — sein, etc. Im Begriff sein zu schreiben (*in the idea*) on the *point of writing* (§ 465).

(c) *Manner*: im Geiste beten, *in spirit*; in der Eile, *in haste*; in einem beleidigenden Tone, *in (with) an insulting tone*; in Wahrheit; in der That, *in fact*; bestehen in, *to consist in*.

2. With accusative — motion **into**.

(a) *Place* — **into**: in das Haus — den Garten — gehen, etc.; **to**: in die Kirche — die Schule — das Theater — gehen, *to church*, etc.; **in**: er schnitt sich ins Bein — hatte einen Schnitt in die Wange, *a cut in his cheek*.

(b) *Condition* — change **into**: Wasser in Wein — Traurigkeit in Freude — verwandeln; in zwei Stücke teilen, *into two pieces*; in Üppigkeit verfallen; in die Flucht jagen, *to put to flight*; einwilligen in, *to consent*; sich mischen in, *to meddle with*.

NOTE. — **In**, as prefix, is ein — see also herein, hinein.

Mit, with dative only — company, participation with.

(a) Usually **with**: wohnen — essen — mit (see bei); also **to**: sprechen mit; verwandt mit, *related to*; **on**: Mitleid haben mit, *to have pity on*; **by**: ein Mann mit Namen Schmidt, *by name* (see bei), etc.

(b) *Time* — coincident **with**: Mit dem Frühling kommen die Schwärben; mit diesen Worten ging er ab; mit Tagesanbruch, *at (with) daybreak*, etc.

(c) *Instrument* — **with**: Mit einem Messer schneiden; mit einem Dolche stechen, etc.; mit Füßen treten, *under foot*; mit b(a)arem Gelde kaufen, *to buy for cash*; mit der Post schicken, *by mail*; ich sage damit, *I mean*; multiplicieren — dividieren — mit, *by*.

(d) *Manner* — **with**: mit Vergnügen; mit großen Augen ansehen, *with surprise*; mit Vorsatz — Fleiß, *on purpose*, and various adverbial phrases.

NOTE. — **Mit**, often stands as adverb, without object — with, along (with).

Nach with dative only (akin to *nach*, *near*)—towards, to, after.

(a) *Place*—direction towards, to (not of persons): Ich reife nach Eng-land — nach Berlin — nach dem Süden; nach der Stadt — nach Hause — gehen, *home*.

(b) Hence, of object aimed at—after, for: laufen nach, *to run after*; nach den Sternen greifen, *to grasp at*. So, fragen, sehen, streben, schiden — nach, *after*, or *for*; schießen, trachten, werfen, zielen — nach, *at*, etc.; and with adjectives, begierig nach, etc.

(c) *Time*—after: (1) Nach Neujahr; nach zehn Uhr; nach einer Minute; 2) succession after, next to: nach dir ist er mein liebster Freund, *next to you*, etc.

(d) Hence, after, according to (in this sense often follows): Nach einer Vorschrift schreiben, *after a copy*; nach Befehl handeln; nach meiner Meinung; nach meiner Uhr, *by my watch*; nach den Gesetzen; dem Alter nach, *according to age*; der Reihe nach, *in a row*. And in phrases like richten, urteilen — nach, *to judge by*; riechen, schmecken — nach, *to taste of*.

Über, with dat. or accus., over, above.

1. With dative, position over.

(a) *Place*, over: Der Nebel steht über dem Berge; niemand steht über dem König (*in rank*).

(b) over, beyond: Über dem Meere lag eine neue Welt.

(c) over, during: Über dem Buche, dem Lesen, schlief er ein, *while reading*; über dem Spiele entstand der Streit, *during the game* (over, concerning = über das Spiel), etc.

2. More freely with accusative, of motion, extent, action, expressed or implied, over, above, beyond, about, etc.

(a) *Direction* over: Über die Brücke gehen; über das Haus fliegen; den Hut über den Tisch hängen; eine Brücke über den Fluß schlagen, *over* (*across*) *the river*, etc. Here belong such verbs as herrschen, regieren, siegen—über, etc.

(b) Over, beyond: (1) Über das Ziel schießen, *beyond the mark*; über den König setzen; über eine Meile weit; über meine Kräfte; über alle Maßen; über 60 Jahre alt. Also (2) past, by: Über Paris nach London, *via Paris*; and (3) after, in addition to: Briefe über Briefe schreiben, *letters upon letters*; einen Tag über den andern, *one day after another*, etc.

(c) *Time* beyond, after: (1) Über ein Jahr sehen wir uns wieder, *in* (*after*) *a year*; heute über zehn Tage, *ten days hence*; über kurz oder lang, *sooner or later*; (2) In some phrases, during (here usually follows the case):

über Nacht, *over night (in the night)*; die Nacht über, *all night*; den Sommer über, *all (through) the summer*.

(d) Frequently of *object* or *cause*: **about, concerning, of**, etc. Thus:

(1) With verbs, as sprechen, schreiben, erzählen—über, **about** (see von); (2) especially of emotions and their expression, as: sich ärgern, sich freuen, sich wundern, erschrecken; klagen, lachen, trauern, weinen—über, and with like adjectives, froh, traurig, etc., über, **of, for, at**, etc.

Um, with accus. only, **around, about**.

(a) *Place*: Um den Tisch sitzen, laufen; etwas um den Hals binden, tragen; die Gegend um Boston, etc.

(b) *Time, or number*—(1) indefinite, **about**: um Mitternacht; um zweihundert, *about 200*; but (2) of the *time of day*, definite, **at**: um welche Zeit? um zwei Uhr, *at two o'clock*, etc. Also (3) *excess, by*: um ein Jahr älter, *a year older*. (4) *Succession, after*: einer um den andern, *one after another*.

(c) *Rotation around, (1) alternation*: einen Tag um den andern, *every other day*; (2) *Exchange, for*: Auge um Auge, *an eye for an eye*; um einen hohen Preis kaufen, **for (at) a high price**. (3) *End, or loss*; um das Leben bringen, *to deprive of life*; um das Geld kommen, *to lose one's money*; es ist um mich geschehen, *all over with me*. Compare die Zeit ist um, *over* (as of a circuit completed), and so in many phrases.

(d) Very largely with remote object, **about, for**: um etwas streiten, um Brot, Verzeihung, bitten; um Geld spielen; um Rat fragen; um Hilfe rufen; um Gottes Willen, *for God's sake*. And with still more general reference: Wie steht es um ihn, um seine Gesundheit? *how is it about*, etc.? Es ist um sein Leben zu tun, *his life is at stake*, etc.

NOTE.—Sie stritten über, um, einen Apfel: über expresses cause of quarrel, um, the object of contention. This more remote sense of um is seen in the infin., um . . . zu, of *purpose*. Um has many uses in adverb phrases.

Unter; with dat. or acc., **under**.

1. With dative, position **under, beneath**. (a) *Place*: Unter einem Baume stehen; er steht tief unter dir (*in rank*); unter der Hand, *underhand, secretly*; unter Segel, *under sail*; unter meinem Schutze stehen, *under my protection*; unter den Gesetzen, *subject to the laws*; unter dieser Bedingung, **under (on)** this condition. So (2) *time*: unter der Regierung Napoleons; unter den deutschen Kaisern, *under*, etc.

(b) **Among**, frequently: (1) unter andern, *among other things*; die schönste unter allen (so, often, for part. gen., § 431): unter einander, *in confusion*;

sometimes (2) **between**: unter uns gesagt, *entre nous*; unter Brüdern, *confidentially*, etc., or (3) **amid**: unter Jubeln, *amid shouts*.

(c) **Below, less than**: Unter dem Wert angeben, unterm Preis kaufen, *below value*; unter zwanzig Jahren alt; unter aller Kritik, *beneath all criticism*.

2. With accusative, motion, **under, beneath** (a): unter einen Baum treten, sich flüchten, *to take refuge under*; er hat alle Dinge unter seine Füße getan, *put under*; ich nehme dich unter meinen Schutz, etc.

(b) **Among**: Untraut unter den Weizen säen, *to sow tares among the wheat*; unter die Soldaten gehen, *to enlist*.

Von, with dative only, **from, of, by**:

(a) *Place* (1) **motion from**: Er kommt von der Stadt; reist von Paris nach London; and in phrases, von oben, von hinten; von einander gehen, *to separate*, etc. (2) *Transition from*: von Worten zu Schlägen, *from words to blows*; von einer Krankheit genesen, *recover from*. (3) *Separation from*: sechs Meilen von Berlin; rein von; frei von Schulden, *free of debt*; freigesprochen von, *acquitted of*.

(b) *Time, from* (often with added adverb): von Morgen bis Abend; von heute; von Kindheit an; von Jugend auf; von Alters (Zeit) her, *from olden times*, etc.

(c) *Source, from*: (1) von ehrlichen Eltern geboren; etwas von einem verlangen, erhalten, etc., *to ask from, or of*; von Herzen, *from the heart*; von selbst, *voluntarily*, etc. (2) *Material, from, of*: Eine Brücke von Eisen (but aus Eisen machen), ein Herz von Stein (for the adj. § 432). (3) *Means, from, by*: er lebt von seinem Handel; von der Luft leben, *on air*; naß vom Regen; von Frost erstarrt, etc.

(d) *Agency, by*, especially of passive verb, usually personal (§ 274).

(e) *Specification, of* (and here often for genitive, § 431-2):

(1) der König von England; keiner von uns; trinken Sie von diesem Wein; and with adjectives: voll von, *full of*, etc. (§ 433). (2) *Description*: Ein Mann von Ehre, von 60 Jahren; ein Schauspieler von Profession, *by profession*; ein Teufel von einer Frau, *a devil of a woman*; and in many phrases. So with *names*, primarily **from** (local): thence **of**, as sign of nobility: Fürst von Bismard, etc.

(f) *Limiting object, of, concerning*; with verbs like denken, halten, hören, sagen, schreiben, sprechen, wissen, etc.: was denken Sie von ihm? *your opinion of* (see an); ich sprach davon, *of it, mentioned it* (darüber, *about it, in detail*).

Vor, with dat. or accus., in front of, before.

1. With dative: (a) *Place*, (1) position before: vor dem Tore stehen; vor meinen Augen; Schritt vor Schritt, *step by step*. (2) *In presence of, before*: vor dem Gerichte, dem Richter, stehen.

(b) *Time*, (1) priority before: vor Weihnachten; vor Christi Geburt; (2) preference before: vor allen Dingen, *before all, first*. (3) Especially of time past, ago: vor einem Jahre; vor Zeiten, *in times past*.

(c) In presence of before, from: (1) vor einem fliehen, to *flee from*; vor dem Tode erschrecken; and with like verbs: sich fürchten, zittern; sich hüten, berbergen, verstecken — vor, *before, or from* (to avoid), warnen vor, *to warn against*, etc. Hence (2) *Cause, from, or for*: vor Angst fliehen; vor Freude weinen; vor Hunger sterben (see aus).

2. With accusative, motion before: wir setzen uns vor das Thor (*go out and, etc.*); die Hand vor die Augen halten; vor (das) Gericht gefordert werden (with motion implied); siehe vor dich, *look before you* (direction); but ich sah es vor mir liegen (place), etc.

Zu, with dative only, properly to, but with various uses. (a) Primarily, *motion to* — (1) a person (for place, see nach): er kam zu mir, lief zu seiner Mutter. Hence (2) to one's house (see bei): zu dem Schneider gehen, *to the tailor's*. Also (3) of actions directed to persons: er sprach zu mir, sang zu mir, *spoke, sang to me*, etc.

(b) Outside of persons, (1) *motion to* (yet with notion of arrival at, thus distinct from nach): Er geht täglich zur Stadt, *to town* (ist nach der S. gegangen, *has gone (started) to the town*); sie legten das Geld zu seinen Füßen, *at his feet*; von Ort zu Ort, *from place to place*; and in many phrases: zu Ende kommen; zu Grunde gehen; zu Schanden werden, etc. (2) In addition to: er nimmt Wasser zu seinem Wein, *with his wine*; zudem, dazu, *besides*. (3) *Limit, degree* — up to: das ist schön zum Entzücken; das ist zum Lachen; zum Tode betrübt; zum wenigsten, *at least*.

(c) *Direction to*, (1) *Object*: die Liebe zu Gott, *love to God*; Lust zum Tanzen, *desire to dance*. (2) *Purpose, fitness, for*: Das Messer dient zum Schneiden, mein Sohn ist zum Kaufmann bestimmt, *for a merchant*; bereit zum Tode; and in phrases: zu Gaste bitten, *as a guest*; zu Räte gehen, nehmen; zu Bette gehen (*for sleep*); zu Tische gehen (*to eat* — nach dem T., *to the table*); mir zu Gefallen; zum Beispiel, *for example*, etc.

(d) *Effect*, (1) *Transition to*: Das Wasser wird zu Eis; der Knabe wächst zum Manne heran; and in phrases: zu Stande bringen, *to accomplish*; zu Gesichte bekommen, *to get sight of*; zum Narren haben, *to make a fool of*, etc. Hence (2) as *factive object* (§ 443, d).

(c) without motion, at (see b): (1) *Place* (towns, etc.), zu Paris; die Universität zu Berlin; and in phrases: zu Hause; zur Hand, *at hand*; zur See, *at sea*; einem zu Füßen liegen — especially with following adverb: Zum Tore, Fenster — hinaus, *out of (at)*, etc. (2) *Time*, at, in general expressions (see an, um): Zu Weihnachten (but am 25. December); zu Mittag (but um 12 Uhr); zur Zeit der Medicäer; zu gleicher Zeit; zu seiner Zeit, *in due time*; also for: ein Geschenk zum Geburtstage, *a birthday gift*. (3) *Proportion* — at, to: Daß Stück zu zwei Groschen, *two groschen a piece*; daß Pfund zu 16 Unzen gerechnet; zum Teil, *in part*; zu Tausenden, *by thousands (at a time)*; je zu zwölf, *twelve at a time*. (4) Manner, in many phrases, on, by, etc.: zu Land, zu Wasser, zu Pferd, zu Fuß, zu Wagen, zu Mut, etc.

NOTE. — For zu with infinitive, see § 475. — In some of its uses zu must be carefully distinguished from the indirect (dative) object; as §§ 436, 438, etc.

REMARK:—The foregoing examples may suffice to illustrate the idiomatic uses of prepositions, and their wide extension of meaning. A full exhibition of this subject would require a volume. It may be worth while to add here the well-known doggerel lines of the German grammars:

I. GENITIVE.

Anweit, mittels, kraft und während,
 laut, vermöge, ungeachtet,
 oberhalb und unterhalb,
 innerhalb und außerhalb,
 diesseit, jenseit, halben, wegen,
 statt, auch, längs, zufolge, trotz:
 stehen mit dem Genitiv,
 oder auf die Frage wessen?
 Doch ist hier nicht zu vergessen,
 daß bei diesen letzten drei
 auch der Dativ richtig sei.
 Hierzu kommt noch „um — willen.“

II. DATIVE.

Schreib:
 mit, nach, nächst, nebst, samt,
 bei, seit, von, zu, zuwider,
 entgegen, außer, aus,
 stets mit dem Dativ nieder.

III. ACCUSATIVE.

Bei den Wörtern: durch, für, ohne,
 sonder, gegen, um und wider,
 schreibe stets den vierten Fall,
 nie einen andern nieder.

IV. DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

An, auf, hinter, neben, in,
 über, unter, vor und zwischen
 stehen mit dem vierten Fall,
 wenn man fragen kann: wohin?
 Mit dem dritten stehen sie so,
 daß man nur kann fragen: wo?

NOTE ON THE ORDER OF WORDS (LESS. XXXVI).

The following mnemonics have been found useful for beginners. Of course they do not cover all possible cases.

Referring to the formulae, p. 177, let also *a* denote any single verb-adjunct, and *c* any subordinating connective; also let P stand for Principal, and D for Dependent sentence. Then:

$$P = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} N = S. V. A. \\ I = aV. S. A. \end{array} \right\} \text{two forms.}$$

$$D = T = c S. A. V. \text{—one form;} \\ \text{the verb, V, being the } Variable.$$

NOTE. — 1. *a* may also be an introductory clause (§ 344, *b*).

2. In a relative clause, *c* is included in the pronoun.

In Complex sentences:

(1) The Principal preceding:

$$PD = NT, \text{ or } = IT \text{—two forms.}$$

(2) The Dependent preceding — here $P = I$ — hence:

$$DP = TI \text{—one form. (For Exceptions, see § 350).}$$

The order of possible verb-adjuncts may be indicated by the following formula:

A = 1. Pron. Objects: *a*. accusative, *b*. dative; 2. Adverb Time;
3. Noun Objects: *a*. Dat., *b*. Accus., *c*. Gen.; 4. Adverb: *a*. Place,
b. Manner; 5. Objects with prep.: *a*. person, *b*. thing; 6. Pred.
noun or adj.; 7. Last, the non-personal part of the verb: sep.
pref., part., infin., in their order (see also § 357).

Of course all such adjuncts will not occur together; and exceptional cases are not here included. We may add, however, especially:

D — daß = P (§ 350, 1) — (read D *minus* daß, etc.).

D — wenn = I (§ 350, 2).

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

(REFERENCES TO §§.)

- Ablaut**, verbs, 223; nouns, 383-4; adjectives, 394.
- Absolute**, acc., 446; superl., 316, 450, c.; infin., 475; part., 481, 4.
- Accentuation**: 48-55; foreign, 56-60; compounds, 379, 390, 400-1.
- Accusative**: with prep. 178, 280 (or dat.) 179; direct obj., 441; with adjs., 441, c.; double, 442; factitive, 443; cognate, 444; adverbial, 445; absolute, 446.
- Address**: pronouns, 186-9; nouns, 428, c.; (letter) p. 247, *note*.
- Adjectives**: declension, 127-30; strong, 131-3; weak, 134-5; mixed, 136-8; as nouns, 140; as adverbs, 142; neut. end. dropped, 145; successive, 147; compared, 149-58, 450; word-order, 352-3; derivation, 393-6; composition, 400; with gen., 433; with dat., 438; with accus. 441; special forms, 448-50; concord, 451; participial, 479, 481, 3.
- Adjective pronouns**, 86-8; possess., 192; demonstr., 204-10; interr., 220-1; indef., 245; clauses, 348, *b*; adjuncts, 352.
- Adjuncts** of noun, 352; of adjective, 353; of verb, 354-7; of participle, 353, 483.
- Adverbs**, 314-21; compared, 315-7; position, 322, 355; derivation, 397-8; composition, 401; dist. from adj., 449; special uses, 484; idioms, 485.
- Adverbial phrases**, 320; conjunctions, 327-8; clauses, 348, c, 350, 2, 480, 2, *b*, 486; gen., 435; acc., 445.
- Alphabetical list**, verbs, p. 307.
- Apostrophe**, 70.
- Appendix**, nouns, p. 367; preps. p. 368.
- Apposition**, 429, 4: for gen., 431, c.
- Article**: *def.*, decl., 72; contr. with preps., 191; use, 416; omitted, 417; repeated, 421; *indef.*, decl., 79; use, 419; position, 420: repeated, 421.
- Auxiliary verbs**, 167-74; distinguished, 296-9; omitted, 350, 4; of mood, 260-8, 472.
- Capital letters**, 61-66; modified, 66.
- Cardinal numerals**, 300-4; compounds, 306.
- Case** (see nom., gen., etc.); with preps., summary, 447.
- Causative verbs**, 362; *lassen*, 269.
- Cause**, clauses of, 486, 2. [tion of, 359-60.
- Clauses**, dependent, 330-4; 348; 486; position.
- Comparison**, 149-55; irreg., 156-8; of adverbs, 315-7; correl., 334; special forms, 450.
- Composition** of verbs, insep., 277-9, 369-76; sep., 282-5, 377; sep. or insep., 287-8, 378; special forms, 289, 379-81; of nouns, 388-92; of adjs., 400; of adverbs, 401; summary, 402, *rem.*
- Compound nouns**, decl., 121; exceptions, 122, 388; accent, 53, 390; verbs, etc. (see **Composition**); phrase compounds, 389, 7; successive, 392; verbs with dat., 437, 3.
- Concession**, clauses of, 468, 486, 4.
- Concord**, adj., 451; pron., 452; verb, 461, 2.
- Condition**, potential, 469; unreal, 470; contracted, 350, 2, 471; clauses of, 486, 3.
- Conditional** (the), form, 173; use, 471.
- Conjugation**, 195-200; weak, 201, 211-4; strong, 223-7; mixed, 253-4; modal, 261; passive, 271; reflexive, 251; (see alph. list).
- Conjunctions**, 324-5; pure, 326, 345, 349; adverbial, 327-8; subordinating, 330-4.
- Correlative**, comparison, 334; pronouns, 456, 5; adverbs, 485.
- Countries**, names of, 111, 416, 2.
- Dates**, 309-10.

- Dative**, ind. obj. verbs, 203, 437; with prep., 164, 280, (or acc.) 179; with adjs., 438; of interest, ethical, 439; privative (from), 440; factitive, 443, *d*; special forms, 106.
- Days and months**, 313; in dates, 309-10.
- Declension** — of nouns, 73; strong, 74: — class I., 75-8; II., 81-5; III., 89; weak, 92-6; mixed, 104; peculiarities, 99-107; proper names, 109-13; foreign, 115-20; compound, 121-2; synopsis, 124. Of adjectives, 127-30 — strong, 131-2, weak, 134-5, mixed, 136-8; special cases, 139-147. Pronouns (see their classes).
- Demonstrative**, adj. and pron., 204-10, 456; as substitutes, 457; as relative, 459, 5.
- Dependent clauses**, 348, 359; verb (position), 347-50.
- Derivation** — of verbs, 361: by root-change, 362-3; by suffix, 364-5; from nouns, 366; from adjs., 367; — of nouns: from verbs, 382-4; from adjs. or nouns, 385-6 (without suffix, 382-3; with suffix, 384-6); by prefix, 387; — of adjectives, 393-6 (suffix, 395; prefix, 396); — of adverbs, 397; summary, 402, *rem.*
- Digraphs** (and trigraphs), consonant, 33-43.
- Diminutives**, 78, 386, 6.
- Diphthongs**, 16-20.
- Emphasis**, (type) 70; *ber*, 206; *ein*, 301.
- English** — relation to German: summary, Less. XLV.
- Euphony**, in nouns, 85; adjs., 139; verbs, 211-4.
- Exclamation**, 336; with dat., 439, *d*; infin., 474, *f*; part., 336, 2.
- Expletive** (*eß*), 291, 453.
- Factitive**, acc., 443; dat. (*ßil*), 443, *d*.
- Feminine**, dat. in *-n* (106).
- Foreign words pronounced**, 47; accented, 56-60; declined, 115-120, 427, *d*.
- Future tense**, form, 173; use, 465.
- Gender**, 71, 125-6; special forms, 426, 452, *a*.
- Genitive**, 71; with prep., 280; position, 352; with nouns, 430; partitive, 431; with adjs., 433; with verbs, 434; adverbial, 435; exclam., 336, 3.
- German** — relation to English; summary, Less. XLV.
- Grimm's Law** (outline), 408.
- Hour** (o'clock), 305.
- Hyphen**, in compounds, 69, 392.
- Imperative forms**, 176; vowel change, 226; sentences, 346; infin. or part. for, 336, 2.
- Impersonal verb**, 290-5; for passive, 274; with gen., 434, *d*; with dat., 436, 5; subject, 453.
- Incomplete compounds**, 379, 437, 4.
- Indefinite**, pron. and adj., 244-5; use of, 460; relat., 236, 459, 3.
- Indirect object**, 203, 437; mood and tense, 467; question, 348, 467, *d*.
- Infinitive**, form of past part., modal, 264-5; exclam., 336; position, 358; uses, 473; simple, 474; with *ßil*, 475; with *um* — *ßil*, 476; equivalents, 477-8; as noun, 75, 416, 1.
- Inseparable verbs**, 277-9; 369-76; special forms, 380.
- Interjections**, 335-7; with gen., 435, *c*; with dat., 439, *d*.
- Interrogative**, pron. and adj., 217-22; use of, 458; infin., 474, *f*.
- Inverted order**, 165; 344-6.
- Measure** (terms of), 312, 431, *c*.
- Mixed nouns**, 99-104; adjectives, 136-8; verbs, 253-4; prefixes, 381.
- Modal verbs**, 260-7; with omitted infin., 268; idioms, 472.
- Modification of vowel**, 10; in nouns, 76, 83, 89, 124, *rem.*; in adjs. (comp.), 151-2; in verbs, 224, 226; in derivation, *rem.*, p. 189; written, 10, 15, 66.
- Monosyllables** — nouns; masc. 81, p. 30, p. 38; fem. 82, *b*, 92, *b*; neut. 81, 89; adjs., 151.
- Months and days** (names), 313; in dates, 309-10.
- Mood** — indic. (tenses), 462-5; imper., 176; subjunct. (see *subjunct.*); aux. of (see *modal*).
- Negative**, 322, 5; idioms, 460, 8; redundant, 485, 11.
- Nominative case**, 429.
- Normal order**, 339, 350; restored after pure conj. 345; in dep. clause, 350.
- Nouns**, declension, 73; strong, 74 — I., 75-8; II., 81-5; III., 89; weak, 92-6; mixed,

- 99-105; proper, 109-113; foreign, 115-20; compound, 121-2; derivation of: from verbs, 382-4; from adj. or nouns, 385-6; by prefix, 387; composition of, 388-92 (and accent.).
- Noun** clauses, 348; normal, 350; objective, 477.
- Number**, 71; special cases, 422-5; verb, 461, 2.
- Numerals**, cardinal, 300-4; compounds, 306; ordinal, 307-8; compounds, 311.
- Objects**, position of, 354; indirect, 203, 437; direct, 441; double, 434, 437, 442; factitive, 443; cognate, 444; repeated, 487.
- Optative**, sentences, order, 346; subjunct., 468; adverb (*δοῦν*), 485, 2.
- Order** of words; see *position*.
- Ordinal** nums., 307-8; compounds, 311.
- Orthography**, official, p. 323.
- Participles**, decl., 141; perfect: — augment, 215-6; in modal perfects, 264-5; exclam., 336, 2; in comp. tenses, 341; uses of, 479-81; absolute, 481, 4: — present, 479-80; — fut. pass., 482; adjuncts of part., 483.
- Participial** adjectives, 479; 481, 3; equivalents, 480, 2.
- Partitive**, no art., 418; gen., 431; apposition, 431, *c*, *d*.
- Passive**, conj., 270; use of, 272-3, 437, *c*; substitutes for, 274-76.
- Past** tense, 464.
- Perfect** tense, 464; part. (see *participle*).
- Personal** pronouns, decl., 182; address, 186-9; special forms, 452; demonstr. for, 457; with relat., 459, 2, *δ*.
- Personification**, by attrib. gen., 430, *note*.
- Plural**, of nouns, 124; foreign, 115-20, 427, *d*; special forms, 424-5; double, 424-5; of proper names, 427; pl. verb with titles, 461, 2, *c*; pron. address, 178-8. (See App.).
- Position** (order of words), first rules, 177, 202; summary (Less. XXXVI.): — verb, 338; normal, 339-43; inverted, 344-6; transposed, 347-9; special cases, 350-1; — adjuncts: of noun, 352; of adj., 353; of part., 483; — objects, 354; infin., 358; dependent clauses, 359-60; synopsis, p. 185, p. 378.
- Possessive**, adjectives, 192; pronouns, 193-4; for personal, 430, *d*; art. for, 416; tr. by dat. pers., 439; special cases, 455.
- Potential** subjunctive, 469.
- Predicate**, adj., 127, 356; superl., 160-1; concord of verb, 461.
- Prefixes**, inseparable, 277-9; separable, 282-5; separable or inseparable, 287-8; compound, 289; special forms, 379-81; — meaning of, inseparable, 369-76; separable, 377; in nouns, 387; in adjectives, 396.
- Prepositions**, with dat., 164; accusative, 178; dative or accusative, 179; contrast with art., 191; (spurious) 280; compound, 402; for genitive, 431-2-3-4; for accusative, 442; summary, 447; with infin., 475; adverbial, 445, *note*. (See Appendix).
- Present** tense, vowel change, 226; use of, 463.
- Privative** dat. 440.
- Pronouns**, personal, 182-4, 452-3; address, 186-9; reflexive, 185, 454; possessive, 193, 455; demonstrative, 204-10, 456-7; interrogative, 217-22, 458; relative, 233-40, 459; indefinite, 244, 460; expletive (*εἰς*), 453; position of objects, 354; concord, 452.
- Pronunciation**, vowels, 3-9; mod. vowels, 10-15; diphthongs, 16-20; consonants, 21-43; double letters, 44; foreign words, 47.
- Proper** names, decl., 109-113; article, 416; plural, 427; titles, 428.
- Purpose**, subjunctive, 468, *c*; infin. (*ἵνα* — *δοῦν*), 476.
- Reflexive** pronouns, 185, 434; verbs, 250-2; for passive, 274; (false) with genitive, 434, *c*; with dative, 437, 6.
- Relative** pronouns, 233-40, 459; indefinite, 236, 459, 3.
- Repetition**, of art., 421; of possessive, 455; of subject, object, auxiliary. (summary), 487.
- Schrift** (German Script), p. 385, etc.
- Separable** prefixes, 282-5; compound, 289; position, 342, 357; meaning, 377; special forms, 379.
- Strong** decl. of nouns, 74-89; of adjectives, 131-3; (or weak) adjective forms, 449; conjunctive of verbs, 223-7; classes of (see synopsis, 259; and alphabetic list); change to weak derivative, 362.
- Subject**, omitted, 429; repeated, 461, 487; concord with, 461, 2; change of 477-8.

- Subjunctive mood**, 466; indirect, 467; optative, 468; potential, 469; conditional, 470-1; purpose, 468, *c*.
- Subordinating conjs.**, 330-4.
- Substitutes**, for pron. obj. with prep., 184, 222, 459, 4; for passive, 274-6; demons. for pers. pron., 457; adv. for adj. inflect., 450.
- Suffixes of derivation**: verbs, 364-5; nouns, 384-6; adjs., 395-6; adv., 398.
- Superlative**, 149, 155; predicate, 160-1; absolute, 316, 450.
- Supine**, infin., 176, 2.
- Syllables**, 68.
- Synopsis**, noun decl., 124; adjs., 166; strong verbs, 259; verb-position, p. 185.
- Tenses**, indicative, 462; present, 463; past and perfect, 464; future and fut. perf., 465; subjunctive, 467, 470.
- Time**, 293; of day, 305; date, 309-10; indef. (gen.), 435; def. (acc.), 445; clauses of 486.
- Titles**, 428, 455, 461, *c*.
- Transposed order**, 347-9; special cases, 350-1.
- Umlaut**, 10, 223, note; p. 189, *rem.*; written, 10, 15, 66.
- Verbs**, auxiliary, 167-74; conjugation, 195-200; weak, 201, 211-4; strong, 223-7; classes of strong, 228-30 (see synopsis, p. 134, and alph. list); mixed, 253-4; modal, 260-1; irregular, 255-6 (see list); reflexive, 250-2; passive, 270-6; impersonal, 290-5. Composition of: — insep., 277-9; 369-76; sep., 282-5, 377; sep. or insep., 287, 378; compound prefixes, 289; special cases, 379-81. Syntax of: with gen., 434; with dat., 437; with acc., 441; double objects, 434, *b*, 437, 443; cognate obj., 444; infin. obj., 474. Concord, 461. Position of, 338 — normal, 339-43; inverted, 344-6; transposed, 347-9; special cases, 350-1; synopsis, p. 185.
- Vowels**, quantity, 3; pronunciation, 4-9; modified, 10-15; doubled, 44; change of (ablaut), 223, *note*; sequence in strong verbs, 225, *note*.
- Weak**, decl. of nouns, 92-6; of adj., 134-5; (or strong) adj., forms, 449; conj. of verbs, 201, 211-4.
- Weather**, 290, 293.
- Weight** (and measure), 312, 431, *c*.

INDEX OF WORD-FORMS.

NOTE. — Forms not here indexed are referred in the Vocabulary.

- aber**, 326.
- all**, 420, 1; 460, 4; **aller** =, sup. pref., 450, 4.
- allein**, 326.
- als**, *adv.*, 153-4, 450, 2; (apposition) 429; *conj.* (condition) 470, *d*; (time) 486.
- am**, with sup., 160, 450, 3; dist. from **auf**, 315.
- an**, Appendix.
- ander** (second), 460, *b*; — **thalb**, 311, 2.
- anstatt**, infin., 475, *f*; — **daß**, 477, *c*.
- artig**, adj., 400, 5.
- auch**, with rel., 459, 3; with conj., 486, 4; idioms, 485.
- auf**, Appendix.
- auß**, Appendix.
- be** = 370, 1.
- bei**, Appendix.
- beide**, **beides**, 460, 5.
- biß**, *prep.*, 280; *conj.*, 332.
- =chen**, *dim.*, 78, 386, 6.
- =d**, nouns, 384, 1.
- da** (**dar**), in comp., 184, 209, 457; dem. or rel. 351, 2; indef., 459, 3; *conj.* (reason) 486, 2.
- daß**, **dieß**, gram. subj., 210.
- daß**, omitted, 350, 1; clauses, 477, *b*.
- =de**, nouns, 384, 1.
- denn**, *conj.*, 326; *adv.*, 450, 2; 470, *b*.
- der**, *art.*, 79; *dem.*, 206, 456, 2; 457; *rel.* 23, 459; *dem. or rel.*, 351, 2.

derjenige, derselbe, 208, 456-7.

Deru, 455, *c*.

deß, *pron. comp.*, 456, 2.

dieser, 456-7; dieß, 210

doch, 485, 2.

dreier, dreien, 302.

durch, Appendix.

e, dropped: nouns, 85, 89, 92, *c*, 94; adjs. 139, 150; verbs, 201, 214, 367; changed to *ie*, or *i*, 226; — added, 147, 318, 389, *b*.

-e, nouns, 384, 386; adj., adv., 147, 318.

eben (*soeben*), 464, *c*.

-ei, nouns, 384, 8, 386, 3.

eis (*eis*), 300, *note*.

ein, *art.*, 79; *num.*, 301; — *er*, 244.

ein-, prefix, 283.

-el, nouns, 75, 384, 3; adjs., 139; verbs, 364.

emp-, 371, *d*.

-en, nouns, 75, 384, 6; adjs., 139, 395, 2; for *-es*, gen. adj., 133.

-ens, adv., 311 3; 399, *f*.

ent-, 371.

entweder, 329.

er-, 372.

-er, nouns, 75, 384, 2, 386, 2; adjs., 139; in decl., 395, 3; verbs, 364.

Er, address, 189.

-erlei, (see *-lei*).

-ern, adj., 395, 2.

erst, *adj.*, 307; *adv.* 485, 3; — *er-er*, 157, 417.

erz-, 387, 5.

eß, *pron.* (position), 202; pass., 275; impers., 290-4; idioms, 453.

-eß, *neut. adj.*, dropped, 145, 449, 2.

-et, in *pron. comp.*, 452, *b*.

Ev., titles, 455, *c*.

-fach, **-fältig**, adj., 306, 3; 400, 5.

folgend, 417, 449, 1, *d*.

Frau, Fräulein, titles, 428.

fünf = sehn, = zih, 300, *note*.

für, Appendix.

ge- (augment), 215-6; double, 243, *a*; (prefix), verb, 375; noun, 387.

gegessen, 243, *a*.

gehen, *impers.*, 437, 4, *b*.

genug, 322, 460, 7.

gern, 317, 485, 4.

gibt (*eß*), 294.

gleich (wenn, ob), 486, 4.

=gleich, *pron. comp.*, 452, *c*.

haben, *aux.*, 171, 296; with *inf.*, 475, 2.

=haft, *haftig*, adj., 395, 4.

halb, 144; *comp.*, 311, 2.

=halb, 280; *comp.*, 459, 4.

heißen, with *inf.*, 474, *c*; *p. part.*, 481, 5.

=heit, noun, 386, 4.

her, 484, *c*; prefix, 377, *c*.

hier, in *comp.*, 401, 457, 1, *b*.

hin, 484; prefix, 377, *c*.

=icht, adj., 395, 6.

=ien, pl., 118-9

=ieren, verbs, 215, 365.

=ig, adj., 395, 5.

Ihr, address, 189; *Ihro*, 455, *c*.

in, Appendix.

=in, nouns, 386, 5; pl., 95.

indem, 486.

irgend, 460, 3.

=isch, adj., 395, 8.

ja, 485, 5.

jeder (ein), 245.

jener, 456.

=keit, nouns, 386, 4.

kommen, with *perf. part.*, 480, 4.

lauter, indecl., 460, 7.

=lei (=erlei), 306.

=lein, dim., 78, 386, 6.

lehter-er, 157, 417.

=lich, adj., 395, 10; adv., 398.

lieber, *comp.*, 485, 4.

=ling, noun, 384, 8; 386, 7.

=lingß, adv., 399, 1.

=loß, adj., 400, 4.

=mal, in *comp.*, 306, 2.

man, 244, 274, 460.

manch(er), 245.

=mäßig, adj., 400, 5.

mehr, 156, 450; — *ere*, 157.

mit, Appendix.

=n, dropped, 103, 384, 6; inserted, 384, 2, 386, 2.

nach, Appendix.

=niß, noun, 384, 4; 386, 8; *pl.*, 83.

noch, *adv.*, 328; *conj.*, 329; — ein, 460, 2: idioms, 485, 6.

- nun**, *adv.*, 485, 7; *conj.*, 486, 2.
ob, *prep.*, 280; prefix, 283; *conj.*, 332, 477,
ð; omitted, 350, 2, 470, *d*; — auch, etc.,
 486, 4.
ohne, (zu) *infin.*, 475, *f*.; — daß, 477, *c*.
Paar (ein), 312, 431, *c*; ein paar, 245, note.
=reich, *adj.*, 400, 5.
=ß, plur., 120; *adv.*, 399, *d*.
'ß, for eß (it), 453; for daß, 72 note.
=fal, =fel, noun, 384, 7.
=fam, *adj.*, 395, 11.
=schaft, noun, 386, 9.
schon, with present, 463, *ð*; idioms, 485, 8.
Se., Sr., (titles), 455, *c*.
sein, *v.*, aux., 172, 297; dist. from werden,
 273; *impers.*, 293-4; with gen., 435, *ð*; with
 dat. 437, 5, *ð*; with *infin.*, 475, 2.
seit, *prep.*, 280; with pres., 463, *ð*; *conj.*,
 486, 2.
selbst, selber, 454.
=selig, *adj.*, 395, 7.
sich, for einander, 252; position, 354, 4.
Sie, address, 188-9; concord, 451, *ð*.
so, with comp., 153; connective, 328; (such),
 456, 5; omitted, 471, *e*; idioms, 485, 9.
solch(er), 207, 456, 5.
sondern, 326.
Sr., 455, *c*.
ß, ſ, ſſ, 41.
=st, *adj.*, 149, 307; *adv.*, 316; noun, 384, 1.
statt, anstatt, (zu) *infin.*, 475, *f*.; — daß, 477, *c*.
=t, noun, 384, 1; for =tet, verb, 226, *ð*.
=t= inserted, 398, *ð*.
=tel, 311, 388, note.
=tet, contr. to =t, 226, *ð*.
th, restricted use, 42.
=tum, noun, 386, 10; *pl.*, 89,
über, Appendix.
Uhr, idioms, 305.
um, Appendix. . . zu, 476; — daß, 468.
un=, 387, 3.
=ung, noun, 384, 5.
unter, Appendix.
ur=, 387, 4.
ver=, 373.
viel, 156, 245, *c*, 460, 6.
voll=, 288, *c*; =voll, 400, 4; *adj.*, 433.
voller, 433, note.
von, Appendix.
vor, Appendix.
während, *prep.*, 280; *conj.*, 486, *f*.
wann, 486, 1.
ward, 190, 256, *c*.
=wärt=, 399, *ð*.
was, *int.*, 219, 458; *rel.*, 236-7, 459; — für,
 221; *indef.* and *adv.*, 458, 2, 459, 3.
weder (noch), 329.
weis, 486, 2.
=weise, *adv.*, 399, *c*.
welcher, *int.*, 220, 458; *rel.*, 234, 459; *indef.*
 458.
wenn, (time) 486, 1; (cond.) 486, 3; (concess.)
 486, 4; omitted, 350, 2.
wer, *int.*, 219, 458; *rel.*, 236, 459.
wesh (weß), 222, *ð*; 458, 3; 459, 4.
wenig, 245, 460, 6.
werden, aux., 173-4; 273; position, 350, 3;
impers., 387, 4, *ð*.
wider, wieder, prefixes, 288.
wie, *adv.*, 153, 450, 2; (apposition) 429;
 (time) 486, *d*; — *vielf*, 308.
wo (wor, 222, 237); cond., 486, 3.
wohl, 485, 10; ob . . ., 486, 4.
worden, 270.
zer= 374.
zu, *prep.*, Appendix; *infin.*, 176; 475-6; fact-
 itive dat., 443, *d*; *adv.*, 476.
zween, *zwo*, 300, note.
zweier, *zweien*, 302.

GERMAN HANDWRITING [Schrift].

The Large Alphabet.

A B C D E F G

A B C D E F G

H I J K L M N

H I J K L M N

O P Q R S T U

O P Q R S T U

V W X Y Z

V W X Y Z

The Small Alphabet.

a b c d e f ff g h i

a b c d e f ff g h i

j k l m n o p q r

j k l m n o p q r

f B P t ũ v w x y z

s s st t u v w x y z

Modified Vowels.

Ä ä Ö ö Ü ü

Diphthongs.

Au au Äu äu Eu eu

Ai ai Ei ei

Ai ai Ei ei

Ai ai Ei ei

Double Consonants.

Ch ch Ph ph Sch sch

Ch ch Ph ph Sch sch

Th th ck ss sz = ss tz

Th th ck ss sz = ss tz

NOTE. — As has been stated, p. 1, it is not necessary — at least not at first — to write the German *Schrift*. But it may become necessary to learn to read it. This can be done only by practice in reading actual handwriting. As an introduction, a few pages of the *Schrift* will be added.

Früh aufstehen.

Ein Kater vom Namen seinen
 Kopf, früh aufzustehen und er
 zählte ihm die Geschichte von
 einem Jungen, welche früh Mor-
 gab eine Leere mit Geld ge-
 funden habe. — "Ja," sagte der
 Onkel, "die Jungen, welche das
 Geld verloren hat, ist aber noch
 noch früher aufgestanden."

Gute Antwort.

Ein Arzt wirt zu einem
 Kranken. Ein vorübergehender,
 der Doktor bemerkte im
 Anmal des Kates ein Loth
 und sagte zum Doktor: "Da

güth die Weisheit hervorüb -
 . Und die Dummheit hinein,
 erwiderte der Arzt kalt.

Die Prüfung.

In einer Prüfung würde
 ein Prüfer gefragt: „Wie vie-
 le Inseln liegen im atlanti-
 schen Ozean, und wie hei-
 ßen sie?“ Der Prüfer ant-
 wortete: „Im atlantischen
 Ozean liegen fast viele In-
 seln, und ich heiße Müller.“

Niemand fragt danach.

Ein Rüstfaher, der bei ei-
 nem Lord zu Gast war,

warf auch Verfasser ein Glas
 ein. Der Engländer fragte ihn,
 ob das in Deutschland so Sitte
 sei. Geßelt erwiderte der
 Deutsche, das wußt nicht, aber
 wenn es dennoch geschieht,
 fragt manigstens niemand
 danach.

Holz.

Als Lortz nach Geniava zu-
 rückkehrte, wurde er vom
 Kaiser Karl dem Fünften
 küß empfangen. Einmal da-
 her stellte er sich unversehrt
 dem Monarchen vor. „Wer
 bist du?“ fragte der Kaiser
 forschend. Lortz antwortete

oben so stolz. „Ich bin der
Mann, der dir mehr Provision
gab, als deine Kaufsch
von der Wüste hinterlassen
haben.“

Goldminen.

Ein gewisser Italiener hat
seinen Lauf über die Hüfte,
Gold zu machen, geschrieben
und ab in der Hoffnung auf
eine gute Belohnung dem
Papste Leo dem Zehnten ge-
widmet. Da der feilige Pa-
pste sah, daß der Mann ihn
beständig verfolgte, so gab
er ihm endlich eine große,
leere Goldbüchse und sagte:

„Da du Gold machen kannst,
so brauchst du nur einen
Leutel, um ab finden zu
kann.“

Ein Pfarrer.

„Ich habe große Reisen ge-
macht“, sagte ein Pfarrer,
„und zwar ohne alles eigenes
Vermögen oder sonstige Un-
terstützung.“ Wie sind Sie
dann aber fortgekommen?
fragte ihn jemand. — „O, durch
meinen Witz und Verstand,
entgegensteht er.“ Sie sind Sie
allerdinge sehr weislich ge-
weist,“ erfiel er zur Ant-
wort.

Rufen.

„An demselben Tage, an welchem
 dem Götzle starb, kam ich zur
 Welt,“ sagte ein eingebildeter
 Dichtstallar. Darauf bemerkte,
 da jemand: „Lieds Feigniß,
 so gerüchten der weltlichen Li-
 teratur zum größten Nachteil.“

Zu Hause.

„Eine Dame sagte zu ihren
 Gästen: „Machen Sie ab sich
 bequem, und sein Sie, als wäre,
 von Sie zu Hause, da ich selbst
 zu Hause bin, so wünsche ich von
 Herzen, Sie alle wären ab
 auf.““

Wollt gessniff zu haben!

Man sprach von einem Ei,
 das auf, wo die Kopf sehr ma-
 yer war. Der Wirt rief den
 Gästen zu: „Ei würf, wollt
 gessniff zu haben!“ – Tappin,
 welcher sich abendalls unter
 den Gästen befand, bemerkte,
 so dem Wirt „Ei würfste,
 wollt gessniff zu haben.“

Yüra Lira.

Der König von Tuffen rei-
 ste einst durch Yrol. Bei
 einer Dorfstraße ließ er
 anhalten und sich zwei ge-
 koste Eier in den Wagen

bringen. Der Markt warlang,
 so dafür fünfzig Gulden. Die
 Factorierung fand der König
 unerspänt und ließ den
 Markt zu sich holen. „Wahr
 Fräulein, weshalb er diesen
 an, „sind denn die Eier in
 Tyrol so selten?“ — „Ich aber
 nicht,“ erwiderte der Markt
 sehr stolz, „aber desto
 seltener die Könige.“

Königlicher Platz.

Der König Jakob von Lothar
 von England setzte sich eines Tages
 an den Tisch. „Ich habe drei
 Königreiche,“ rief er, „kannst du
 da keinen andern Platz finden?“

VOCABULARY TO THE SCRIPT.

(*ABRIDGED*)

Including the Script Words not found in the general Vocabulary.

allerdings, by all means, surely.

an=halten, to hold on, stop.

an=reden, to address, say to.

Ärmel, *m.*, sleeve.

atlantisch, Atlantic.

beide, both.

Belohnung, *f.*, reward.

bemerkten, to remark.

bequem, convenient.

beständig, continual.

Beutel, *m.*, purse.

danach, after it, about it.

dennoch, nevertheless.

Doktor, *m.*, doctor.

Dorfschenke, *f.*, village tavern.

Dummheit, *f.*, stupidity.

ebenfalls, likewise.

ehrerbietig, reverent.

Ei, *n.*, egg, *pl.* -er.

eigen, (one's) own, peculiar.

ein'gebildet, vain, conceited.

einst, once, one day.

empfangen, to receive.

Engländer, *m.*, Englishman.

entgegen, to reply, retort.

Ereignis, *n.*, event, occurrence.

ermahnen, to exhort, warn.

erwidern, to reply.

erzählen, to tell, relate.

Fliege, *f.*, fly.

Forderung, *f.*, demand.

fort=kommen, to get on, get through

fünfst, fifth.

fünfzig, fifty.

gefaßt, collected, cool.

gereichen, to redound, result.

Geschichte, *f.*, history, story.

gewiß, certain.

Gold, *n.*, gold.

gucken, to peep.

Gulden, *m.*, florin.

hinein, into, in.

hinterlassen, to leave behind, bequeath.

hochmütig, haughty, proud.

hoffnung, *f.*, hope.

holen, to fetch, bring; — lassen, to send for.

Insel, *f.*, island.

Italie'ner, *m.*, Italian.

Jacob, *m.*, James.

kochen, to cook, boil.

Königreich, *n.*, kingdom.

Kost, *f.*, food.

kühl, cool.

Kunst, *f.*, art.

leer, empty.

Litteratur', *f.*, literature.

Loch, *n.*, hole.

Lord, *m.*, lord.

mager, lean, meagre.

Meer, *n.*, sea, ocean.

Monarch', *m.*, monarch.

Nachteil, *m.*, disadvantage.

Nase, *f.*, nose.

Papst, *m.*, pope.

Person', *f.*, person.

Prahler, *m.*, boaster.

Provinz', *f.*, province.

Prüfung, *f.*, examination.

Rock, *m.*, coat.

Ruhm, *m.*, fame, glory.

Sachsen, *n.*, Saxony.

Schriftsteller, *m.*, author.

Schüler, *m.*, scholar, pupil.

selten, rare, scarce.

Sitte, *f.*, custom.

sonstig, other, else.

Spa'nien, *n.*, Spain.

speisen, to eat, dine.

stolz, proud; *noun, m.*, pride.

teuer, dear.

tun, to do, make, put.

Tyrol, *n.*, Tyrol.

um-werfen, to overturn.

unerwartet, unexpected.

Unterstützung, *f.*, support, aid.

unverschämt, shameless.

verfolgen, to pursue, persecute.

verlangen, to desire, demand.

Versehen, *n.*, oversight, mistake.

Verstand, *m.*, understanding, sense.

Vorfahr, *m.*, ancestor.

vor-stellen, to present, introduce.

vorüber-gehen, to pass (by).

Wagen, *m.*, carriage.

Weisheit, *f.*, wisdom.

wenigstens, at last.

widmen, to dedicate.

Wirt, *m.*, landlord.

Witz, *m.*, wit.

wohlfeil, cheap.

zurück-kehren, to return.

zu-rufen, to call (out) to.

PF Joynes, Edward Southey
3111 A German grammar for
J6 schools and colleges. [New
1904a and ... improved ed.]

**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

**UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
LIBRARY**

